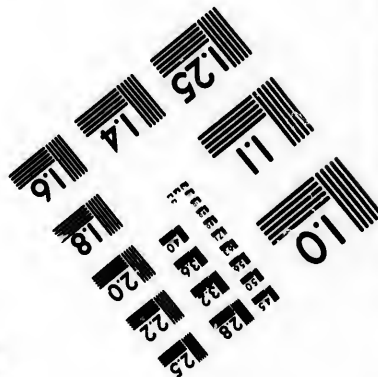
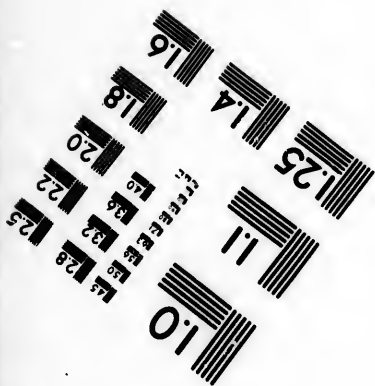
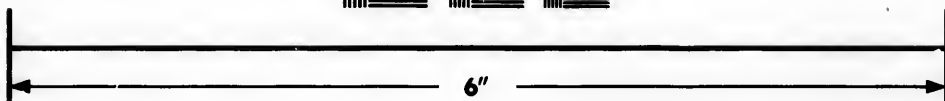
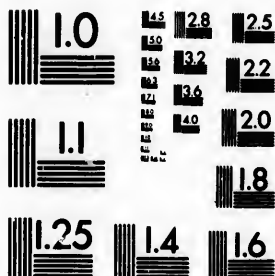


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17

© 1986

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/
Pages détachées |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/
Transparence |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin.
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distorsion le long de la marge intérieure | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:
Commentaires supplémentaires: | |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

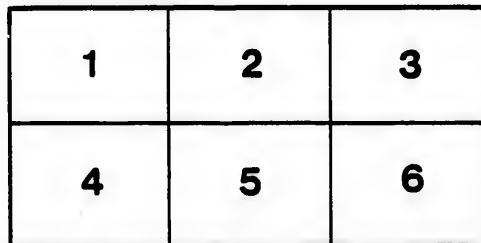
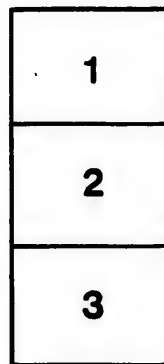
D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

rrata
to

pelure,
n à

100/14

G

NU

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL-BOOKS.

LOVELL'S
GENERAL GEOGRAPHY,
FOR THE
USE OF SCHOOLS;

WITH
NUMEROUS MAPS, ILLUSTRATIONS, AND BRIEF TABULAR VIEWS.

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, LL.B.,

AUTHOR OF "GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF THE BRITISH COLONIES."



"Geography and Chronology I may call the Sun and the Moon, the right eye and the left, of all History."—*Hackluyt's Voyages, Preface.*

"The study of Geography is both profitable and delightful."—*Milton's History of Muscovia, Preface.*

Montreal :
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY JOHN LOVELL, ST. NICHOLAS STREET;
AND SOLD BY R. & A. MILLER.

Toronto :
R. & A. MILLER, 62 KING STREET EAST.
1861.

CORRESPONDING TIME TABLE OF SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL CITIES ON THE GLOBE;

Twelve o'clock Noon at London, the commercial metropolis of the World, being the standard of time selected.

(Illustrative of the accompanying Table of Clocks of the World.)

A. M. OR FORENOON.			P. M. OR AFTERNOON.			
	A. M.	Long. W.		P. M.	Long. E.	
<i>Barbados, West Indies,</i>	8 1	50 41	<i>Adelaide, South Australia,</i>	9 14	139 28	
<i>Bermuda, West Indies,</i>	7 43	64 30	<i>Algiers, Colony of Algiers,</i>	0 12	3 5	
<i>Boston, Massachusetts, United States of Am.</i>	7 16	71 4	<i>Athens, Greece,</i>	1 35	23 46	
<i>Buenos Ayres, Republic of Buenos Ayres,</i>	5 7	58 23	<i>Auckland, New Zealand,</i>	11 30	174 45	
<i>Charlottetown, Prince-Edward Island,</i>	7 48	63 7	<i>Berlin, Prussia,</i>	0 53	13 32	
<i>Detroit, Michigan, United States of America,</i>	6 28	63 2	<i>Berne, Switzerland,</i>	0 30	7 26	
<i>Dublin, Ireland,</i>	11 55	6 20	<i>Brussels, Belgium,</i>	0 17	4 22	
<i>Edinburgh, Scotland,</i>	11 47	8 12	<i>Bombay, India,</i>	4 52	72 56	
<i>Fredericton, New Brunswick,</i>	7 33	66 38	<i>Cairo, Egypt,</i>	2 5	31 19	
<i>Halifax, Nova Scotia,</i>	7 45	63 36	<i>Calcutta, India,</i>	5 54	89 26	
<i>Hamilton, Upper Canada,</i>	6 40	79 55	<i>Cape Town, Cape Colony,</i>	1 14	18 28	
<i>Havana, Cuba,</i>	6 30	82 23	<i>Constantinople, Turkey,</i>	1 56	28 55	
<i>Honolulu, Sandwich Islands,</i>	1 28	157 55	<i>Copenhagen, Denmark,</i>	0 50	12 35	
<i>Kingston, Upper Canada,</i>	6 54	76 32	<i>Delhi, India,</i>	5 11	77 40	
<i>Lima, Peru,</i>	6 53	70 57	<i>Dresden, Saxony (Germany),</i>	0 55	13 43	
<i>Lisbon, Portugal,</i>	11 23	9 8	<i>Hamburg, Free City (Germany),</i>	0 40	9 59	
<i>London, Upper Canada,</i>	0 35	0 35	<i>Hankow, China,</i>	7 37	114 10	
<i>Madeira (Island of),</i>	10 53	10 58	<i>Jeddo, Japan,</i>	0 20	140 0	
<i>Madrid, Spain,</i>	11 45	3 42	<i>Jerusalem, Palestine (Syria),</i>	3 21	85 20	
<i>Mexico, Republic of Mexico,</i>	5 24	99 5	<i>Madras, India,</i>	5 21	80 22	
<i>Montreal, Lower Canada,</i>	7 6	73 36	<i>Matta (Island of),</i>	0 58	14 31	
<i>New Orleans, Louisiana, United States of Am.,</i>	5 60	90 11	<i>Mecca, Arabia,</i>	3 44	40 55	
<i>New York, State of N. Y., U. S. of America,</i>	7 4	74 1	<i>Melbourne, Victoria (Australia),</i>	0 46	144 58	
<i>Ottawa, Upper Canada,</i>	6 47	75 41	<i>Munich, Bavaria (Germany),</i>	0 45	11 54	
<i>Panama, New Granada,</i>	6 43	79 27	<i>Paris, France,</i>	0 9	9 0	
<i>Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, U. S. of America,</i>	6 50	75 10	<i>Pekin, China,</i>	7 46	116 23	
<i>Quebec, Lower Canada,</i>	7 15	71 16	<i>Rome, Italy,</i>	0 50	12 30	
<i>Quito, Ecuador,</i>	6 45	78 45	<i>St. Petersburg, Russia,</i>	3 1	30 19	
<i>Rio Janeiro, Brazil,</i>	9 7	43 9	<i>Stockholm, Sweden,</i>	1 12	18 3	
<i>St. John's, Newfoundland,</i>	8 29	52 40	<i>Stuttgart, Wurtemberg (Germany),</i>	0 37	9 11	
<i>San Francisco, California, U. S. of America,</i>	3 51	122 22	<i>Sydney, New South Wales,</i>	10 5	161 14	
<i>Toronto, Upper Canada,</i>	6 43	79 21	<i>Tehran, Persia,</i>	3 13	43 0	
<i>Victoria, Vancouver Island,</i>	3 43	124 23	<i>Turin, Piedmont (Italy),</i>	0 31	7 40	
<i>Washington, Capital of the U. S. of America,</i>	6 53	77 1	<i>Vienna, Austria,</i>	1 6	16 33	

Rule to find the Longitude of any Place.—Multiply the difference of time between London and the place whose longitude is required by 15, and the result will be its longitude in degrees.

When the London time is least,
The longitude is east;

And for all the rest,
The longitude is west.

RULES TO FIND, ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE, THE LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE OF ANY PLACE.

Latitude.—Bring the desired place on the globe to that part of the brass meridian which is numbered from the equator towards the poles: the degree-figure of the meridian above the place is its latitude, or distance from the equator. [If the place lie north of the equator, the figure indicates north latitude; if south of the equator, south latitude. [See section 13, paragraph (8), on page 6.]

Longitude.—Bring the desired place on the globe to the brass meridian, and the number of degrees on the equator cut by the meridian will be the longitude of the place, or its distance east or west of Greenwich. [If the place lie to the right hand of the meridian passing through Greenwich, the degree-figure on the brass meridian indicates east longitude; if to the left, west longitude. [See section 13, paragraph (7), on page 6.]

LENGTH, IN GEOGRAPHICAL MILES, OF ONE DEGREE OF LONGITUDE FOR EVERY DEGREE OF LATITUDE.

Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.	Lat.	Geog. Miles.
0	60.00	11	58.90	21	56.02	31	51.43	41	45.28	51	37.76	61	29.08
1	59.99	12	58.69	22	55.63	32	50.88	42	44.59	52	36.95	62	28.17
2	59.96	13	58.46	23	55.23	33	50.32	43	43.88	53	36.11	63	27.24
3	59.92	14	58.22	24	54.81	34	49.74	44	43.16	54	35.46	64	26.31
4	59.88	15	57.95	25	54.36	35	49.15	45	42.43	55	34.41	65	25.39
5	59.77	16	57.67	26	53.93	36	48.54	46	41.68	56	33.55	66	24.41
6	59.67	17	57.38	27	53.46	37	47.92	47	40.92	57	32.67	67	23.45
7	59.56	18	57.06	28	52.97	38	47.28	48	40.15	58	31.79	68	22.48
8	59.42	19	56.73	29	52.47	39	46.63	49	39.36	59	30.90	69	21.51
9	59.26	20	56.38	30	51.96	40	45.96	50	38.57	60	30.00	70	20.52
10	59.09												

NOTE.—At the equator, degrees of longitude and latitude are of the same length; but as we go from the equator, every degree of longitude grows gradually less, until at the poles the degree terminates in a point. (See illustration of "Meridians" on page 12.) Geographical miles may be converted into English miles by multiplying them by 60.07.

TO FIND THE DISTANCE BETWEEN ANY TWO PLACES ON THE GLOBE.

Rule.—Lay the quadrant of altitude over the two places. Count the number of degrees between them: multiply that number by 60 to give the answer in geographical miles, or by 60.07 to give the answer in English miles.

QUESTIONS.—When it is 12 o'clock noon at London, what o'clock is it at Barbados, Bermuda, &c.? at Adelaide, Algiers, &c.? How is longitude by difference of time found? How is latitude by a brass meridian on a terrestrial globe found? How is longitude so found? How many geographical miles in a degree of longitude at the equator? How many miles in a degree of longitude in latitude 10°? in latitude 20°? in latitude 40°? in latitude 50°—up to 90°? What is the length of a degree of longitude at the poles? How is the distance between any two places on the globe found?

Entered, according to the Act of the Provincial Parliament, in the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-one, by JOHN LOVELL, in the Office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada.

ected.

Long. W.	
188	28
8	5
28	46
174	45
13	22
7	26
4	22
73	56
81	19
88	28
18	28
28	55
12	35
77	40
13	43
9	50
114	10
140	0
35	20
80	22
14	81
40	55
144	55
11	34
2	20
116	28
13	30
30	19
18	3
9	11
151	14
48	0
7	40
16	23

itude is required

ACE.
s the poles: the
e figure indicates
he meridian will
ough Greenwich,
]

ITUDE.

Lat.	Geog. Miles.
81	9.38
82	8.85
83	7.32
84	6.23
85	5.23
86	4.18
87	3.14
88	2.09
89	1.05
90	0.00

ee of longitude
al miles may be

y 60 to give the

is longitude by
y geographical
to 40° F in lati-
a found?

he Office of the

A.M. CLOCKS OF THE WORLD P.M.

MONTRÉAL	QUÉBEC	TORONTO	OTTAWA	MALTA	BOMBAY	CALCUTTA	HONG-KONG
KINGSTON	HAMILTON, C.W.	LONDON, C.W.	HALIFAX, N.S.	SYDNEY, N.S.W.	CAPE TOWN	ADELAIDE, AUS.	MELBOURNE, AUS.
ST. JOHN'S, N.F.	FREDERICTON, N.B.	DUBLIN	EDINBURGH	AUCKLAND	TEHERAN	MADRAS	PARIS, FR.
VICTORIA, V.C.I.	CHARLOTTETOWN, P.E.I.	BARBADOS	LONDON, BY J. & W. ADAMS, QUÉBEC.	ALGIERS	ROME	VIENNA	
			LONDON.				
BERMUDA	HONOLULU	MADRID	LONDON.	TURIN	BRUSSELS	STUTTGART	
HAVANNA	MADEIRA	LISBON	BUENOS AYRES	STOCKHOLM	DRESDEN	BERLIN	MUNICH
LIMA	QUITO	PANAMA	MEXICO	BERNE	COPENHAGEN	HAMBURG	ST. PETERSBURG
NEW YORK	WASHINGTON	BOSTON	PHILADELPHIA	ATHENS	CONSTANTINOPLE	MECCA	JERUSALEM
NEW ORLEANS	DETROIT	SAN FRANCISCO	RIO JANEIRO	CAIRO	JEDDO	DELHI	PEKING

PREFATORY NOTICE.

THE Work here presented to the Public has been undertaken at the request of its enterprising proprietor, Mr. JOHN LOVELL, chiefly with the view of supplying a want which has for years been felt in Canada and in the adjoining British Provinces.

Having no Geographical text-book specially adapted to our own Schools, Trustees and Teachers have frequently been at a loss to decide whether they should confine themselves to a British or to an American work, or adopt both in the same School. The difficulty has arisen in a great measure from the fact, that in British and in American Geographies the descriptive parts have been treated by the writers from a local rather than a general stand-point. The British Geographies (although excellent text-books for European schools) are frequently found to be unnecessarily minute in regard to the British Isles and adjacent countries, at the expense of both the American Continent and the British Colonies. The writers of American Geographies, on the other hand, in their anxiety to give prominence to the United States, have (with few exceptions) dwarfed, into an insignificance quite incompatible with their political and social rank among nations, the great countries of Europe, and their numerous Colonies. Nor should it be overlooked, in connection with this feature of American Geographies, that occasion is too frequently taken, both by historical allusion and direct statement, to prejudice the ingenuous pupil against the Government and institutions of our glorious fatherland. Loyalty to a Sovereign whose eminent virtues have caused her to be everywhere loved and revered for her own sake, no less than a feeling of patriotic affection towards our own country, alike forbid us to place text-books in the hands of our children, the positive tendency of which is to prejudice their young minds against that country, and against all that is dear and precious to us as the legacy of our forefathers.

There are a few features of this publication to which it may be proper to refer:

1. **BRIEF TABULAR VIEWS AND STATEMENTS.**—Information in a tabular form has been added to those introductory paragraphs which relate to the general geography of each of the principal divisions of the Globe. Tables have also been introduced in the other more important sections of the work, which relate to Europe and America, and to the British possessions in various parts of the World. Not only have the political divisions of each quarter of the Globe been thus classified (including such brief historical facts as could be given), but a summary of the physical features of each sea-coast, and of the adjacent interior, has also been inserted.

2. **PROMINENT NOTICE OF EACH BRITISH COLONY.**—As these Colonies have generally been summarily treated, both in British and American works, the Author has felt that something more than the usual passing reference was due to them.

3. **ABSENCE OF POLITICAL ALLUSIONS AND DEPRECIATIONS.**—On this subject the Author has been especially guarded. Historical facts of general interest have, in some instances, been given; but they are not of a kind calculated or intended to offend.

4. **PRONUNCIATION OF NAMES OF PLACES.**—The pronunciation of many of the names of places mentioned in the text has been carefully given from the latest authorities. The derivation of the names of countries has also been given in most cases where it was considered reliable.

5. **NEW MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.**—It may be proper to state here, that an entirely new series of maps has been constructed, at great expense, for this Geography, by draftsmen in Canada. The latest available information, together with some details not to be found in other similar maps, has been incorporated in most of this series. In addition, it may be proper to state, that the more important explorations of Stuart and other travellers in Australia, as also those of Dr. Livingstone and others in Africa, have been inserted on the maps of these countries respectively, and referred to in the body of the work. The most reliable information, both in regard to physical and political geography and statistics, has been incorporated in the text. The illustrations are highly finished, and have been obtained from authentic sources.* Very many of them have been reduced from large original prints and photographs. Several of the most beautiful engravings in the Geography are the product of Canadian art and skill; especially the illustrations of the animals of each Continent, and the views of London, New York, the Falls of Niagara, and St. John, New Brunswick.

6. **AUTHORITIES CONSULTED.**—The statistics and other information inserted in this Geography have been compared with Lippincott's Gazetteer, with late British Parliamentary Blue-Books (relating to the Colonies), Bohn's Pictorial Hand-Book of Geography (London edition, 1860), Mackay's Manual of Modern Geography (Edinburgh edition, 1861), the American Almanac for 1861, &c. It is, however, worthy of remark, that, out of the numerous authorities consulted by the Author, scarcely two of them were found to agree in regard to particular facts. The population-returns inserted are those of from 1855 to 1860.

The Author now submits the work to the Public, with the hope that what has been to him a labour of love will be received in the same kindly spirit; and that, if not perfect in all its details, it will nevertheless meet with a generous reception as another contribution to the heretofore scanty school-literature of Canada.

TORONTO, 27th March, 1861.

J. G. H.

A FEW WORDS TO THE TEACHER.

To the Teacher a few words from the Author may not be inappropriate. In teaching the geography of a country, a large map of the place described is an almost indispensable necessity. It aids in illustrating the lesson, gives interest to the instruction, and associates in the mind of the pupil the outline and chief features of the country, with its history (if referred to), its memorable places, and the achievements of its sons; thus giving interest to the otherwise dry details, and fixing indelibly in the mind of the pupil the lesson of instruction sought to be imparted by the teacher.

Where a large map is not accessible to the teacher, the map in the Geography itself should be used; but it would also be well to direct an expert pupil to draw upon the blackboard an enlarged outline of the country described,—its physical features, and political divisions. This adds interest and variety to the lesson; and even where large maps are available, practice of this kind is a sure means of imprinting upon the memory of the pupil the boundaries, physical features, and peculiarities of outline of the country thus depicted. Where this can be done by the class on a smaller scale, and as an exercise upon paper, from time to time,—accompanying the outline with a written sketch of the subject of the lesson,—clearness and accuracy, as well as thoroughness, will be acquired.

To the foot of each page have been added a few questions in the form of exercises on the preceding lesson. These questions are simply designed to indicate the nature of the lesson on the page; they may be varied or omitted at the discretion of the teacher.

It would greatly facilitate the labour of the teacher, were he, before assigning a lesson in this Geography, to test, by a few conversational questions, the pupil's knowledge of his own immediate neighbourhood and residence, or of the school-house, the adjacent hills, streams, valleys, roads; county, town, or village boundaries, &c. The pupil could thus be led to see, that the geographical descriptions contained in the text-book were but an aggregate of the local geographical knowledge possessed by himself and others, collected into a convenient and accessible shape.

NOTE.—In the pronunciation of some words in this Geography, letters printed in italics are silent; thus "Newfoundland" is intended to be pronounced "new-fun'-land." When the word is divided by hyphens, as Ni-ag'-a-ra, it should be pronounced as divided. The pronunciation of the more difficult words is given in brackets; thus, Prairie [pray'-re].

* To Messrs. BLACKIE & SONS, of Glasgow, the thanks of the Publisher are due for copies of some of the better class of engravings which have appeared in their admirable work, the *Imperial Gazetteer*, and which have been chiefly taken from recent books of travel.

The Author is under many obligations to the Census-Office, Washington, for population-returns of the various States and Territories for 1860. The Author is also greatly indebted to several other gentlemen, chiefly in Montreal and Quebec, who have kindly aided him in his labours.

1. De
Greek w
ries a de
2. D
(1) Ma
3. M
the relat
describo
various
ence, ar
4. P
conditio
Geology
under t
climate
History
5. P
into whi
out the
language
the earl
the pro
6. Sh
be thus
planets
the Bar
Physica
North A

7. T



Fig. 1.
point the fo
8.
senten

Q
brancl
actual

LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

"IN THE BEGINNING GOD CREATED THE HEAVENS AND THE EARTH."—Genesis 1. 1.

1. Derivation.—The term Geography is derived from two Greek words (*ge*, "earth," and *graph-e*, "writing"), and signifies a description of the Earth.

2. Divisions.—Geography is divided into three branches; viz., (1) Mathematical, (2) Physical, and (3) Political.

3. Mathematical (or Astronomical) Geography points out the relation which the Earth bears to the other heavenly bodies; describes its form, magnitude, and motions; and explains the various lines which, for scientific purposes and convenient reference, are imagined to be drawn upon its surface. (See Fig. 8.)

4. Physical Geography points out the natural divisions and conditions of the Earth's surface (page 7). Under the head of *Geology*, it investigates the structure of the Earth's crust (p. 9); under the head of *Meteorology*, it explains the peculiarities of climate and atmosphere (p. 9); and under the head of *Natural History*, it treats of animal and vegetable productions (p. 10).

5. Political Geography sketches the various states and empires into which the habitable parts of the World are divided, and points out their extent, population, commerce, government, religion, language, and civilization. Under the head of *History*, it traces the early settlement of countries, their forms of government, and the progress of geographical discovery.

6. Single Illustrations of each of these three branches may be thus given: (1) That the Sun is 500 times larger than all the planets which revolve around it, is a *mathematical* fact; (2) that the Earth's surface is diversified by river, lake, and mountain, is a *physical* fact; and (3) that the fine Provinces included in British North America form part of the British Empire, is a *political* fact.

I. MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

7. The Earth's Appearance.—The Earth *appears* to us, as

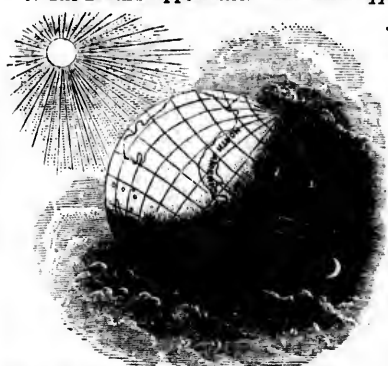


Fig. 1. EARTH, SUN, MOON, AND STARS, AS SEEN IN THE HEAVENS. A convenient point in the heavens, it would present an appearance like that in the foregoing picture, with the Sun, Moon, and Stars around it.

8. The Earth Represented.—The Earth is generally represented either on a map or a globe. When the map is drawn on

the usual equatorial projection (as in this Geography), the top indicates the north, and the bottom the south; to the right hand is the east, and to the left the west. The north and south points of the heavens are the directions respectively in which the needle of the mariner's compass points, with some variations, in the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. The east and the west are the places respectively at which the Sun appears to rise and to set on the 20th of March and 23rd September: on other days it rises and sets near them. The North, South, East, and West are, therefore, called the cardinal or chief points of the compass. Intermediate points of the compass are named according to their nearness to any of these cardinal points. A person turning to the Sun at noon, faces the south; his back is to the north; his right hand is to the west, and his left to the east. Maps are also drawn on a polar projection, representing both the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. (See explanation of these four projec-



Fig. 2.—THE MARINER'S COMPASS.

9. Designation.—The Earth is called a *PLANET* ("wanderer") from the revolving character of its *motion* (see section 15, page 7); a *WORLD*, from its being part of a *created* system; and a *BALL*, *GLOBE*, or *SPHERE*, from its being *rounded* in form.

10. In Shape the Earth has the appearance of an orange, and is called an *oblate spheroid*; that is, a rounded body which has been slightly flattened at the top and bottom, or two opposite poles, owing to the rapidity of its spinning motion. Its longest diameter (through the equator) is 7,925 miles, and its shortest (from the north to the south pole) 7,899,—difference 26 miles.

11. Proof that it is round: (1) from sea the tops of mountains, and from land the tops of ships, are first seen; (2) in cutting canals, a dip of about eight inches in a mile must be allowed in order to maintain a uniform depth of water; (3) the shadow which the Earth throws upon the Moon during a lunar eclipse is always circular; (4) the Sun is always apparently rising and setting on some parts of the Earth's

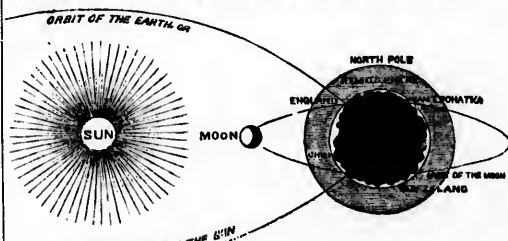


Fig. 3.—RELATIVE POSITIONS OF THE EARTH, SUN, AND MOON; ETC.

[This illustration shows one of the relative positions of the Earth, Sun, and Moon, (for they are continually changing). It also shows the orbits of the Earth and Moon; a profile of the land and water surface of the Earth; the relative positions of certain places on the Globe; the atmosphere which surrounds the Earth; and the rays of light which shoot out in all directions from the Sun.]

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the meaning of the word Geography? 2. Into what branches is Geography divided? 3. Of what does the mathematical branch treat? 4. the physical? 5. the political? 6. Give illustrations of each branch. 7. What appearance has the Earth to us? What is its actual form? 8. How is the Earth represented? 9. What is its designation? 10. its shape? 11. Prove that it is round. Explain the illustrations.

surface, but on no two places, which are due east and west of each other, at the same moment; (b) in going north or south, new constellations appear to rise above, or set below, the horizon; (c) travellers continuing their journey due east or west, due north or south, or to any intermediate point of the compass, from a given place, will reach the same place again if they continue to keep on in a direct course. The first voyage round the World was made by Magellan's Expedition, which sailed from Spain in September 1519, and returned in September 1522.

12. Size and Motion.—The Earth is nearly 25,000 miles in circumference, and (7,926, or say) 8,000 in diameter. It is about 95,000,000 miles from the Sun, and 237,000 from the Moon. It

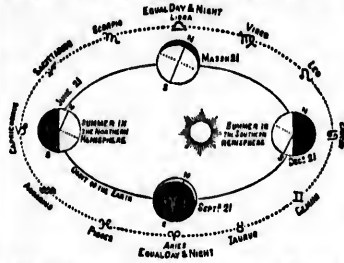


FIG. 4.—THE ZODIAC, WITH THE POSITION OF THE EARTH IN EACH OF THE FOUR SEASONS.

has 3 motions; viz., (1) through space as part of the Solar System; (2) daily on its axis, in 24 solar hours, equal to a sidereal day (measured by the stars) of 23 hours, 56 minutes, and 4 seconds; and (3) yearly in its orbit round the Sun, in 365 days, 6 hours, 9 minutes, and 10 seconds. The daily rotation of the Earth produces day and night; its annual revolution, and the inclination (or leaning) of its axis to the plane of its orbit, at an angle of 23° 28', cause the change of seasons, known as Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter. (See Figs. 4 and 8.)

13. Imaginary Lines.—The Earth being rounded or shaped like a sphere, imaginary circles and other lines are drawn upon it for geographical purposes. Of these lines the following definitions are given:

- (1.) The *circumference* (about 3 times the length of the diameter) of a circle is the line which bounds it. (Fig. 5.) The circumference of a circle is divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees*.^{*} A *minute* is the 60th part of a degree; and a *second* is the 60th part of a minute.
- (2.) *Diameter* is a straight line passing from one point of the circumference to another through the centre. (Figs. 5 and 6.) *Radius* is a straight line (and *radi-i*, lines) drawn from the centre to the circumference. *Arc* is a portion of the circumference, as shown in Fig. 5.

- (3.) A *great circle* of a sphere is one whose plane (see Fig. 8) passes through its centre; a *less* or *small circle* is one whose plane does not pass through the centre. (See Fig. 8.)
- (4.) A straight line passing from north to south through the centre of our Globe or Earth, about which it revolves, is called its *axis*. One end of this line is called the *north pole*, and the other end the *south pole*. (See Fig. 8.)
- (5.) The *equator* is a line, or great circle, passing round the Earth equidistant from the north and south poles. (See Figs. 8 and 9.)
- (6.) A *meridian* is a line running through any place from north to



FIG. 5.—CIRCUMFERENCE, DIAMETER, RADIUS, &c. (See Fig. 8) through its centre; a *less* or *small circle* is one whose plane does not pass through the centre. (See Fig. 8.)

^{*} A *degree* is the angle at the centre subtended by the 3600th part of the circumference, and does not vary with the size of the circle. The term *degree* is often used as an abbreviated mode of expression for *arc* of a degree. In this sense, if the circumference be 360 miles, then a degree of that circle will be one mile long; if the circle be 360 inches in circumference, then a degree will be one inch, &c. The circumference of the Earth is 25,000 geographical miles, of 60 to a degree, or 25,000 English miles, of 60.7 to a degree. The equator consists of 360 degrees of 60 geographical miles each. Parallels of latitude, being smaller circles, have each degree, i. e. the arc of each degree, proportionately shorter, according to the size of the circle. (The divisions of the circumference of the circle into 360 equal parts took its origin from the length of the year, which was supposed to consist of 360 days, or 12 months of 30 days each.)

[†] The term *minute* is from the Latin *min-u-tum*, a small part. The term *seconds* is an abbreviated expression for *second minutes*, or *minutes of the second order*.

Astronomical Table.

60 Seconds (") make a Minute (')	3 Signs, or 90 Degrees, make a Quadrant of the Zodiac.
60 Minutes make a Degree (°).	12 Signs, or 4 Quadrants, or 360 Deg., complete the Zodiac.
360 Degrees make a Sign (♋).	
30 Degrees make a Sign of the Zodiac.	

QUESTIONS.—12. Give the size of the Earth, and its distance from the Sun and the Moon. Explain its motions, and the cause of the change of seasons. 13. Define the terms Circumference, Degree, Minute, and Second. Repeat the Astronomical Table. Define the terms Diameter, Radius, Arc, Great Circle, Small Circle, Axis, Pole, Equator, &c. 14. Define the terms Horizon, sensible and rational; Orbit, and Elliptic. Explain the illustrations.

south, and extending from pole to pole. A *first meridian* is one fixed upon by astronomers in different countries (such as at Greenwich, Paris, Washington, Ferro in the Canary Islands, &c.) from which the meridians of other places are calculated. In the maps of this and other British Geographies the first meridian is fixed at Greenwich. Those who live on the same meridian-line have their noon at the same moment, and their midnight at the same moment, unless they live on opposite sides of the Earth. [See the engravings of "Meridians" on page 12; see also "Antipodes," paragraph (14) below].

Geographically, the Earth is divided by the equator into the northern and southern hemispheres, or half-globes, and, by a meridian-line, into the western and eastern hemispheres. (See pages 11, 12, and 13.)

(7.) *Longitude* is the distance of a place east or west of a first meridian. It is expressed in degrees at the top and bottom of a map, and is called either east longitude or west longitude. (Figs. 8 & 13.)

(8.) *Latitude* is the distance of a place north or south of the equator, and is called either north latitude or south latitude. Latitude is marked in degrees at the sides of a map. *Parallels of latitude* are smaller circles parallel to the equator. (See Fig. 8, and engraving on page 12.) Those who live on the same parallels of latitude have an equal length of day and night. In all countries, latitude is reckoned from the equator.

(9.) The *arctic* and *antarctic*, or *polar*, circles extend round the N. and S. poles, and are respectively 23° 28' S. and N. from them. (Fig. 8, and p. 12.)

(10.) The *tropics* are two smaller circles parallel to the equator, and respectively 23° 28' north and south from it. The tropic north of the equator is called the Tropic of Cancer; and that south of it, the Tropic of Capricorn. (See Fig. 8, and page 12.)

(11.) *Circles.*—The equator, the horizon, the ecliptic, and all the meridians, are great circles. The tropics, the arctic and antarctic circles, and the parallels of latitude, are small circles. (See Fig. 8.)

(12.) *Zones* are belts passing round the Earth at equal distances from the equator, and parallel to it. The tropics and polar circles divide the Globe into five zones: viz., the *tropical zone*, within the tropics; the two *temperate zones*, north and south of the tropical zone; and the N. and S. *frigid zones*, between the polar circles and the poles. (Fig. 8, and p. 12.)

(13.) *Isothermal lines*, from two Greek words (*iso*, "equal," and *ther-me*, "heat"), are imaginary lines passing through those points on the Earth's surface at which the mean annual temperature is the same. (14.) The *Antipodes*, from two Greek words (*anti*, "opposite," and *pod*, "the foot"), are any two places on the surface of the Earth; at one of which, the feet of those living there are diametrically opposite to the feet of those living at the other place. When it is day at one place, it is night at the other; and when it is summer at such place, it is winter at the other. Antipodes Island, near New Zealand, (see map on page 12.) is opposite to London.

14. Astronomical Definitions. (1.) The *horizon* is either *sensible* or *rational*. The sensible horizon is the boundary-line of our circle of vision, where the sky and the Earth appear to meet. The plane of this horizon is the level surface on which the spectator stands. The rational horizon is always parallel to the visible horizon. Its plane runs through the centre of the Earth. (See Figs. 8 and 10, on this page, and paragraph (6) of section 14, on page 7.)

(2.) An *orbit* is the path in the heavens of a planet or other celestial body. (See Figs. 8 and 11.) A planet's orbit is elliptical, or nearly circular. (3.) The *ecliptic* is the apparent path of the Sun in the heavens in the course of a year, but the *real path* of the Earth round the Sun (although the Sun has an orbit of its own (section 17, page 7)), and from some part of the ecliptic its rays are always vertical on the Earth. It is called the ecliptic because every eclipse of the Sun or of the Moon takes place when the Moon is in or near its plane. The points where the orbit of

* From the Greek word *tropo*, "a turning"; as the Sun alternately turns again towards the equator after reaching 23° 28' north or south of it.



FIG. 8.—CELESTIAL SPHERE; IMAGINARY LINES DRAWN ROUND A SMALL INFERIOR GLOBE.



FIG. 10.—THE HORIZON.

the Moon a "tie or" (4) Th each side annual r (front or which the of the or represent signs are (5) Th is the po 12. Th planets, n nices n Greek A nance of L

Fig. 11.—A (1.) Th (2.) M (3.) V (4.) Th (5.) M (6.) Th (7.) Ju (8.) Sa (9.) U (10.) N

JUPITER URANUS NEPTUNE SATURN COMPAR OF TH tions; v the Ean when b when b combin the ooe * The Only th being di Q and Fig 26. Wh areas, l

The Moon crosses the ecliptic are called *nodes*, from the Latin word *no-dus*, a "tie or knot." (See Fig. 3, page 6.)

(4) The *zodiac* is a space or belt 16 degrees broad, or 8 degrees on each side of the ecliptic. Within it all the larger planets perform their annual revolution. It is called *zodiac* from the Greek word *zodiacos* (from *zōtios*, "a little animal?"), because all the stars, in the 12 parts into which the Ancients divided it, were formed into constellations and most of the constellations were called after some animal. These 12 parts are represented by signs, viz. *Aries, Taurus*, &c., as shown in Fig. 4. Six of these signs are in the northern, and six in the southern, celestial hemisphere.

(5) The *zenith* is the point of the heavens exactly overhead. The *na-dir* is the point of the heavens directly opposite to the zenith. (See Fig. 3.)

15. The **Heavenly Bodies** which revolve round the Sun, are the *planets*, the *comets*, and the *asteroids*. Planet, from a Greek word, signifies "wanderer," to distinguish it from a *fixed star*. Comets (from the Greek *ko-metes*, "long-haired") are so called from the hair-like appearance of the tail which generally accompanies them. They are not solid bodies like the planets, but gaseous, and have one point of their orbit near the Sun, and the opposite point very far off. Asteroids (or Planetoids) are smaller planets, or parts of planets. The Sun and all these revolving bodies form our Solar System. (See Fig. 11.) Beyond this solar system are the Fixed Stars, supposed to be the suns and centres of other systems. The Milky Way is composed of *neb-u-læ*, or clusters of stars.

16. Our **Solar System** (*Sol*, the Sun, being the largest body in it) might be thus represented:

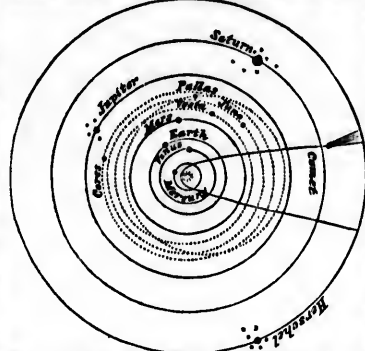


FIG. 11.—AN APPROXIMATION TO THE RELATIVE ORBITS OF THE PLANETS ROUND THE SUN.

- (1) THE SUN, by a ball one foot in diameter.
- (2) MERCURY, by a mustard-seed 42 feet distant.
- (3) VENUS, by a pea 78 feet distant.
- (4) THE EARTH, by a larger pea 108 feet distant; and a rape-seed for THE MOON, four inches from the pea.
- (5) MARS, by a large mustard-seed or a small radish-seed 160 feet distant.
- (6) THE ASTEROIDS, by grains of sand 800 feet distant.
- (7) JUPITER, by a small billiard-ball 650 feet distant.
- (8) SATURN, by a large marble 1,080 feet distant.
- (9) URANUS, by a cherry 2,050 feet distant.
- (10) NEPTUNE, by a plum 3,900 feet distant.

17. The Sun is 883,000 miles in diameter. It turns on its axis, from west to east, once in 25 days, 8 hours, and 9 minutes. It also moves onwards in space, in an orbit of its own, at the rate of 154,000,000 miles per annum. Its weight is 355,000 times greater than that of the Earth, and its size 1,400,000 times larger. Its size is 500 times greater than the combined bulk of all the planets that revolve around it.

18. (1) **Mercury**, the smallest planet, and the one nearest to the Sun (being only 37 millions of miles from it), is 3,140 miles in diameter. It is seldom seen except by the aid of a telescope.

19. (2) **Venus**, 69 millions of miles from the Sun, is nearest to the Earth, and is more brilliant than the other planets (diam. 7,700 m.). When east of the Sun, Venus is the Evening Star; and when west, the Morning Star.

20. (3) The Earth is accompanied by a moon or satellite (that is "attendant"), which revolves round it in 27½ days; but takes 29½ days to attain the same relative position with regard to the Sun, owing to the progress of the Earth in its orbit. The Moon has three motions; viz. a monthly one round the Earth, a yearly one round the Sun with the Earth, and a monthly one on its own axis. The Moon (diam. 2,150 m.), when between us and the Sun, causes an eclipse of the Sun; the Earth, when between the Sun and the Moon, causes an eclipse of the Moon. The combined attraction of the Sun and the Moon is the supposed cause of the ocean tides. [See sec. 12, p. 6; also THE TIDES, sec. 5, par. (9), p. 8.]



FIG. 12.

* There are about seventy primary planets, including more than sixty asteroids. Only the eight largest and most important are here enumerated. New ones are being discovered from time to time. Moons are secondary planets.

QUESTIONS.—Define Node, Zodiac, Zenith, Nadir. 15. What Heavenly Bodies revolve round the Sun? What is said of Planets, Comets, Asteroids, and Fixed Stars? 16. How might our Solar System be represented? Give the number of Planets and Asteroids. 17-25. What is said of the Sun, &c.? 26. What is said of the Planetoids? 1. Give the proportions of land and water on the Earth's surface. 2. Give the five great land-divisions, their areas, length of coast-line, population, &c. 3. Define Continent, Island, Peninsula, Isthmus, &c. Name the highest mountain. Explain the illustrations.

21. (4) **Mars**, 4,100 miles in diameter, is 144 millions of miles from the Sun, and has a red or fiery appearance.

22. (5) **Jupiter**, 404 millions of miles from the Sun, is the largest of all the planets. Its diameter (90,000 miles) is ten times greater than that of the Earth. It has few moons, and is surrounded by several belts.

23. (6) **Saturn**, 908 millions of miles from the Sun, has eight moons and three rings; two of these rings are bright. Diameter: 79,000 miles.

24. (7) **Uranus** was discovered by Herschel in 1781, and is 1,822 millions of miles from the Sun. It has six moons. Uranus is (as in Fig. 11) sometimes called Herschel; also Georgium Sidus (or "Georgian Star"), after King George the Third. Diameter 34,500 miles.

25. (8) **Neptune** is 2,609 millions of miles from the Sun. Its place in the heavens was calculated and predicted by Adams and Le-verrier ("Cœcy") and discovered in 1846, by Galle. It has two moons. Diam. 42,000 m.

26. The **Planetoids**, or **Asteroids** (from Greek *aster*, "a star," and *idos*, "form"), of which there are more than 60,—all discovered since 1801,—are comparatively small bodies, varying from 200 miles to 2,000 miles in diameter, and revolving in orbits between those of Mars and Jupiter. They are from 220 to 308 millions of miles from the Sun.

II. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

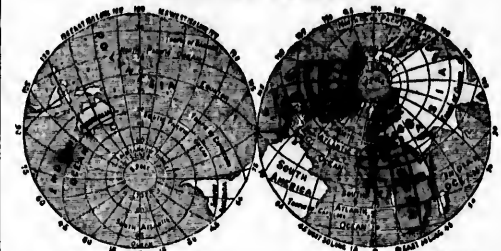


FIG. 13.—RELATIVE PROPORTIONS OF LAND AND WATER OF THE GLOBE.

1. The Earth's Surface is divided into land and water, as follows:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Northern Hemisphere..... | land 38,000,000, and water 60,500,000 |
| Southern Hemisphere..... | land 13,500,000, and water 85,000,000 |
| Total..... | 107,000,000 ... land 51,500,000, and water 145,500,000 |

2. **Land-Divisions**.—The following are the five great divisions of the Earth:

Divisions.	Area in English Sq. Miles.	Length of Coast-line.	Miles of Surface to one of Coast.	Estimated Population.	Population to the Sq. Mile.	Mean Height in feet above the Sea.
America.....	15,500,000	87,000	410	68,000,000	4	N.A., 748; S.A., 1123
Europe.....	5,800,000	17,200	220	275,000,000	72	671
Asia.....	17,000,000	30,000	560	475,000,000	49	1,100
Oceania.....	4,000,000	—	—	52,000,000	20	—
Africa.....	11,400,000	16,000	710	150,000,000	13	—

3. Land occupies about one fourth of the Earth's surface, and its natural divisions are classified as follows: (See Fig. 14, p. 8.)

- (1) A **Continent** (from the Latin *con*, "together," and *teneo*, "I hold") is a vast body of land containing several countries.
- (2) An **Island** is a portion of land entirely surrounded by water.
- (3) A **Peninsula** (from the Latin *pen*, "almost," and *in-si-la*, "island") is a portion of land almost surrounded by water.
- (4) An **Isthmus** is a narrow "neck" of land uniting two larger portions.
- (5) A **Cape** is a point of land projecting into an ocean, a sea, a lake, or a large river. A cape is also called, in some countries, *point*, *mull*, *naze*, *ness*, *head*, and *headland*; or *promontory*, when it is high and rocky.
- (6) A **Coast or Shore** is the margin of land bordering on an ocean, a sea, a lake, or a river.
- (7) A **Mountain** is a lofty elevation of land; its highest point is called a *peak*,—the altitude of which is reckoned as so many feet above the water-surface or sea-level; and the lowest parts are called its *base*. Mountains occur singly, and in chains or ranges. Smaller elevations are called *hills*. *Highlands* are a mountainous upland region. Mount Everest (29,000 ft.), one of the Himalayas, north of Calcutta, is the highest mountain in the World (page 79).

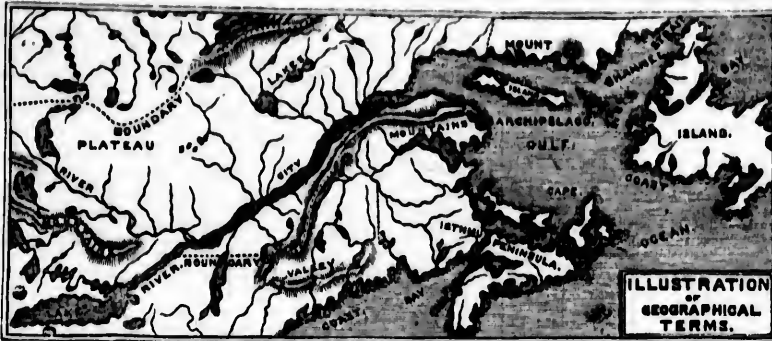


Fig. 14.

(8.) A **Valley** is a tract of country lying between mountains or hills. In Scotland a valley is called *strath* and *glen*; and in England, *vale*, *dale*, &c.

(9.) A **Plain** is a portion of level country. An extensive elevated or upland plain is called a *plateau* or *table-land*. *Highlands* are lands in which there are few conspicuous mountains.

(10.) A **Prairie** [pray'-re] is an extensive tract of country, mostly level, destitute of trees, and covered with tall, coarse grass. Prairies are also called, in various countries, *pampas*, *landes* [lands], *llanos* [lah'-noes], *steppes* [steps], *situs* or *selvas*, and *savannas*.

(11.) A **Desert** is a barren tract of country, usually consisting of sand and rocks.

(12.) An **Oasis** [o'-sis] is a fertile spot in a desert.

4. **Water covers three fourths of the Earth's surface, and its natural divisions are classified as follows:** (See Fig. 14.)

(1.) An **Ocean** is a vast body of salt water, separating continents.

(2.) A **Sea** is a smaller body of water than an ocean.

(3.) An **Archipelago** [ar-ke-] is a part of a sea containing a cluster of islands.

(4.) A **Gulf, Bay, or Inlet** is a body of water extending inland. In some countries an inlet is called a *fjord* [fee-ord].

(5.) A **Lake** is a body of fresh water surrounded by land. Some salt-lakes, when large, are called *seas*. A lake is sometimes formed by the expansion of a river in its course: its contraction is called the *outlet*. Small lakes are called *ponds*. In Ireland and Scotland, respectively, lake is called *lough* and *loch*.

(6.) A **Strait** is a narrow passage connecting two larger bodies of water,—as the Strait of Belle Isle.

(7.) A **Channel** is a wider passage than a strait.

(8.) A **Sound** is a shallow passage which may be fathomed by a ship's lead. (See various "Sounds" in the Arctic regions.)

(9.) An **Estuary** (from the Latin *es-tu-o*, "to boil or foam") is the enlarged mouth of a river, or the entrance to a bay or inlet, so exposed to the waves of the sea, or to the tide, as to cause the waters which there come in contact to boil and foam. The mouth of a river is also called an *outlet*, and, when wide, a *frith* or *frith*.

(10.) A **Harbour** is a sheltered bay forming a safe port or haven for ships. A *road* or *roadstead* is a good anchorage, off a shore, for ships.

(11.) A **River** is a large stream of fresh water. Where it begins is the *source*, where it ends is the *mouth* or *outlet*, and the direction which it takes between these two points is the *course*. A *delta* (from the Greek letter Δ) is a triangular-shaped island or cluster of islands produced by the deposition of mud, and causing the bed of a river near its mouth into several branches. The *separation* is the hollow passage (with banks on either side) in

which the river flows, and the *basin* is the region of country drained by the river.* The ridge or high land separating two river-basins is called a *water-shed*. A *creek* or *rivulet* is a small stream, *rill*, or *brook* issuing from a *spring*. (In Europe, "creek" means an inlet, or arm of the sea stretching inland.) A *canal* is an artificial river designed for the passage of vessels. A *confluence* is where two rivers meet; and the river which there loses its name is called a *tributary* or *affluent*. *Rapids* are caused by a continuous descent and abrupt shallowness in the bed of the river; and *falls* or a *cascade*, by a precipice or sudden break in that descent. The falls of a large river, like Niagara, are called a *cataract*. In British North America a rapid is frequently called a *scull* [so].

5. **The Oceans** are the Atlantic (so called from Mount Atlas, in North Africa); Pacific (being placed when first navigated by Magellan, in 1520); Indian; Arctic (from the Greek word *arctos*, signifying "a bear," being under the constellation of the Great Bear); and Antarctic (from being anti or opposite to the Arctic). They are all connected, and form one vast expanse of water encircling the Globe. The bottom or bed of the ocean presents an appearance of mountains and plains, as on land. The greatest depth yet sounded is nine miles. The characteristics of the water of the ocean are its prevailing colour of deep bluish-green, its saltness, density, temperature, level, and depth; and its movements,—such as waves, tides, and currents.

(1.) The **Atlantic Ocean** lies between the Old and New Worlds. Its extreme length, from north to south, is about 9,000 miles, and its breadth from 3,000 to 5,000 miles. Area, 30 millions of square miles. (See W. Hem.)

(2.) The **Pacific Ocean** lies between Asia and America. It extends about 9,000 miles from north to south, and about 12,000 from east to west. Area, 70 millions of square miles. (See Western Hemisphere, page 12.)

(3.) The **Indian Ocean** lies to the south of Asia. It extends about 6,000 miles from north to south, and about 6,000 from east to west. Area, 23 millions of square miles. (See Eastern Hemisphere, page 12.)

(4.) The **Arctic Ocean** encircles the North Pole; and the **Antarctic Ocean**, the South Pole. Area of both oceans 20 millions of square miles.

(5.) **Waves** are caused by wind and tidal motion. The highest wave rarely exceeds forty feet from the trough of the sea to the wave's crest.

(6.) The **Tides** are the alternate rise and fall, or flow and ebb, at regular intervals, of the waters in the ocean, perceptible on the shore. *Spring* or high tides are caused by the joint attraction of the Sun and the Moon; and *neap* or low tides, by the attraction of the Sun and the Moon acting perpendicularly to each other.

(7.) **Ocean Currents** are chiefly caused by wind, attraction of the Sun and Moon (such as tides), unequal evaporation at different points, differences of temperature and density (caused by coldness and saltness), &c. These influences act singly or together. The chief currents are the north and south *polar currents*, and the *equatorial current*.

(8.) The **Polar Currents** are caused by the movement of the colder and heavier waters of the polar regions towards the warmer and lighter waters of the equator. Thus icebergs find their way, in the spring of the year, towards the tropical waters, where they sink or melt away.

(9.) The **Equatorial Current** is caused by a general movement of the tropical waters from east to west, to make room for the cold currents of the polar regions. The most remarkable movement of this current is known as—

(10.) The **Gulf Stream**; so called from having its chief focus in the Gulf of Mexico. This stream enters the Gulf from the Caribbean Sea, makes a circuit partly round it, and emerges into the Atlantic through the narrow passage between Florida and Cuba. Passing along the United-States coast as far as Cape Cod, it diverges and touches the southern point of Nova Scotia; then that of Newfoundland, where, on the Grand Bank, it meets with the arctic current from Baffin's Bay. The unequal temperatures of the two great currents of water which meet here, cause the celebrated fogs on

* The right bank of a river is the bank on the right-hand side when going down the stream, and the left bank is consequently that on the opposite side.

QUESTIONS.—Define Valley, Plain, Prairie, Desert, and Oasis. 4. How are the water-divisions of the Earth's surface classified? Define Ocean, Sea, Archipelago,—Gulf, Bay, or Inlet,—Lake, Strait, Channel, Sound, Estuary, Harbour, River and its parts. Point out some of these divisions on the illustration. 5. Describe the Oceans. What is said of Waves? Describe the Tides, Ocean Currents, Polar Currents, Equatorial Current, and Gulf Stream.



Fig. 15.

the ocean it meets polar... winds, bergs, meteor... caused the surface... The ru... (4) a... a torn... (1) the... the A... to the... Indian... toward... every c... (2) c... regions... (3) a... almost... (4) t... through... (5) A... opposit... Sun's r... in the... (7) a... tiful fo... Asia, A... mounta...

(8.) J... into dr... (9.) J... (bery, C... (10.) b... become... (11.)... (12.)... (13.)... oocler... (14.)... a whir... (15.)... star, a... (16.)... are be... northe... Austr... (17.)... The m... (18.)... earth... (19.)... 7. C... of the... accord... state o... are va... Earth... direct... ally b... sequen... as we... Q... Light... Boreas... the E... Meroc...

the coast. Passing the Banks of Newfoundland, its course is eastward till it meets the British Isles. By these it is divided; one part going into the polar basin of Spitz-berg, the other entering the Bay of Biscay.

6. The Chief Natural Phenomena which are observable, are winds, clouds, lightning, thunder, rain, rainbows, snow, hail, icebergs, glacio-erns (glas-e), avalanches, fogs, dew, water-spouts, meteors, aurora-borealis, volcanoes, earthquakes, and tides.

(1.) Winds are either periodical, constant, or variable; and are chiefly caused by a difference in the temperature of the atmosphere, with which the Earth is surrounded to a height of about 50 miles. Near the Earth's surface it becomes heated, and thus becoming lighter, ascends upward. The rush of cold air to supply its place, produces wind. The velocity of this movement is characterized by its being (1) gentle, (2) brisk, (3) high, (4) a squall, (5) a violent storm, (6) a hurricane or revolving storm, and (7) a tornado, cyclone, typhoon, or violent hurricane. The Local Winds are (1) the Sirocco and Solano of the South of Europe, which blow from Africa; (2) the Har-mat-tan, which blows from the desert of Sahara to the Atlantic; (3) the Si-m-moon' or Sa-mi-el (poisonous), which is peculiar to the deserts of Africa and Arabia; (4) the periodical Monsoon of the Indian Ocean; (5) the constant Trade-Winds of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans, which generally blow from the north-east and south-east towards the Equator; (6) the Land and Sea Breezes which occur on almost every coast, and blow alternately, night and day; and (7) the Lo-vent'er, an easterly land-breeze of the Mediterranean.

(2.) Clouds are partially-condensed water-vapour floating in the higher regions of the atmosphere.

(3.) Lightning is a brilliant flash of light accompanying the discharge of atmospheric electricity from one cloud to another, or to or from the earth.

(4.) Thunder is a loud sound produced by electricity in passing rapidly through the atmosphere.

(5.) Rain is vapour condensed into water, and falling in liquid drops.

(6.) A Rainbow is a beautiful arch, visible, during a shower, on a cloud opposite to the Sun; and is caused by the reflection and refraction of the Sun's rays, by drops of rain, into seven distinct colours. It is God's "bow in the cloud," and a token of his covenant with man. Genesis ix. 13-17.

(7.) Snow is minute vapour-drops congealed and crystallized into beautiful forms while falling. Snow falls upon Europe, the northern parts of Asia, Africa, and North America, and on the southern parts of Australia, Africa, and South America. Within the tropics, it falls only on the high mountains, at an elevation of from 15,000 to 20,000 feet above the sea.



Fig. 14.—SNOW LINE OR LIMIT IN THE DIFFERENT ZONES.

(8.) Hail is rain falling from a higher and warmer atmosphere, and frozen into drops in its descent.

(9.) Icebergs are floating masses of ice of great height and size, like hills (berg, German, signifying "hill"), generally detached from the Polar shores.

(10.) Glaciers are immense masses of ice formed by melted snow which becomes frozen in the gorges or valleys of snow-capped mountains.

(11.) An Avalanche is a sudden descent of a mass of snow or ice.

(12.) Fogs are clouds of dense vapour resting on the land or on water.

(13.) Dew is the moisture of the air condensed by contact with bodies cooler than the air.

(14.) A Water-spout is a violently-twisted column of water, caused by a whirlwind, and united with a cloud surcharged with water.

(15.) A Meteor is any luminous appearance in the air, such as a shooting-star, a halo, mirage, &c.; also such as an *igne fatuus* or "will-o'-the-wisp."

(16.) The Aurora Borealis ("northern daybreak") or Northern Lights are beautiful streaks of mellow light shooting up, on a clear night, from the northern horizon, and supposed to be electrical in their origin. The Aurora Australis or Southern Lights occur in the southern hemisphere.

(17.) A Volcano is a mountain giving vent to fire, smoke, ashes, or lava. The mouth, from which the fire, smoke, &c. issue, is called the *crater*.

(18.) An Earthquake is shaking, trembling, or concussion of the earth, caused by volcanic or other internal action.

(19.) For "The Tides," see paragraph (6) of section 5, page 8.

7. Climate, from the Greek word *kli-ma*, "a slope," was originally one of the thirty zones or belts with which the Ancients divided the Globe according to the obliquity of the Sun's course. It now signifies a general state of the atmosphere as regards temperature, wind, and moisture, which are varied chiefly by an unequal distribution of the Sun's rays upon the Earth's surface. The heat is greatest at the Equator, where the Sun is either directly overhead, or not more than 23° 28' north or south of it; it gradually becomes cooler as we approach the North and South Poles, in consequence of the Sun's rays falling more or less obliquely upon the Earth as we recede either way from the Equator. Climate is also affected by the

height of a place above the sea and its distance from it; the direction of mountain-ranges; the existence of large forests; prevalent winds; and the quantity of rain which falls upon the Earth's surface.

8. Geological Structure.—It is generally supposed that the interior of the Earth is in a state of intense heat, and was originally a fused mass, which became solid by cooling, and was finally, by the action of water and chemical forces, covered by successive layers of sediment. The solid portions of the Earth are called rocks. They are generally divided into stratified and unstratified. The former are made up of sandstones, limestones, and shales, with coal and metallic ores, and have been deposited from water in regular beds, or strata. These, which have a total thickness of many miles, are often disturbed and broken by movements of the Earth's crust, so that the lower beds are brought to the surface. The beds are marked by shells, corals, bones, and the remains of plants. These are called fossils, and serve to distinguish the successive formations of rocks. The rocks are classified into three great groups; viz. the Palaeozoic (Greek *pal-ai-os*, "ancient," and *zo-*, "life"), the Mesozoic (Greek *mes-o-*, "middle"), and the Cenozoic (Greek *ken-oi-os*, "recent"). The first, or lowest, contains ancient, the second, intermediate, and the third, recent forms of organic life. The rocks still lower than the palaeozoic, and supposed to be without fossils, are termed *Acidic* (Greek *ak-*, "without," and *so-*, "life"). By the stratified rocks belong marbles, slates, and metallic ores. These rocks are sometimes altered by igneous agencies and converted into crystalline or metamorphic rocks, such as gneiss, and mica slates. They even become melted, and, losing their stratification, are intruded into stratified deposits, and called *igneous* rocks, such as granite, porphyry, trap, and lava. These are supposed by many to be derived from the original fused matter of the Globe. When these melted rocks come to the surface, they form volcanoes. [See par. (17) of section 6, on this page.]

THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF METALS.

9. Minerals.—The substances of which the Earth's crust are formed are nearly all compound bodies. When analysed, they have been reduced to sixty-two elementary substances, which by chemists has been divided into two groups, called the metallic and the non-metallic. These compound bodies are called minerals, of which there are upwards of 500 species, arranged into 57 families and 7 orders.

10. Metals are sometimes found pure; but they are generally united with other substances, forming what are called ores. The metals are fifty in number,—the best known being gold, silver, copper, iron, lead, tin, zinc, mercury (or quicksilver), and platinum. The non-metallic substances are twelve; viz. oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon, sulphur, phosphorus, &c. Of the sixty-two elementary substances, hydrogen is the lightest, and platinum the heaviest.

(1.) Gold is the most valuable of the precious metals. It is found in grains, or gold-dust in a pure state; sometimes in lumps or "nuggets." In the United States there are two gold-regions; viz. the App-ah-lach-ian [sic] and the Californian. It is also found in Lunenburg, in British Columbia, in Vancouver Island, in Mexico, and in some districts of Central America; along the base of the Andes; and in Brazil. Gold is found in most parts of Europe, but seldom in large quantities. It is abundant in Western Siberia, the Ural Mountains, Japan, Western Africa, the Kong Mountains, and on the Niger (ny-ger) River. The gold-regions of Australia and California are the most productive. Gold is also found in Malaysia.

(2.) Platinum, a grayish metal, more rare and almost as valuable as gold, is found in the Ural Mountains, Brazil, Borneo, and California.

(3.) Silver is sometimes found pure; but it is generally mixed with gold, copper, lead, arsenic, or sulphur. Mexico, Peru, Bolivia, and Chili are noted for their silver-mines. The principal European mines are in Norway, Spain, Transylvania, and Hungary.

(4.) Iron is the most useful of all the metals. The countries where it is found in greatest abundance are Great Britain, Belgium, France, Germany, Norway, Sweden, Russia, the United States, and British N. America.

(5.) Copper, next to iron, is the most useful metal. The richest copper-mines in America are on the shores of Lakes Superior and Huron; in Lower Canada; and in Chili: the most noted of Europe are in England, Japan, Australasia, and Malaysia, also furnish copper.

(6.) Zinc (which is combined with copper to form brass) is found in abundance in Prussia and Belgium.

(7.) Lead is found in Great Britain, Ireland, Germany, France, Spain, Norway, the United States, and Canada.

(8.) Tin is found chiefly in England, Spain, and Saxony; also in Banca, one of the islands of Malaysia.

(9.) Mercury.—The principal quicksilver-mines are those of California; of Peru; of Idria, in Southern Austria; and of Almaden, in Spain.

(10.) Cobalt is chiefly used for imparting a blue colour to glass and porcelain. It is obtained chiefly from Germany and Norway.

(11.) Arsenic is procured chiefly from Germany.

(12.) Antimony and Bismuth are brittle substances, chiefly found in Germany. Combined with lead, they form a metal used for printing-types.

11. Inflammable Minerals.—The chief inflammable minerals are coal, jet, sulphur, bi-tu-men, and amber.

(1.) Coal, divided into three distinct species, viz. an-thra-cite, bituminous coal, and lig-nite, is found in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland, the Saskatchewan-River Valley (near the Rocky Mountains), Vancouver Island, the U. S. States, Canada, England, and other countries.

QUESTIONS.—6. What are the Chief Natural Phenomena? What causes the Wind? Describe each kind of Wind. What are Clouds? Describe Lightning, Thunder, Rain, a Rainbow, Snow and where it falls, Hail, Icebergs, Glaciers, an Avalanche, Fogs, Dew, a Water-spout, a Meteor, Aurora Borealis, a Volcano, and an Earthquake. 7. Give the former and present meaning of Climate. 8. Describe the Earth's structure? 9. What is said of the Earth's Crust? 10. What is said of the Metallic and Non-Metallic substances? Describe Gold, Platinum, Silver, Iron, Copper, Zinc, Lead, Tin, Mercury, Cobalt, Arsenic, Antimony, and Bismuth. 11. What are the chief Inflammable Minerals? What is said of Coal? Explain the illustration.

river flows, and in the region of...
...of high land...
...river-basins...
...inter-shed. A creek...
...is a small stream...
...brook issuing from a...
...a Europe, "creek"...
...in let, or arm of the...
...inland.) A...
...artificial river de-...
...the passage of ven-...
...fluence is where...
...meet; and the river...
...loses its name. It...
...butary or affluent...
...caused by a concen-...
...and abrupt...
...or a cascade, by...
...The falls of a...
...In British North

Mount Atlas, in...
...ted by Magellan, in...
...nifying "a bear,"...
...steroids (from being...
...and form one vast...
...bed of the ocean...
...land. The greatest...
...of the water of the...
...s saltness, density...
...such as waves, tides,

New Worlds. Its...
...and its breadth...
...ca. (See W. Hem.)...
...It extends about...
...east to west. Area...
...page 12.)...
...extends about 6,000...
...to west. Area, 53...
...e 18.)...
...the Antarctic Ocean...
...are miles.

The highest wave...
...is the wave's crest.



8. NEAR TIDES.
...ment of the colder...
...and lighter...
...the spring of the...
...away...
...movement of the...
...currents of the...
...is known as...
...chief focus in the...
...Caribbean Sea...
...Latin through the...
...the United States...
...point of Nova...
...Bank, it meets...
...temperatures of the...
...celebrated fogs on...
...when going down...
...the side...
...line Ocean, See...
...divisions on the...
...and Gulf Stream.

(2) Jet is a substance like coal, found in Yorkshire and some other regions, which is much used for mourning-ornaments, as necklaces, &c.

(3) Sulphur, sometimes called brimstone or burn-stone from its great combustibility, is found chiefly in Sicily.

(4) Bitumen is sometimes found in a fluid state, when it is called petroleum; in its solid state it is called asphaltum. In Canada, in the Island of Barbadoe (West Indies), in the vicinity of the Caspian Sea, and in Birmah, there are bitumen springs. In the Island of Trinidad (West Indies) there is a lake or pond of semi-fluid bitumen.

(5) Amber, a resinous substance often made into ornaments, is obtained chiefly on the shores of the Baltic in Prussia.

THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS.

12. The Geographical Distribution of Plants is dependent chiefly on climate, and on the moisture or dryness of the atmosphere. Vegetation of some kind exists in almost every part of the Globe: either in the soil, as trees, shrubs, and herbs; on the rocks, as lichens [litch-ens or lichen], &c.; in the water, as sea-wood, &c.; or on the snow, as the red or orange coloured plant mistaken by Arctic travellers for red snow.

13. Vast Number of Plants.—The number of known species* of plants is upwards of 100,000. Of these, grain, fruits, and tuberous roots are the principal food-plants; and the most important plants for clothing are cotton, flax, and hemp.

14. The Flora of the Torrid Zone embraces a richer variety, and has more brilliant and fragrant odours and more pungent taste, than that of any other part of the World. Here palme, bânanas, sugar-cane, coffee, cocoa-nuts, spices, rice, maize, arrow-root, casava-root, luscious fruits, timber-trees, and dyewoods, grow luxuriantly.

15. The Flora of the Temperate Zones grows freely during summer, but almost ceases growing in winter. It includes wheat, barley, oats, rye, maize, grasses, flax, hemp, the vine, the apple and similar fruit-trees, with berries and vegetables; also the oak, the hickory, the pine, the elm, the beech, the fir, the cedar, and the maple.

16. The Flora of the Frigid Zones.—There are few trees in these zones except stunted birch, beech, alder, pines, &c. Heaths grow slowly, and moss-plants and lichens are found on rocks and decayed wood.

THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMALS.

17. The Geographical Distribution of Animals is confined to the same areas as the plants. The animals which inhabit the Earth are naturally divided into three principal divisions; viz., the torrid (or tropical), the temperate, and the frigid. The fiercest animals are found in the torrid, the most useful in the temperate, and the most prolific in the Arctic zones. The cat-tribe (tiger, panther, &c.) degenerate as they recede from the tropics, while such animals as the bear and the whale improve in size, &c.

18. The Animals of the Torrid Zone are chiefly of immense size, including the elephant, the rai-noo-e-ros [-nos-], and the hippopotamus. There are also the cam-el, the gi-raffe (or ca-mel-o-pard), the buffalo, the tapir, the lion, the tiger, the puma, and the hyena; the vulture and the condor; the rattle-snake and the boa-constrictor. The sloth, the tou-can, the condor, and the humming-bird are peculiar to America; the giraffe, the crocodile, and the hippopotamus, to Africa; the dingo, the kangaroo, and the plat-y-pus or duck-billed otter, to Australia.

19. The Animals of the Temperate Zones are chiefly herbivorous (or herb-feeding), and useful to man; such as the horse, the ass, the ox, the buffalo, the deer, and the sheep. The beasts of prey are the wolf, the fox, the lynx, the bear, and the otter. Singing-birds are numerous.

20. The Animals of the Frigid Zones present few varieties; but the number in each species is very large, especially the birds of the Arctic regions, and the fish on the coasts of Newfoundland, Hudson Bay, Greenland, and Iceland. The principal animals are the white-bear, the moose, the rein-deer, the musk-ox, the white-fox, the polar-hare, and the lemming. Seals, whales, walruses, and innumerable me-du-sae inhabit the ocean. Of birds, we may mention sea-eagles, waders, gulls, cormorants, divers, pétrels, &c.

21. Classification.—Animals have been arranged into four grand divisions, viz.: I. The Vertebrated, or those with a backbone, of which there are four classes; viz., (1) Mammalia, or those giving milk, (2) Birds, (3) Reptiles, and (4) Fishes. II. The Molluscos or soft-bodied, of which there are eight classes, chiefly in hard shells. III. The Articulated or jointed, of which there are four classes; viz., (1) An-nel-ids, or ringed, such as worms, leeches, &c.; (2) Crustaceans, or soft-shelled, such as crabs, lobsters, &c.; (3) Spiders; (4) Insects. IV. The Radiated, or those whose structure radiates from a centre, of which there are five classes. This division is the lowest, and connects the animal and vegetable worlds. The known species in these divisions are as follows: I. Vertebrata, 20,000; II. Mollusca, 20,000; III. Articulata, 5,000; IV. Radiata, 5,000; total 50,000.

* A species comprises all the individuals that are supposed to come from a single stock or pair; and a ge-nus includes several species having certain properties in common.
 † The term flora is used to denote collectively the plants of any particular country. (The Roman goddess of flowers was called Flora.)
 ‡ A group of animals that inhabits any particular region, embracing all the species, both the aquatic and the terrestrial, is called its fau-na.
 § Medusa, a genus of gelatinous, radiated animals, sometimes called sea-nettles.

QUESTIONS.—Describe Jet, Sulphur, Bitumen, and Amber. 12. On what is the Geographical Distribution of Plants dependent? 13. How many species of Plants are there? Which are the most important? 14. What is said of the Flora of the Torrid Zone? 15. of the Temperate Zones? 16. of the Frigid Zones? 17. What is said of the Distribution of Animals? 18-20. of those of the Torrid, Temperate, & Frigid Zones? 21. How are animals classified? 22. What Wild Animals are most useful to man? 23. What is said of Mankind? Into what classes are Mankind divided? Explain the illustration.

22. The Wild Animals, &c. most useful to man are the following:

MAMMIFERA (MILK-BEARING).		REPTILES.	
Names.	Products.	Names.	Products.
The Greenland Whale,	Oil and whalebone.	The Turtle, (sea-)	Food.
The Sperm Whale,	Oil & spermaceti.	na, and Frog,	Leather.
The Walrus,	Oil and skin.	The Alligator,	Leather.
The Seal,	Oil and leather.		
The Porpoise,	Oil and leather.	FISH.	
The Elephant,	Ivory and food.	The Sturgeon	Food and isinglass.
		(dur-jun),	Food and cod-liver
The Beaver, Marten,		The Cod,	oil.
Hink, Muskrat,			
Otter, Seal, Sables,		The Salmon, Her-	ring, Shad, Mack-
Ermine, Fox, Gray	Fur.	eral, Turbot,	Food.
Squirrel, Chinchil-		&c.,	
la, and Opossum,		INSECTS.	
The Pecary, Kan-		The Silk-worm,	Silk.
garoo, Mole,		The Cock-lice Insect,	Cochineal.
Elk (or Moose),		The Lac Insect,	Lac.
Antelope, Cha-	Food and leather.	The Gall Insect,	Gall.
mois (aka-moi),		The Bee,	Honey & wax.
Bison, and Eul-		Spanish Fly,	Medicinal.
falo,		MOLLUSKS, &C.	
BIRDS.		The Pearl-Oyster,	Pearl.
The Ostrich, and El-	Feathers.	The Red-Coral Builder,	Red coral.
der-Duck,		The Common Oyster,	Food.
The Swan, Goose,		Trawling, Lobster,	
Duck, Ptarmigan	Food.	Crab, &c.,	
(ar-me-gan),			
Snipe, Partridge,			
Quail, &c.,			

THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF MAN.

"God . . . hath made of one blood all nations of men to dwell on all the face of the earth. . ."—Acts xvii. 24, 25.

23. Mankind.—Man—descended from Adam and Eve, who were originally placed in Eden (in some part of Asia)—is now found in every region of the Globe. He has been enabled to adapt himself to almost every variety of soil and climate; which have in turn reacted upon his physical constitution, so as to produce the different varieties which now exist. Some naturalists have arranged mankind into five classes, according to the form of the skull, viz. the Mongolian, the Negro or Ethiopic, the Caucasian or Indo-European, the Malayan, and the American.



FIG. 17.—SPECIMENS OF THE FIVE CLASSES OF MANKIND.

Modern ethnologists arrange them into three classes, after the three sons of Noah, viz. Shem's or the Mongolian (yellow), Ham's or the Negro (black), and Japheth's or the Caucasian (white). Another mode of classifying mankind is by the affinity of languages.

24. classification
 North
 West I
 South
 Europe
 Asia
 Africa
 Oceania
 Tot
 1. King
 and k
 Empe
 herede
 power
 Absol
 in En
 A Re
 who is
 in the
 2. i
 into t
 state,
 of the
 enlight
 ment
 3. C
 Christ
 tians
 of the
 SA
 but re
 yet to
 or Isl
 1. di
 viding
 into 8
 2. T
 by Co
 water,
 and S
 two of
 ran in
 Amer
 an cas
 forty-
 of the
 mon
 and th
 of Pa
 follow
 North
 high
 tions
 see in
 3. r
 race,
 giant
 ment
 new
 C
 which
 Relig
 festu

24. Classification.—The following is an approximate numerical classification of the principal divisions of mankind :

DIVISIONS.	Caucasian.	Mongolian.	Malayan.	Negro.	American.
North America	36,000,000	300,000	.....	4,500,000	3,500,000
West Indies	1,000,000	.....	.....	3,500,000	.....
South America	9,000,000	.....	.....	1,000,000	7,900,000
Europe	173,000,000	1,500,000	.....	500,000	.....
Asia	315,000,000	450,000,000	6,000,000	1,000,000	.....
Africa	30,000,000	.....	.....	100,000,000	.....
Oceania	4,000,000	3,500,000	73,000,000	3,500,000	.....
Totals	561,500,000	454,300,000	79,000,000	148,000,000	13,300,000

III. POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY.

1. The Political Divisions of the Earth are named Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, Duchies, Principalities, &c. In empires and kingdoms, the form of government is styled a Monarchy. The Emperor, King, Queen, Czar, Sultan, or Mogul is generally an hereditary monarch. Where the monarch possesses unlimited power, as in Russia, the government of the country is called an Absolute Monarchy. Where the monarch's power is limited, as in England, the government is termed a Constitutional Monarchy. A Republic is a country governed by a ruler called a President, who is generally chosen for a stated period by delegates elected by the people. Duchies, Principalities, &c. are small governments in the hands of Dukes, Princes, &c., either elective or hereditary.

2. The Different Nations of the Earth are usually divided into the savage, the half-civilized, and the civilized. In the savage state, men subsist chiefly by hunting, fishing, and such productions of the Earth as grow without much culture. The civilized and enlightened Christian nations are distinguished for their advancement in science, literature, and the arts.

3. The Principal Forms of Religion in the World are the Christian, the Jewish, the Mohammedan, and the Pagan. Christians are those who believe in the Bible, and in Jesus Christ as the SAVIOUR of mankind. Jews are those who believe in the Old, but reject the New Testament, and expect a Saviour or Messiah yet to come. Mohammedans, Mahometans, Moslems, Mussulmans, or Islamites, are those who believe in Mohammed, or Mahomet, a



Fig. 18.—MANNER OF WORSHIP OR SYMBOLS OF THE PRINCIPAL RELIGIONS. religious impostor, who lived in Arabia about 600 years after our Saviour. Pagans or idolaters are those who believe in false gods, and worship idols.

4. Religious Classification.—The following is an approximate classification of the numbers who profess the principal religions of the world :

DIVISIONS.	Estimated Population (Am. div. 1861).	Christians.	Jews.	Mohammedans.	Idolaters.
North America	68,000,000	40,800,000	240,000	.....	3,000,000
West Indies	4,000,000	.....	.....	.....	.....
South America	18,200,000	.....	60,000	.....	2,000,000
Europe	273,000,000	261,000,000	3,500,000	10,500,000	.....
Asia	573,000,000	5,000,000	2,000,000	150,000,000	523,000,000
Africa	100,000,000	800,000	200,000	10,000,000	134,000,000
Oceania	82,000,000	1,480,000	20,000	2,000,000	78,500,000
Totals	1,250,000,000	323,980,000	6,020,000	177,500,000	737,500,000

SKETCH OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

I. THE WORLD DIVIDED INTO HEMISPHERES.

1. The Two Hemispheres into which the World is generally divided are the Western and Eastern Hemispheres. (See section 8 of the Introductory Chapter, page 5.) It is also divided into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. (See Fig. 13, p. 7.)

2. The Western Hemisphere, or New World, was only discovered by Columbus about 400 years since. It contains less land, and a greater water surface than the Eastern Hemisphere. Its grand divisions are North and South America, and Oceania in part. Its great mountain-ranges, and two of its great rivers (the Mississippi, and Paraguay or Rio de la Plata) run in a southerly direction; while the Pa-ri-me Mountains in South America, and two other great rivers (the Amazon and St. Lawrence), run in an easterly direction. At Be-a-ring Strait the two hemispheres are within forty-five miles of each other. The route by Cape Horn (south of the Island of Terra del Fuogo), was after its discovery by Vasco de Gama, the common highway between Eastern America and Asia, and between Europe and the Pacific; but now the shorter route to these places by the Isthmus of Pan-a-m-a or Da-ri-en (which connects North and South America) is followed. It is expected that the much more direct route through British North America to Asia and the Northern Pacific will yet be the great highway to the vast countries of Asia. (For an explanation of the illustrations in each corner of the map of the Western Hemisphere, on page 12, see Introductory Chapter of this Geography, section 13, page 6.)

3. The Eastern Hemisphere, or Old World, was the cradle of our race, the scene of the SAVIOUR's advent, and the first abode of Christianity. It contains all those celebrated countries of antiquity which are mentioned in the Holy Scriptures and in books of history; besides the new country of Australia, which, as an island, is the largest one on the

Globe. This Hemisphere is noted for its lofty mountain-ranges and elevated table-lands, which cover near three-fourths of the whole surface. Its principal mountain-ranges, and four of its great rivers (the Danube, in Europe, and the Ganges, Yang-tee-ki-ang, Ho-ang-ho, and A-moor, in Asia), chiefly run in an easterly direction. The shorter mountain-ranges along the eastern coast of Asia, with the rivers Indus and Eu-phra-tes, in Asia, the Volga and Dnieper (nee-per), in Europe, and the Niger, in Africa, run in a southerly direction; while the Ural Mountains, and the rivers Lena, Yen-sei, Obi, in Asia, and the Nile, in Africa, run towards the north. The European part of this Hemisphere has long been the seat of Christian civilization and of commerce; the influence of both of which is now rapidly spreading to every part of the habitable Globe. Round the Cape of Good Hope was formerly the chief passenger-route from Europe to India and China; but a much shorter one by the Isthmus of Suez (which connects the Continents of Asia and Africa) is now followed. Other routes are given on the map, which see. (For an explanation of the illustrations in each corner of the map of the Eastern Hemisphere, on page 13, see Introductory Chapter, section 8, page 5.)

4. The Northern Hemisphere is shown on page 7, and also on the map of the Eastern Hemisphere. It is projected on the plane of the horizon of London, and contains two thirds of the land-surface of the Globe; so that, in this Hemisphere, the World's metropolis is situated in about the centre of the habitable parts of the Earth. In the Northern Hemisphere the compass points to the North Magnetic Pole.

5. The Southern Hemisphere is nearly all covered with water; the only large portions of land in it being Australia and part of South America. It contains about the whole of Polynesia. New Zealand is nearly in the centre of this vast expanse. In this Hemisphere the compass points to the S. Magnetic Pole. In June also it is mid-winter, and in January mid-summer.

QUESTIONS.—24. Give the numerical classification of Mankind. 1. Name the political divisions of the Earth. Explain the different forms of government which exist. Give the name of the Head of each. 2. Into what three classes are Nations divided? Explain each class. 3. Name the principal forms of Religion, and mention how are they distinguished? 4. Give the religious classification of Mankind. Explain the illustration. 1-5. Describe the physical features of the Western, Eastern, Northern, and Southern Hemispheres, and state what is peculiar to each. For what is the E. Hem. chiefly distinguished?

WESTERN HEMISPHERE OR NEW WORLD

Improved for Lowell's General Geography.



Drawn by E. Doolittle

Engraved by G. H. Johnson

QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the principal countries shown upon this map; the oceans, seas, gulfs, peninsulas, islands, mountains, and rivers; also the ocean-steamship routes. Name the great island-groups to the west. Explain the figures in the corners illustrating the meridians, parallels, circles, and zones.

QUI
ocean-st

EASTERN HEMISPHERE OF OLD WORLD

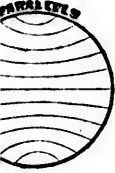
Expounded for Lowell's General Geography.



Drawn by R. B. Foster, Boston.

Engraved by S. H. Green, Boston.

QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the principal countries shown upon this map; the oceans, seas, gulfs, peninsulas, islands, mountains, and rivers; the ocean-steamship routes; and the largest islands. Explain the figures illustrating the land and water hemispheres, and the north and south polar projections.



and rivers; also circles, and zones.

II. THE CONTINENT OF AMERICA.

(Named from Amerigo Vesputius, a Florentine astronomer who accompanied Columbus, and who, in 1507, first published an account of a voyage to the New World.)
 Size, four times that of Europe. Length, 9,300 miles; greatest breadth, 3,250. Area, 15,500,000 square miles, or equal to a square of 3,927 miles.

1. The Continent of America stretches from the Arctic to the Southern Ocean. Its east side faces Europe and Africa, from which it is separated by the Atlantic Ocean; its west side is bounded by the Pacific Ocean, separating it from Asia and Oceania. It is divided into North and South America.

2. Physical Outlines.—The American Continent consists of two large triangular-shaped portions of land connected together by the Isthmus of Panama. These portions of land are respectively called North and South America. Both are broadest at the north, and both taper almost to a point at the south. An immense range of mountains stretches from the Arctic Ocean to Tierra del Fuego, a distance of nearly 10,000 miles. In British North America these mountains are sometimes called the Chipewyan Mountains; in the United States they are called the Rocky Mountains in Mexico the Cordilleras, and in South America the Andes (an-dees). The peaks of this great mountain-chain are from 500 to nearly 24,000 feet above the surface of the Ocean. At the Isthmus of Panama a break occurs in the chain, and the land-elevation there is not more than 100 feet above the surface of the Ocean. The chief rivers on the American Continent are also of an immense length (as will be seen in the account of each country through which they flow). Recent arctic research has proved that water surrounds the entire American Continent (see page 17). It is the only one of the four great continents which is washed by the four great oceans, viz. the Arctic, the Atlantic, the Southern, and the Pacific.

3. Discovery.—The Northern from Norway visited Greenland in 986; Columbus reached San-Salvador Island in the West Indies, and thus discovered the New World, 11th Oct. 1492; Sir J. Cabot reached Newfoundland in 1497; in 1498 Columbus discovered the Orinoco River; in 1499 Ojeda, with Vesputius, explored the Venezuela coast; in 1500 Pinson discovered the Amazon River, and Corderel, Labrador; in Sept. 1513 Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean; in 1515 J. Ponce de Leon discovered Florida; in 1520 Magellan discovered Tierra del Fuego and circumnavigated the Globe; in 1581 Cortes conquered Mexico, and in 1582 discovered Lower California; in 1584 Pizarro conquered Peru; in 1584 Jacques Cartier discovered Canada; in 1540 De Roto reached the Mississippi; in 1578 Frohisher discovered Fox Channel (Hudson Bay), and originated the idea of a "North-West Passage"; in 1578 Sir Francis Drake reached San Francisco (only a hint); in 1585 Davis discovered Davis Strait; in 1600 Juan de Fuca discovered Juan de Fuca Strait; in 1609 Hudson discovered Hudson River, and, in 1611, Hudson Bay; in 1616 Baffin discovered Baffin's Bay; in 1672 Marquette and Jollette explored the Mississippi River; in 1741 Behring discovered Behring Strait; in 1777 Cook made several discoveries on the Pacific coast; in 1793 Vancouver reached Vancouver Island; in 1841 Sir J. C. Ross discovered the South Magnetic Pole (page 51). (For "Arctic Discovery," see page 17.)

NORTH AMERICA.

Size, twice that of Europe. Length, 4,500 miles; average breadth, 3,000; square, 2,900.

4. Extent and Boundaries.—North America stretches from the Arctic regions to the tropics, and is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, east by the North Atlantic, south by the Gulf of Mexico and Pacific Ocean, and west by the Pacific.

5. Physical Features of the North Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS, STRAITS, SOUNDS, &c.	PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.	PRINCIPAL CAPES.	PENINSULAS.
POLAR (lying north of Russian Basin's America).	Coronation-Bank's. Melville. Disco. Hudson-James.	Behring. Melville Sd. Wallingford. Barrow. Lancaster Sd. King William. Cumberland-Frohisher. Fox. Hudson.	Ellesmere. Parry. Melville. Coxwell. Banks. Ed. & Albert. King William. Boothia. Cockburn. Cumberland. Disco.	Pr. of Wales. Icy. Barrow. Demarcation Point. Barburt. Parry. Land's End. Bille. Cudleigh.	Russian America (in part). Greenland (in part).

6. Physical Features of the East Coast.

CARIBBEAN (lying north of the West-India Islands).	ST. LAWRENCE (lying north of the Chesapeake and the Gulf of Mexico).	HOLLE ISLE (Long Island, Bahamas, Florida, Yucatan, and several).	NEWFOUNDLAND (Cape Breton, Anticosti, Long, Bermuda, Bahamas, Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, Windward (W. India)).	BROWSTER (Farwell, Charles, Race, Breton, Sable, May, Cod, Hayti, Cokroas, Cokroas, Graciosa, Dico (pr. so-as-a-doo-occ.)).	GREENLAND (in part). LABRADOR. NOVA SCOTIA. FLORIDA. YUCATAN.
St. Lawrence. Florida. Yucatan. Windward.	Holle Isle. Long Island. Bahamas. Florida. Yucatan. Windward.	St. John (N.B.), 330 m. Connecticut, 410 m. Hudson, 316 m. Susquehanna, 450 m. Ohio, S.W., 1,300 m. Mo-bile, 1,090 m.	St. John (N.B.), 330 m. Connecticut, 410 m. Hudson, 316 m. Susquehanna, 450 m. Ohio, S.W., 1,300 m. Mo-bile, 1,090 m.	St. John (N.B.), 330 m. Connecticut, 410 m. Hudson, 316 m. Susquehanna, 450 m. Ohio, S.W., 1,300 m. Mo-bile, 1,090 m.	Greenland (in part). Labrador. Nova Scotia. Florida. Yucatan.

QUESTIONS.—From whom was America named? Give its length, breadth, and area. 1. Trace the boundaries of America on the map. How is America divided? 2. Give its physical outlines. 3. Name the principal discoveries. Give the size of North America; and 4. trace its boundaries on the map. 5. Name the Seas, Gulfs, Bays, Channels, Straits, Sounds, Principal Islands, Capes, and Peninsulas on the North Coast; 6. on the East Coast; 7. on the S. and W. Coasts. 8. What is said of its interior physical features? 9. Name its Principal Mountain-Ranges and their heights. Rivers and the direction in which they flow, and Lakes. 10. What is said of the Rocky Mountains? and 11. of the Secondary Ranges? 12. What is said of the Inhabitants?

7. Physical Features of the South and West Coasts.

SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS, STRAITS, SOUNDS, &c.	PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.	PRINCIPAL CAPES.	PENINSULAS.
Mexico. Nicoya. California. San Francisco. Humboldt. Georgia.	Juan de Fuca. Queen Charlotte's Sd. Prince William's Sd. Cock's Inlet.	Vancouver. Queen Charlotte's. Prince of Wales. Sitka.	Corri-ri-ri-ri. St. Lazar. Mendocino. Blanco. Fistery.	Lower California. Russian America (in part).	

8. Interior Physical Features.—The chief physical features of North America consist of its mountains and rivers. The most important ranges are the Rocky Mountains, near the Pacific coast; and the Alleghany or Appalachian Mountains, which run parallel to the Atlantic coast. These two principal ranges enclose the valleys of the Mississippi, at the South; the Great Lakes and their tributaries, in the Middle; the Arctic Sea and Hudson Bay with their tributaries, at the North. The rivers may be more minutely grouped as follows: (1) the Arctic group of rivers, (2) the Hudson-Bay group, (3) the St. Lawrence group, (4) the Atlantic group, (5) the Mississippi group, and (6) the Northern, Middle, and Southern Pacific groups. They may be further classified according to the mountains in which they take their rise, thus:

9. Physical Features of the Interior of North America.

PRINCIPAL MOUNTAIN RANGES.	RIVERS FLOWING NORTHWARD.	RIVERS FLOWING SOUTHWARD.	RIVERS FLOWING EASTWARD.	RIVERS FLOWING WESTWARD.	PRINCIPAL LAKES.
ARCTIC. Highest peak 1,300 feet.	Coppermine. N.B. 500 m. Great Fish.	Fraser, 870 m. Colorado, S.W. 1,250 m. W., 2,500 m. Mississippi, 3,100 m. [Flowing S.E.] Rio Gran-de, 1,900 m. Missouri, 3,100 m. Arkansas, 2,000 m.	Churchill, N.E. 700 m. Columbia, S. W., 1,300 m.	Great Bear. Slave.	Meth-ye. Athabasca. Wollaston. Deer. Winnipeg. Salt.
ROCKY (parallel to the Pacific coast). Highest peak 17,500 ft.	Colville. Mackenzie, N.W. 2,500 m. long.	St. Lawrence (N. of St. Law's and Gt. Lakes). 750 m.; including the lakes, 2,200.	O-t-a-wa, 450 m. St. Maurice, 300 m. Sa-gue-nay, 250 m.	East Main, 400 m.	Woods. Superior. Michigan. Huron. Erie. Ontario. Simcoe.
LAURENTIAN (parallel to the Atlantic coast). Highest peak 6,428 ft.	Red, 700 m. St. Lawrence (N. of St. Law's and Gt. Lakes). 750 m.; including the lakes, 2,200.	St. John (N.B.), 330 m. Connecticut, 410 m. Hudson, 316 m. Susquehanna, 450 m. Ohio, S.W., 1,300 m. Mo-bile, 1,090 m.	Tennessee, N. W., 1,200 m.	Champlain.	

10. The Rocky Mountains extend from the Arctic Sea to South America. From Mexico the Sierra de Sonora stretch north-west along the coast; and two parallel ranges, the Cordillera of Potosi and the Sierra Madre, extend northwards to the South Pass, near the sources of the Missouri River. The Rocky Mountains then extend north-west in a double chain, containing Mount Hooker and Mount Brown. From California northward are the Sierra Nevada, the Cascade Range, with Mount Hood, and the Sea Alps; in the north of which are Mount Fairweather and Mount Elias, the latter 17,360 feet high.

11. The Secondary Ranges are: (1) the Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains, which extend from Canada to the State of Alabama in the United States; (2) the Laurentian, which extend through Canada from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Lake Superior; and (3) the Arctic Highlands, extending north-west from Hudson Bay to the Arctic Ocean.

12. Inhabitants.—The aborigines or early inhabitants of North America are called Indians. Those in Mexico and Peru were formerly civilized, and had large towns and fixed governments.

to the New World.)
1,987 miles.

West Coasts.

PRINCIPAL CAPES.	PENINSULAS.
Prin- ci- pal Cape	Penin- sula
Lower California.	
Lucas.	Florida.
Lasca.	Russian America.
Adocine.	(in part).
noo.	
tery.	

physical features
rivers. The most
near the Pacific
mountains, which
principal ranges
South; the Great
the Arctic Sea
the North. The
1: (1) the Arctic
3) the St. Law-
Mississippi group,
Pacific groups.
the mountains in

North America.

RIVERS FLOWING TOWARD.	PRINCIPAL LAKES.
Great Bear.	
Slave.	
Meth-ye.	
Athabasca.	
Wollaston.	
Deser.	
Winnipeg.	
Salt.	
Woods.	
Superior.	
Michigan.	
Huron.	
Erie.	
Ontario.	
St. Lawrence.	
Champlain.	
1,300 m.	

to the South
north-west along
Sierra
of the Mis-
west in a double
From California
Mount Hood,
Fairweather and

Alleghany
Alabama in
Canada from the
Arctic Highlands,
ants of North
were formerly

How is America
ies on the map.
Coast; 7. on the
nd the direction
inhabitants?



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the principal countries on this map; the oceans, seas, gulfs, bays, islands, peninsulas, capes, mountains, rivers, &c.



THE PRINCIPAL ANIMALS ON THE CONTINENT OF AMERICA. (For names of the Animals in this engraving, see section 13.)

13. Animals.—North America has numerous fur-bearing animals; such as the beaver and the otter; also the wolf, the fox, the white and the brown bear, the buffalo, the red-deer, the moose-deer; and the wild horse of the prairie. To South America belong the tapir, the ant-eater, the ar-ma-dill-o, and the lama. The more remarkable birds are the condor, the parrot, the eagle, the penguin [pen-gwin], and the humming-bird. Serpents, alligators, and turtles are numerous.

14. The Political Divisions of North America are as follows:

NAME OF COUNTRY.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.*	Popu-lation.	CAPITAL.	- Where Situated.	Popu-lation.
RUSSIAN AMERICA	394,000	66,000	New Archangel...	Sitka Island....	1,000
DANISH AMERICA	390,000	10,000	Goodhope.....	S. W. coast.....	800
Iceland.....	40,000	64,000	Reikjavik.....	S. W. coast.....	1,200
FRENCH AMERICA	120	4,200	St. Pierre.....	St. Pierre Island	500
BRITISH AMERICA					
Yancover Island.....	16,000	11,463	Victoria.....	S. of Island.....	3,000
Brit. Columbia, &c.	213,000	8,000	New Westminster	Fraser River.....	1,000
Red River.....		10,000	Fort Garry.....	Assiniboine &	Red R.
Hudson-Bay Ter. }	1,800,000	173,000	York Factory.....	Hayes River.....	
Newfoundland.....	37,000	132,638	St. John's.....	S. E. Peninsula.	25,000
Prince Edw. Island	1,134	71,500	Charlottetown...	Centre of Island	5,000
Nova Scotia.....	19,050	306,000	Halifax.....	S. E. coast.....	25,000
New Brunswick.....	27,710	230,800	Fredericton.....	River St. John.	6,000
Lower Canada.....	210,000	1,130,500	Quebec.....	St. Lawrence....	61,528
Upper Canada.....	180,000	1,409,450	Toronto.....	Lake Ontario....	44,423
UNITED STATES.....	3,250,000	31,664,500	Washington.....	River Potomac..	61,400
MEXICO.....	854,150	7,748,000	Mexico.....	Lake Texcoco..	170,000
CENTRAL AMERICA				[tes-ko'-ko.]	
Guatemala.....	69,000	1,100,000	New Guatemala.	43 m. fr. Pacific.	60,000
San Salvador.....	5,500	450,000	Cajutepaque.....	36 m. fr. coast.	15,000
Honduras.....	53,000	380,000	Comayagua.....	Midw. bet. coasts	15,000
British Honduras.....	26,000	25,000	Belize.....	Belize River.....	7,000
Nicaragua.....	44,000	306,000	Leon.....	10 m. fr. Pacific.	25,500
Costa Rica.....	20,000	216,000	San José.....	San Juan River.	1,000
WEST-INDIA ISL'DS					
British Islands.....	15,500	844,700	Spanish Town.....	Jamaica.....	8,000
Danish.....	130	15,000	Cristianstad.....	St. Croix.....	10,000
Swedish.....	35	15,000	Gustavia.....	St. Bartholomew	10,000
French.....	1,081	237,000	Basse Terre.....	Guadeloupe.....	6,000
Dutch.....	290	39,000	Williamstadt.....	Curaçoa.....	7,000
Spanish.....	53,130	1,250,000	Havana.....	Cuba.....	165,000
Venezuelan.....	500	20,000	Ascension.....	Margarita.....	1,500
Hayti.....	11,200	680,000	Port au Prince.....	Bay of Gonaves	30,000
Dominica.....	18,500	397,000	San Domingo.....	South coast.....	15,000

* A square tract of country of an equal number of miles each way, may be obtained by extracting the square-root of the square miles here given.

QUESTIONS.—Point out on the engraving the various animals, birds, and reptiles named. 14. Give the names of the Political Divisions of North America, their size and population; with the Capitals, their situation and population. How can the area in square miles be reduced to miles square? Give the size of Russian America. 15. What is it noted for? 16. Describe its position and physical features. 17. What is said of its soil and products? 18. of its inhabitants? Give the name and situation of the capital. Point it out on the map (page 17). 19. Describe the Aleutian Isles. 20. Give the size and extent of Danish America. How did Greenland obtain its name? Give its size. 21. For what is it noted? 22. Describe its position and physical features.

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

Size, a little larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 630 miles.

15. Noted For.—RUSSIAN [rush-un] AMERICA is noted for its tier of islands (like huge stepping-stones) between Asia and America; and for the lofty volcanic mountain of St. Elias.

16. Position and Physical Features.—This peninsula occupies the extreme north-west part of America, next to Asia, with a coast-line extending to British Columbia. Along the west coast there is a chain of mountains, of which Mounts St. Elias and Fairweather are the principal peaks. The chief rivers are the Kwickpaok and its tributaries.

17. Soil, &c.—The soil is sterile, and the climate severe; but fish and fur-bearing animals are plentiful. Grain is cultivated at the south, but in very small quantities; and here and there a few pines and birches are found.

18. Inhabitants, &c.—The inhabitants are chiefly Esquimaux (or Eskimo) and Indians, and are subject to the Russians, who have established trading-posts on the coast. NEW ARCHANGEL, on the Island of Sitka, is the capital and chief factory of Russian America.

19. The Aleutian Isles consist of several groups lying between the Peninsula of Alaska and the Asiatic Continent. They are rocky and volcanic. The inhabitants (about 9,000) are a mixture of Mogul-Tartars and North-American Indians. Their occupation is fishing and hunting.

DANISH AMERICA.

Size, a little larger than Russian America, or equal to a square of 630 miles.

20. Extent.—DANISH AMERICA comprises GREENLAND (in part), ICELAND, and some smaller islands lying along their coasts.

GREENLAND.

(So called from the green moss found upon its shores when first discovered, A.D. 986.)
Size, nearly as large as Canada, or equal to a square of 818 miles.

21. Noted For.—GREENLAND is chiefly noted for its alleged discovery by Norwegians about 500 years before the time of Columbus.

22. Position and Physical Features.—This island or region of frost and snow lies between Baffin's Bay and the Northern Atlantic Ocean, and extends from Cape Farewell to the Arctic Pole. Along the coast the surface is mountainous and rocky.

23. F the only the sout seas; an and clo seal-hu settlem

(So call Size, al

24.

25. miles w

26. I mount

About w

whic fo

abled

denat

storm

summe

borcall

27. F and a m

fish is a

28. T Geyser

29. T is appoi

30. I the sout

library.

the Gey

31. I and its

32. I islands

which

coast,

Size,

1. I great

for co

posit

settler

2. I Scotia,

Qu

23. nat

N. Am

given

23. Products, &c.—The soil is barren, and the climate severe. July is the only month in which no snow falls. A few vegetables are produced in the southern part. Whales, walrus, and seals abound in the surrounding seas; and seals, with the eider-duck, supply the Greenlanders with food and clothing. The inhabitants are chiefly Esquimaux. Their pursuits are seal-hunting and fishing. The exports to Denmark from the Danish settlements consist of eider-down, seal-skins, whalebone, and fish-oil.

ICELAND.

(So called from its icy coldness. It is sometimes considered as belonging to Europe.) Size, about one third smaller than Newfoundland, or equal to a square of 200 m.

24. Noted For.—ICELAND is noted for its boiling springs.
25. Position.—This island is situated in the Atlantic about 700 miles west of Norway; but it is only 200 miles east of Greenland.

26. Physical Features.—The surface is mountainous. The highest mountains are to the east and the west, and are chiefly volcanic. About thirty volcanoes have been discovered on the island, the chief of which are Hec-la and Skaptar Jo-kul. The coast, which is remarkable for its numerous rugged snow-peaked mountains, is deeply indented with inlets or fjords. The climate is variable, and violent storms are frequent. The longest period of continuous daylight in summer, and of darkness in winter, is about 100 hours each. The aurora-borealis is here seen in very great brilliancy.

27. Products.—No trees grow on the island; only a few stunted shrubs and a medicinal moss are met with. Domestic animals are numerous, and fish is abundant; so also is the eider-duck; but no reptiles are found.



THE GEYSERS OR BOILING SPRINGS IN ICELAND.

28. The Natural Curiosities are the volcanoes; and the celebrated Geysers or boiling springs, which abound in the western part of the island.
29. The Inhabitants are of the Scandinavian race. The Governor is appointed by the King of Denmark,—to whose crown the island belongs.
30. Reikjavik (ri-ko-yah'-vik), the capital of Iceland, is a small town on the south-west coast. It contains an observatory, a college, and a public library. Population 1,200. "Reikjavik" means *Reek* or *Steam Town*, from the Geysers or boiling springs in the vicinity. (See engraving.)

FRENCH NORTH AMERICA.

Size, equal to a square of 15 miles.

31. Noted For.—FRENCH NORTH AMERICA is noted for its small size, and its extensive exportation of dried salt fish.
32. Extent and Position.—It is composed of the small fishing-islands of St. Pierre (pe-ayr'), MICHELON (mik-chel-on'), and LARON-LAY, which lie off the southern coast of Newfoundland; on a part of which coast, French fishermen have, by treaty, a right to salt or dry fish.

BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

Size, about the same as the United States, or equal to a square of 1,770 miles.

1. Noted For.—BRITISH NORTH AMERICA is noted for its great extent; its numerous lakes and rivers; its natural facilities for communication between Europe and Asia; its mineral deposits; its fisheries; its great timber-areas; its fertile soil for settlement; and its free monarchical institutions.

2. Its Chief Mineral Regions are: British Columbia for gold; Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, the Valley of the Saskatchewan River, and Van-

couver Island, for coal; Lower Canada, and north of Lakes Huron and Superior, for copper; and Upper and Lower Canada, for iron and lead.

3. Arctic Discoveries.—The first attempt to navigate the Arctic Seas was made in 1500. From 1745, England, anxious to find out a shorter route to her East-India possessions than that round by the Cape of Good Hope, despatched successive expeditions to the northern coasts of America, and offered a reward of £20,000 to the successful discoverer of a north-west passage to Asia. At length, in 1853, Sir Robert McClure made this passage. The following are the dates of the expeditions sent out:

- Corte Real, a Portuguese, 1500.
- Sir Hugh Willoughby, 1603.
- Sir Martin Frobisher, 1576.
- Capt. Davis, 1585.
- Capt. Henry Hudson, 1610.
- Sir Thomas Button, 1619.
- Capt. William Baffin, 1616.
- Hearne's Land Expedition, 1770.
- Capt. Phipps (Lord Mulgrave), 1773.
- Capt. Cook, 1774.
- Sir Alexander Mackenzie, 1780.
- Capt. Vancouver, 1791.
- Lieut. Kotzebue, 1815.
- Sir John Ross and Capt. Parry, 1818.
- Capt. Buchan and Sir J. Franklin, 1819-22.
- Sir E. Parry and Lieut. Lindo, 1819-20.
- Sir Edward Parry & Capt. Lyden, 1819-22.
- Sir John Franklin, by land, 1825.
- Sir E. and Parry & Capt. Boppper, 1824.
- Sir E. and Parry, by sea, 1824-26.
- Capt. Buchan, by sea, 1825-27.
- Sir John Ross, by sea, 1825-33.
- Capt. Back, by land, 1833-36.
- Capt. Esch, by sea, 1836-37.
- Messrs. Dease & Simpson, by boat, 1836-39.
- Sir John Franklin, by sea, 1845-48. Neither himself nor crew ever returned.
- Dr. John Rae, by boat, 1847-47.

4. Franklin-Searching Expeditions.—In 1847, Dr. Rae discovered the first traces of Sir John Franklin; but Sir L. McClintock in 1850 finally decided his sad fate. The following are the dates of the expeditions sent out:

- Capt. Moore & Maguire, by sea, 1847-51.
- Sir J. Richardson & Dr. Rae, boat, 1849-50.
- Sir James Ross, by sea, 1849-50.
- Capt. Kellett, by sea, 1849-51.
- Commander Sanders, by sea, 1849-50.
- Capt. Collinson and McClure, 1850-55.
- Capt. Austin, by sea, 1850-51.
- Sir John Ross, by sea, 1850-51.
- Capt. Penny & Stewart, by sea, 1850-51.
- Capt. Forryth, by sea, 1850.
- Lieut. De Haven (American), 1850-51.
- Capt. Kennedy & Beloit, by sea, 1851-52.
- Dr. John Rae, by land, 1851-54.
- Mr. Maguire, by sea, 1852-54.
- Sir L. McClintock in 1850 finally decided his sad fate.
- Sir Edward Belcher, by sea, 1853-54.
- Lieut. Pullen, by sea, 1853-54.
- Commander Inglefield, by sea, 1853.
- Capt. Kennedy, by sea, 1853.
- Commander Topley, by sea, 1853.
- Dr. Kane (American), by sea, 1853-55.
- Commander Inglefield, by sea, 1853-54.
- Messrs. Anderson & Stewart, by land, 1855.
- Lieut. Harcourt (American), 1855.
- Sir L. McClintock, in Lady Franklin's own steam-yacht "Fox," in 1857-59 found at Cape Wilmot's Island a record of Franklin's death, and discovered traces of his lost expedition.

5. The Political Divisions of British North America are as follows:

NAME AND PROVINCE OR TERRITORY.	DISCOVERERS AND DATE.	MODE OF ACQUISITION AND DATE.	GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED.
VANCOUVER ISLAND. (van-koov'-er-land.)	Sir F. Drake, 1579.	Vancouver's visit, 1792. Settled 1848.	{ Charter to Hudson-Bay Co., 1640.
BRITISH COLUMBIA. (bi-ko-lumb'-ya.)	Sir A. Mackenzie, 1781.	Treaty, 1793.	{ Act of Parliament, 1858.
RED RIVER. (red riv'-er.)	Canad. explorers.	Lord Selkirk's settlement, 1811.	{ Crown Colony, 1867.
HUDSON-BAY TERRITORY. (hud-son-bay-ter-ri-tory.)	H. Hudson, 1610 and 1798.	Treaty, 1713 & 1763.	{ 1841 and 1842.
NEWFOUNDLAND. (nu-fun'-land.)	Sir J. Cabot, 1497. Called "Prima Vista."	Sir H. Gilbert, 1583. Utrecht Tr. 1713.	{ Charles I., 1633; Separate Govern't, 1728.
PRINCE-EDW. ISLAND. (prince-ed-ward-is-land.)	Seb'n Cabot, 1498.	Treaty, 1763.	{ Separate Govern't, 1771.
NOVA SCOTIA. (no-va-ak'-o-sha.)	Seb'n Cabot, 1498.	Cabot's visit & Treaty of 1713.	{ Sep. Gov., 1748; United Sep. Gov., 1819.
CAMPBELLTON. (camp-bell-ton.)	Seb'n Cabot, 1498.	Capitulation, 1768.	{ Sep. Gov., 1784.
NEW BRUNSWICK. (nu-brun'-wik.)	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Treaty, 1763.	{ Separate Govern't, 1784.
LOWER CANADA. (lo-uer-kan-ada.)	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Capitulation, 1763.	{ French, 1608; English, 1763; United Sep. Gov't, 1792.
UPPER CANADA. (up-er-kan-ada.)	Champlain, 1615.	Cession, 1763.	{ Sep. Gov't, 1792.

HUDSON-BAY TERRITORY.

(After Henry Hudson, who discovered the Bay in 1610, and perished on its shore.) Size, about half that of British N. America, or equal to a square of 1,240 miles.

6. Noted For.—THE HUDSON-BAY TERRITORY is noted for its great extent, its fur-trade, and its great bay or inland sea.

7. Position and Extent.—This vast territory includes nominally the following areas: I. Labrador; II. Prince-Rupert Land, and III. Red River, Swan River, and Saskatchewan, which were granted in 1670, by the charter of Charles II., to the Hudson-Bay Company; IV. Mackenzie River; and V. North-West Indian Territories, leased by the Company in 1821; VI. Oregon (abandoned), and British Columbia and Vancouver Island (lease expired).

8. Territorial Divisions.—The Hudson-Bay Territory is divided into several districts, which are embraced in 4 large departments (2 west of the Rocky Mountains), subdivided into 33 districts, including 152 posts. The territorial government is administered by a chief Governor and Council; and the of the various districts by 16 chief-factors and 29 chief-traders. The number of employes is about 3,000.

9. The Exports are chiefly the furs and skins of various animals.

10. The Inhabitants of the territory include the white traders and half-breeds, besides numerous tribes of Indians and Esquimaux.

QUESTIONS.—23. What further is said of Greenland? What is said of Iceland? 24. What noted for? 25. its position? 26. physical features? 27. products? 28. natural curiosities? 29. inhabitants? 30. capital? 31. What is said of French N. America? 32. Describe it. What is the size? and 1. What is said of British N. America noted? 2. Give its mineral regions. 3. What is said of Arctic discoveries? 4. of the Franklin-searching expeditions? 5. Mention the particulars given in the table. What is said of the H. B. Territory? 6. what noted for? 7. Give its position and extent; 8. its divisions; 9. exports; and 10. inhabitants.

LABRADOR-PENINSULA SECTION.

(Called by the Spaniards *Tierra Labrador*, it being less barren than Greenland.)

11. Noted For.—The LABRADOR PENINSULA is chiefly noted for its valuable coast-fisheries, and its severe climate.

12. Position and Physical Features.—This extensive peninsula is the most easterly part of Br. N. America. The country gradually rises as it recedes from the coast. Near the centre, a range called the *Wot-chiah Mountains* forms a water-shed for the rivers.

13. The Principal Rivers are the Koksak and the Me-shik-o-mau.

14. Lakes.—Besides *Un-ga-va* and *Ira-dore's* Bays on the coast, the principal inland lakes are *Can-la-a-pus-caw* and *Meshikemau*.

15. Climate and Products.—The climate is excessively severe. It is a region of almost perpetual snow from September to June. Wheat will not ripen; but barley and green manure good fodder.

16. The Inhabitants on the coast are chiefly *Esquimaux* [*es'-ki-mo*], who subsist by fishing and hunting. In the interior there are *Cree Indians*.

17. Settlements.—The chief European settlements are *Nain*, *Ok-hak*, *Hopedale*, and *He-bron*. The *Hudson-Bay Co.* have also several stations.

18. Fisheries and Commerce.—The principal articles of commerce are whale and seal oil, fish, furs, and birds'-eggs. About 18,000 seals are annually taken. The exports are chiefly shipped through Newfoundland.

PRINCE-RUPERT LAND (AND EAST-MAIN) SECTION.

19. Extent.—This portion of the Hudson-Bay Territory includes the whole of the country east, west, and south of Hudson Bay itself.

20. The Rivers flowing into Hudson Bay are separated from the other great rivers of British North America by a water-shed running almost parallel to the north and west shores of the Bay.

21. The Principal Rivers are the Churchill, the Nelson, the Hayes, the Severn, the Albany, the Moose, the Abitibi, the Rupert, the East Main, and the Great and Little Whale Rivers.

22. The Churchill rises in an angle of two mountain-spurs which run eastward from the Rocky Mountains. Under the name of *Beaver River*, it receives the waters of *La-Crosse Lake*. Thence taking the name of *Mistissipi*, it is again augmented by the waters of *Beaver Lake* (the southern outflow of *Wollaston Lake*). From the place of this augmentation until it reaches Hudson Bay it bears the name of the *Churchill River*.

23. The Nelson discharges the waters of *Lake Winnipeg* and numerous other lakes into Hudson Bay. (See *Saskatchewan River*, sec. 39 on this page.)

24. Hudson Bay is an extensive mediterranean sea connected by *Hudson Strait*, with the Northern Atlantic Ocean. The southern prolongation is called *James's Bay*; from which the distance to *Repulse Bay* is 1,000 miles. Its greatest width is 600 miles. The east coast is high and rocky.

25. The Principal Lakes are the *Clear-Water*, the *Mistissipi* (source of the *Rupert River*), *Granville*, *Cod*, *Coar*, *Deer*, *Wollaston*, and *North Lined*; besides *Lakes Dubaut* and *Yath-kyed* [-kide], and others which empty into *Chesterfield Inlet*. (See map on the next page.)

MACKENZIE AND GREAT FISH RIVERS SECTION.

(Mackenzie from Sir A. Mackenzie, who in 1780 discovered the river now so named.)

26. Extent, &c.—This section extends along the Arctic Ocean to the interior waters of the *Great-Bear*, *Great Slave*, *Athabasca*, and *Pelly Lakes*, including the *Mackenzie*, *Coppermine*, and *Great Fish Rivers*.

27. The Mackenzie River, with its tributaries, is 2,500 miles long. It rises in a lake north of *Mount Brown*, and within 200 yards of a source of the *Columbia River*. It is called the *Elk* until it empties itself into *Athabasca Lake*, where it is joined by the *Peace River*, which rises in the *Rocky Mountains* within 37 yards of the *Fraser River*. Before reaching *Athabasca Lake* it is joined by *Clear-Water River*. From that lake to *Great Slave-Lake* it is known as the *Slave River*. Emerging at the south-western extremity of this lake, it takes the name of *Mackenzie River*, and flows northward to latitude 59°, where it receives the waters of *Great-Bear Lake*; thence to the Arctic Ocean, which it enters by several mouths. Its other tributaries are the *rivers Hay* and *Turn-again*. The *Mackenzie* flows through a finely-wooded and fertile plain, and is navigable for 1,200 miles from its mouth. It drains an area of 43,000 square miles. *PORCA SIMON*, *NORMAN*, and *GOODY HORN* are, at various points, on its banks.

28. The Coppermine River takes its rise in the *Coppermine Mountains*, and, after a course of 250 miles, falls into the *Duke of York's Archipelago*, west of *Coronation Gulf*, Arctic Ocean.

29. The Great Fish-River (*Thew-ee-choh* or *Capt. Back's River*) is an outlet of *Sussex Lake*, north-east of *Aylmer* and *Great Slave Lakes*. In its course it expands into *Lakes Beechey*, *Pelly*, *Garry*, *Macdougall*, and *Franklin*, and enters an inlet south of *King-William's Island*; on which the final traces of *Franklin's* expedition were, in 1850, found by *Sir L. McClintock*. On *Montreal Island*, in the same inlet, *Dr. Rae* discovered traces in 1854.

30. The Principal Lakes in this section are the *Great-Bear*, the *Great Slave*, and the *Athabasca*. *Great-Bear Lake* lies under the constellation of the *Great Bear*, hence its name. It is the most northerly and irregular lake in America. It is about 250 miles long and about as wide, and its northern shores are precipitous and rugged. *Great Slave-Lake* is 300 miles long, by 50 wide. It is so named from a tribe enslaved by their more warlike

neighbours. *Aylmer Lake* is to the north-east of this lake. *Athabasca Lake* is 250 miles long, and 40 wide. It has an eastern outlet into *Wollaston Lake*, and a northern outlet into *Great Slave-Lake* by *Slave River*.

31. Chief Products.—Coal, fish, alum, salt, and mineral-tar abound.

THE NORTH-WEST INDIAN TERRITORIES SECTION.

(So named from being inhabited by various North-West Indian tribes.)

32. Extent.—These territories extend nominally from the *Mackenzie-River* Section to the Northern *Saskatchewan*, and include the indefinite areas drained by the *Peace*, *Athabasca*, and northern branch of the *Saskatchewan Rivers*.

33. Physical Features.—A central water-shed stretches eastward from the *Rocky Mountains*, separating the waters of the *Athabasca* and *Clear-Water Rivers* from the Northern or Upper *Saskatchewan*. The surface is generally diversified with river, hill, and rich prairie.

RED RIVER, SWAN, AND SASKATCHEWAN RIVERS SECTION.

34. Extent.—This section includes the valleys of the *Assiniboine*, *Qu'Appelle*, the southern branch of the *Saskatchewan*, the northern part of *Red River*, and the *Winnipeg-Lake Region*, &c.

35. Physical Features.—The valley of the *Saskatchewan* is an extensive tract of country, diversified by beautiful scenery and fertile plains. The *Red-River Country* is covered with rich prairies and fine lakes. From the *Lake of the Woods* a rich and fertile belt of land extends westward to the *Rocky Mountains*.

36. The Red-River Country was settled by *Lord Selkirk* in 1811. It comprises a strip of land some miles in width on either side of the *Red River*, and a similar strip a few miles up the *Assiniboine* from *Fort Garry*.

37. The Assiniboine takes its rise near the *Nut Hills*, and at *Birds-tail Fort* is joined by its chief tributary, the *Qu'Appelle* [*kap-pel'*] or "*Who Calls*" River (270 miles long), which takes its rise within a few miles of the Southern or Lower *Saskatchewan*. The *Moose River* is another tributary at the south. At *Fort Garry*, 640 miles from its source, the *Assiniboine* joins—

38. The Red River, which rises in *Ottetrial Lake*, State of *Minnesota*, and falls into *Lake Winnipeg*. Its length is about 665 miles, 525 of which are within the *United States*. *Peun-bi-na*, a frontier village in *Minnesota*, is on its banks, near the boundary-line, 49° north latitude.

39. The Saskatchewan (northern branch) rises in the *Rocky Mountains* near *Mount Hooker*, and within 50 feet of the sources of the *Columbia River*. Joined by the southern branch (which rises near the sources of the *Missouri River*), about 400 miles from its rise, the united river flows through *Codarg River* into *Lake Winnipeg*; and issuing thence, under the name of the *Nelson River*, falls into *Hudson Bay*. The whole river is about 1,300 miles in length. "*Saskatchewan*" means "the swift current."

40. The Principal Lakes.—*Winnipeg* is about 280 miles long, and from 5 to 57 miles wide. It is 657 miles from *Lake Superior*, and drains an area of 300,000 sq. miles. Directly west-

ward, and parallel to it, are *Lakes Cochrane*, *Winnipegosis*, and *Manitoba*. The *Lake of the Woods* is a fine sheet of water, divided into 3 lakes by a promontory. It is 75 m. long, and about the same in width. The other lakes to the south are *St. Joseph*, *St. Martin*, *Dauphin*, *Qu'Appelle*, *Mountain*, *Sar* or *Seul*, and *Bainy*. On the *Little Red-River* a beautiful fall occurs.

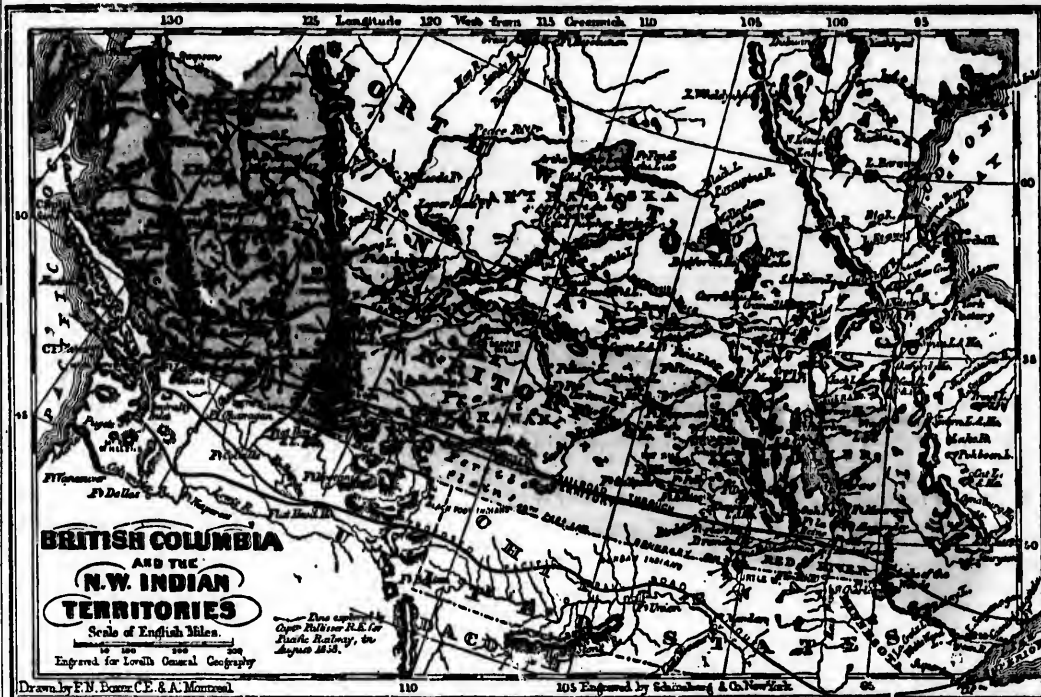
41. Climate. Winter at *Red River* lasts about five months. On the *Lower Saskatchewan* the winters are comparatively short and mild. To the north, it is much colder.

42. Products.—Quantities of timber grow on the river-banks, especially on the Upper *Saskatchewan*. Near the base of the *Rocky Mountains*, immense coal-fields exist. This section is also rich in other minerals. At the south and east the soil is very good, and grain and vegetables are easily cultivated. *Buffaloes* are numerous, and feed on the vast prairies.

GREAT FALLS ON LITTLE RED-RIVER, BETWEEN LAKES SUPERIOR AND WINNIEPEG. (547 FEET DEEPTH.)



QUESTIONS.—11. What is said of *Labrador*? 12. its position? 13. rivers? 14. lakes? 15. climate and products? 16. inhabitants? 17. settlements? 18. fisheries and commerce? 19. What is said of *Prince-Rupert Land*? 20. 21. its rivers? 22. the *Churchill*? 23. the *Nelson*? 24. *Hudson Bay*? 25. the lakes? 26. Give the extent of the *Mackenzie-River* Section; 27. of the *Mackenzie*; 28. *Coppermine*; and 29. *Great Fish Rivers*; 30. of the *Lakes*; 31. of the products; 32. describe the *N. W. Indian Territories*; 33. their physical features; 34. the *Red, Swan, and Saskatchewan Rivers* Section; 35. its physical features; 36. *Red-River Country*. 37. Describe the *Assiniboine*; 38. *Red*; and 39. *Saskatchewan Rivers*; 40. the lakes; 41. climate; 42. products; and illustration.



43. Fort Garry is the capital of the Red-River Country. Opposite to Simpson River and the Finlay branch of the Peace River, east by the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, south by the United-States boundary (49° north latitude), and west by the Gulf of Georgia, Pacific Ocean. Without Queen-Charlotte and other adjacent islands, it is about 450 miles long, and 250 wide.



FORT GARRY, AT THE CONFLUENCE OF THE ASSINIBOINE AND RED RIVERS.

The Fort is the Roman-Catholic Cathedral of St. Boniface. The Protestant Episcopal and Presbyterian churches and schools, and St. John's (Church of England) College, are farther down the Red River.

BRITISH COLUMBIA.

Size, with islands, the same as Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 450 miles.

44. **Noted For.**—BRITISH COLUMBIA is noted for its rich gold-mines, and its comparatively mild climate.

45. **Extent.**—This new colony is bounded on the north by

46. **Physical Features.**—The scenery of the northern part is picturesque, being diversified with mountain, lake, and river. The southern part includes the rich gold-valley of the Fraser River, and is well adapted to agriculture and pasturage. In addition to the principal Rocky-Mountain range along the eastern boundary, two other parallel ranges naturally divide the country into three sections; viz., (1) the Pacific slope, (2) the Fraser-River basin, and (3) the valley of the Upper Columbia. The parallel ranges in British Columbia are the Blue and Hooker; the former 16,000 ft, and the latter 15,690, above the sea-level. Between these two peaks there is a pass called the Athabasca Portage, the summit of which is elevated 7,300 ft. above the sea. To the south is the Kootenai Pass, 3,000 ft.

47. **Rivers.**—The Fraser is the principal river. It is 1,000 miles long, and falls into the Gulf of Georgia opposite Vancouver Island, six miles north of the United-States boundary-line, where it is a mile wide. Its chief tributaries are the Liutard and Thompson Rivers. The northern branch of the Columbia River, which takes its rise near Mounts Brown and Hooker, runs parallel to the Fraser River, and is joined by Flat-Bow River at the United-States boundary-line. Simpson River, at the north, flows into the Pacific. The Columbia is the largest river on the Pacific coast, and is, with its chief tributary, 1,200 miles long.

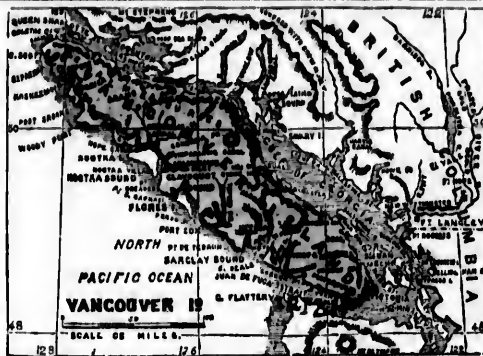
48. **Climate.**—Between the Cascade range and the Pacific coast the climate is equable; but towards the Eastern Rocky-Mountains it is very variable. Winter lasts from November to March; but snow seldom remains long on the ground. The prevailing winds are from the north in summer, and from the south and the west in winter. The soil is fertile.

49. **Exports.**—The annual value of gold exported is about \$2,000,000.

50. **New Westminster,** the capital, (pop. 1,000,) is 15 miles from the mouth of Fraser River. Farther N. are FORT LANGLEY, HORSE, and YALE.

QUESTIONS.—Point out the principal divisions, mountains, rivers, lakes, projected railways, and the boundary-line, on the map. Also point out the position and boundaries of Vancouver Island, British Columbia, North-West Indian Territories, and the Red-River and Saskatchewan sections of country.

43. What is said of Fort Garry? Give the size of British Columbia. 44. For what is it noted? 45. Point out its extent. 46. What is said of its scenery, &c., and the Athabasca Portage? 47. Trace the course of the rivers. 48. Describe the climate; 49. value of exports; 50. capital, and forts on Fraser River.



VANCOUVER ISLAND.

(So called from Vancouver, a Dutch navigator, who discovered it in 1792.)
Size, one fourth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 187 miles.

51. **Noted For.**—VANCOUVER ISLAND is chiefly noted for its coal-mines, and for being the largest island on the Pacific coast.
52. **Extent.**—This island is 278 miles long, and 50 or 60 miles wide. It is separated from British Columbia by the Gulf of



VICTORIA, THE CAPITAL OF VANCOUVER ISLAND.

Georgia and Queen-Charlotte's Sound; and from Washington Territory (in the United States) by the Strait of Juan' de Fuca.

53. **Physical Features.**—The surface is marked by mountains and extensive plains. Nimkish is the chief river. The harbours are excellent; the principal of which are Esquimalt, Victoria, Nanaimo (or Noanooa) Inlet, Becher Bay, and Barclay and Nootka Sounds. Harp Strait separates Vancouver Island from the San-Juan Archipelago.

54. **The Climate** is considered to be healthy. There is little frost, and vegetation begins in February. The summer is hot, the autumn dry, and the winter stormy; fogs prevail, and the periodical rains fall heavily.

55. **Products.**—The agricultural capabilities of the island are very great. The principal products, in addition to those of the soil, are furs, obtained chiefly from the beaver, the raccoon, the land-otter, and the sea-otter. Fish of the most valuable kind abound on the coast. Gold has been discovered, and coal is found in large quantities.

56. VANCOUVER ISLAND and BRITISH COLUMBIA were in 1858, by Act of Imperial Parliament, erected into a British Colony, under



ST. JOHN'S, THE CAPITAL OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

one government. VICTORIA, on Victoria Harbour, Royal Bay, at the south of the island, is the seat of government and chief town (population 8,000).

NEWFOUNDLAND.

(So called from being the first land "found" in the New World by Sir John Cabot.)
Size, less than one third that of Upper Canada, or equal to a square of 245 miles.

1. **Noted For.**—NEWFOUNDLAND is noted for its fisheries, and for being the first British Colony established in America.
2. **Position.**—This island is the largest in the North American seas, and lies at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is triangular in shape, and is about 1,200 miles in circumference. Its greatest length is 400 miles, its greatest breadth 300.
3. **Physical Features.**—The coast-line is pierced by many fine bays and harbours. The surface is much diversified by numerous hills, rivers, lakes, mossy marshes, and barren rocky ridges, especially along the western coast.
4. **The Principal Lakes** are Deer, Bay of Islands, Grand Pond, Bathurst or Victoria, in one group, west of Fogo District; and George IV., Wallace, Jameson, and Barrow, along the south. Fresh water covers nearly one third of the island.
5. **The Principal Rivers** are the Exploits, the Gander, the Gambo, the Cochrane, and the Humber.
6. **The Principal Islands** are North Belle-Ile, South Belle-Ile, and Fogo, at the east; and St. Pierre, Miquelon, and Langley, (belonging to France,) at the south. North Belle-Ile, which lies between Newfoundland and Labrador, gives its name to the Strait which divides these countries.
7. **The Strait of Belle Isle** is the northern outlet of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, between the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador. It is 30 miles long, and 12 wide. The Canadian mail-boats to Ireland and England take this route, it being shorter than that to the south.
8. **The Principal Bays** are Conception, Trinity, Ro-na-vis-ta, Exploits, Notre Dame (no-ter-dam), and Hare, on the east coast; St. John's, Islands, and St. George's, on the west coast; and Hermitage, Fortune, and Placentia (sh), on the south coast.
9. **Peninsulas.**—There are four peninsulas on the east coast, four on the south coast, and one at the north coast.
10. **The Principal Capes** are Race, which forms the extreme end of the eastern peninsula; and Bonaville, the first land seen by Cabot in 1497.
11. **The Banks of Newfoundland**, which stretch along the eastern and southern coasts of the island, are extensive submarine elevations, 600 or 700 miles long, and of various widths.
12. **The Climate**, though severe, is healthy. Winter is stormy, and later than in Canada. Snow does not lie long on the ground. Spring is late, and summer short and warm. In May and June, dense fogs prevail on the Banks (see page 8); but they are not injurious to health. Thunder and lightnings are rare. The longevity of the inhabitants is remarkable.
13. **Products.**—Coal, gypsum, copper, silver, lead, iron, and other minerals are abundant. The products of the coast-fishery are also abundant.
14. **Dogs.**—There are two kinds; viz, the short wiry-haired Labrador dog, and the long curly-haired Newfoundland species.
15. **Fisheries.**—The cod is the staple fish, and abounds on the adjacent banks; also herring, salmon, mullet, mackerel, and cap-a-les.
16. **Districts.**—There are ten electoral districts in the island. They are all on the east side; the west side being yet unsurveyed. (See map.)
17. **St. John's**, the capital of the island, and the most easterly seaport in America, is about 1,800 miles from Ireland. Its harbour is excellent. The entrance (or "the Narrows") is defended by several batteries. The city is situated on an acclivity, and the principal street is a mile long. The chief public edifices are the churches, the Government-house, the Parliament buildings, and the lunatic asylum. The city is lighted with gas, and well supplied with water. The trade consists in the exchange of fish and oil for the commodities of various countries. A submarine-telegraph connects the city with the American Continent. Pop. 25,000.
18. **Inhabitants.**—The original settlers were chiefly from Ireland, from the islands in the British Channel, from France, &c.
19. **Education.**—There are about 800 elementary schools and a normal school; besides grammar schools and academies.

QUESTIONS.—Point out the capes, bays, straits, harbours, and islands on the map of Vancouver Island. What is said of Vancouver Island? 51. What is noted for? 52. its extent? 53. physical features? 54. climate? 55. products? 56. government, &c. ? What is said of Newfoundland? 1. What is noted for? 2-11. its position, physical features, lakes, rivers, islands, Strait of Belle Isle, bays, peninsulas, capes, and Banks?—point them all out on the map; 12. climate? 13. products? 14. dogs? 15. fisheries? 16. districts?—point them out on the map. 17. What is said of St. John's? 18. inhabitants? 19. education?

PR I

(So called

Size, a 10

Anticost

20.

Edwa

for its

erati

21.

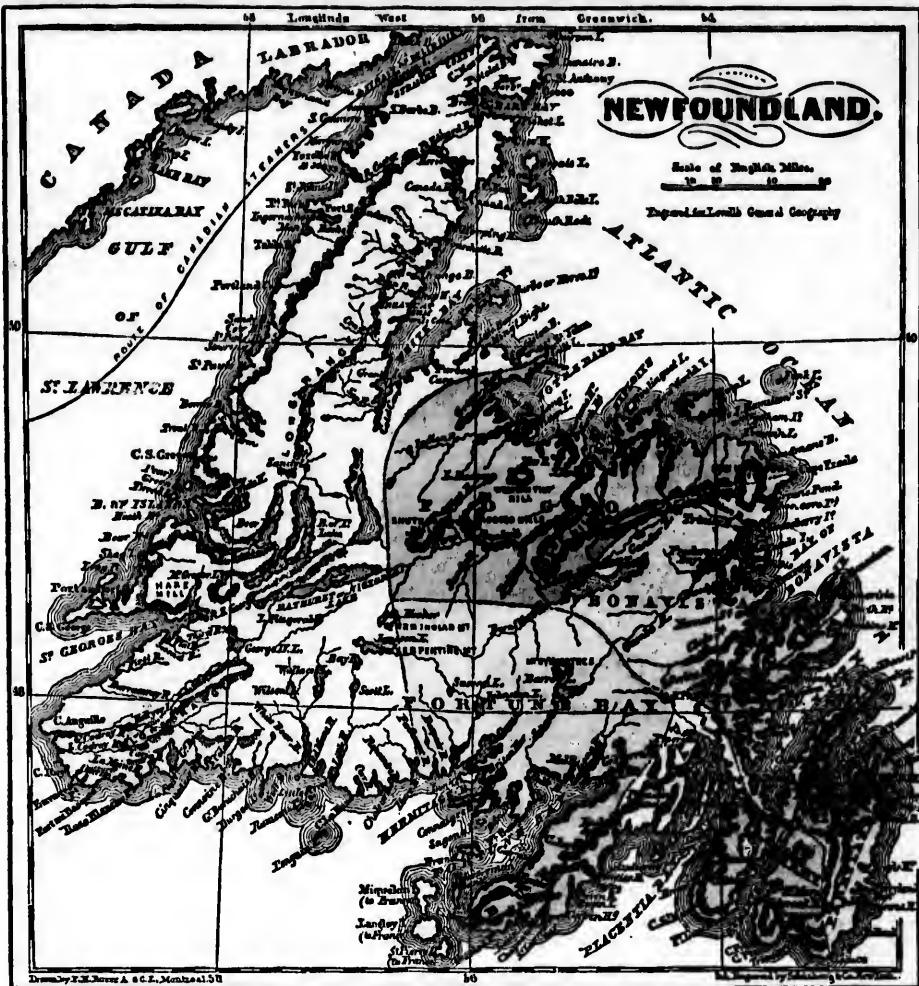
0 n

cup the

is

Qu

face

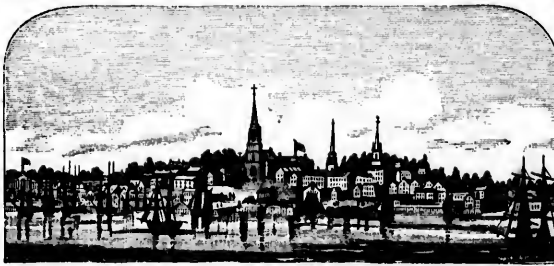


PRINCE-EDWARD ISLAND.

(So called from Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, Queen Victoria's father.) Size, a little larger than the island of Anticosti, or equal to a square of 46 m.

20. Noted For.—PRINCE-EDWARD ISLAND is noted for its fertility, and its comparatively salubrious climate.

21. Position and Extent.—This crescent-shaped island, 40 miles long by 30 wide, occupies the southern portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is equi-distant from Cape



CHARLOTTETOWN, THE CAPITAL OF PRINCE-EDWARD ISLAND.

Breton and New Brunswick, and follows the curve of their coast-line. Northumberland Strait (9 to 30 miles wide) separates it from the mainland.

22. Physical Features.—The surface is slightly undulating. A chain of hills extends the whole length of the island; but in no place do they reach any high elevation. The indentations along the coast are numerous; the chief of which are Hillsborough and Richmond Bays. These penetrate the island from opposite directions, and divide it into three separate peninsulas.

QUESTIONS.—Name and point out on the map of Newfoundland the peninsulas, capes, bays, islands, gulf, ocean, lakes, mountains, and rivers. Trace route of Canadian steamers to Europe. What is said of Pr.-Ed. Isl? 20. What noted for? 21. Point out its position, &c. 22. Describe its phys. feat.

val Bay, at the south (population 8,000).

ld by Sir John Cabot.) square of 246 miles.

for its fisheries, l in America.

the North Ameri- of St. Lawrence, miles in circum- atest breadth 300.

eed by many fine by numerous hills, especially along

ands, Grand Pond, etriet; and George Fresh water covers

ander, the Gambo,

outh Bello-Ise, and ngley, (belonging to Newfoundland

these countries. of the Gulf of St. Labrador. It is

ere to Ireland and e south.

-n-vi-ta, Exploits, St. John's Islands, rtune, and Pla-con-

east coast, four on

the extreme end of i by Cabot in 1497. h along the eastern rine elevations, 600

oter is stormy, and ground Spring is dense fog prevail to health. Thunder is remarkable.

on, and other mine also abundant.

ry-haired Labrador

ads on the adjacent -lan. The number is 25,000; and the boats are engaged all kinds, seals, &c. of the French and the same. Annual 60.

island. They are (See map.)

et easterly seaport bour is excellent. al batteries. The n an acclivity, and

et is a mile long. y edifices are the ument houses, the ngs, and the luna- city is lighted with

plied with water. s in the exchange r the commodities

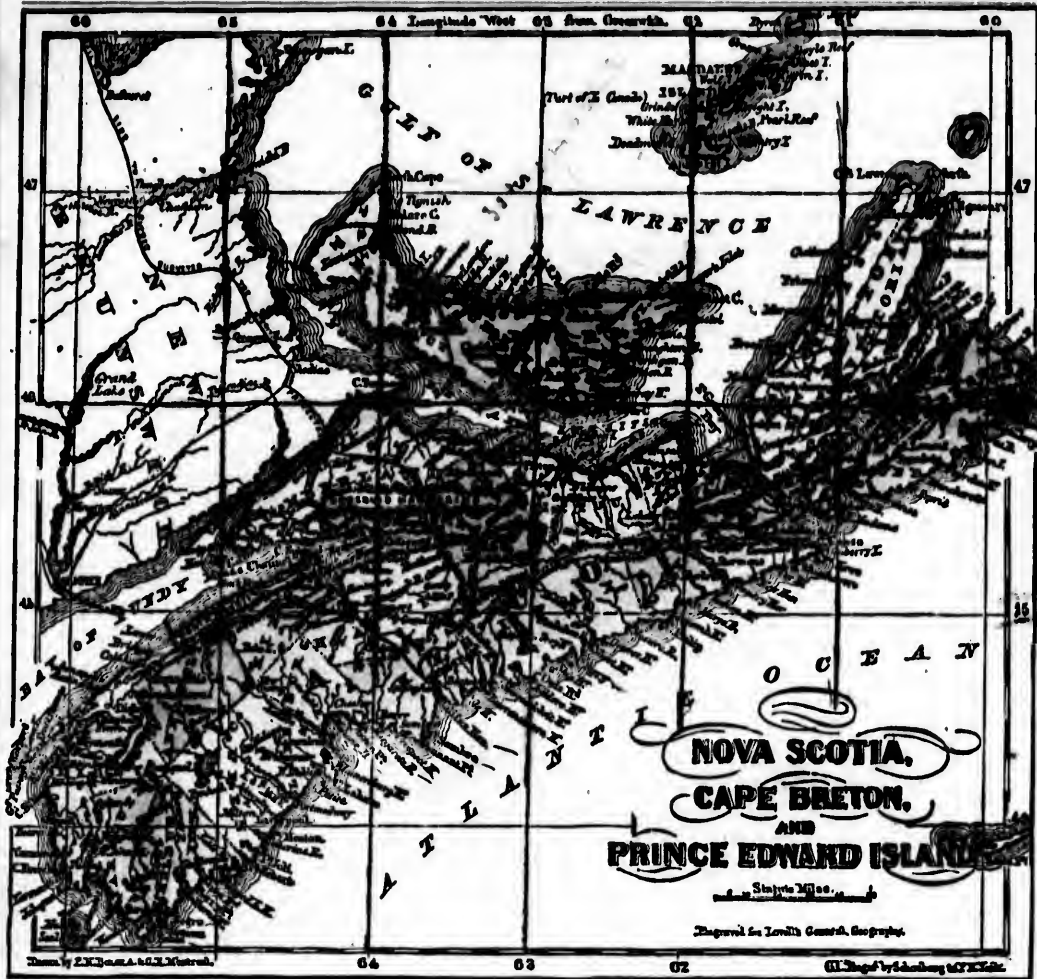
see. A submarine- s the city with the ent. Pop. 25,000.

ts.—The original dy from Ireland, s in the British

nce, &c.

l.—There are about ools and a normal grammar schools

ancouver Island? d? 1. What noted out on the map; ts? 19. education?



23. Products.—The soil is free from rock, easy of tillage, and very productive. Agriculture is the chief occupation of the inhabitants.

24. The Climate is remarkably healthy, and milder than that of the adjoining continent. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs are rare; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea-breezes. The autumn is beautiful.

25. The Inhabitants consist of descendants of Scottish, Irish, Acadian-French, English, and other settlers.

26. Education.—There are about 300 elementary schools, and a normal and a model school; besides various private schools.

27. The Counties are King, Queen, and Prince's, divided into sixty-seven townships (numbered from 1 to 67), three royalties, and six islands.

28. Chief Towns.—CHARLOTTETOWN (population 5,000), GEORGETOWN, PRINCETOWN, ST. DAVID'S, and DARTMOUTH.

29. Charlottetown, the capital of the island, is situated on the southern shore of Hillsborough Bay. Its harbour is one of the best in the Gulf. The city is well built, and was incorporated in 1855. Its principal streets, which cross each other at right angles, are 100 feet in width. There are four public squares; on one of which, called the Queen's Square, the Province or Parliament building stands. The Government buildings, the

churches, the barracks, and the lunatic asylum are the chief public edifices.

30. The Civil Government, as in the other British North American Provinces, consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, an Executive Council, and two Houses of Parliament.

31. The Commerce of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships, and fish, for British and American products. Annual value of exports about \$775,000; annual revenue about \$150,000.

32. The Manufactures are chiefly for domestic use. Ship-building is prosecuted with considerable enterprise. The fisheries are very valuable.

NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

So called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland and Brittany, "Breton" being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne or Brittany, in France.

Size, less than one fourth that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square

33. Noted For.—NOVA SCOTIA is noted for its coal, other minerals; its fisheries, and its extensive line of sea

34. Position and Extent.—The Province of Nova Scotia includes the peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Ca

QUESTIONS.—23. What is said of the products of Prince-Edward Island? 24. of its climate? 25. inhabitants? 26. education? 27. counties? 28. Describe Charlottetown. 29. What is said of the civil government? 30. commerce? 31. manufactures? What is said of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton? 32. For what is the Province of Nova Scotia noted? 33. Point out on the map its position and extent; also its capes, bays, channels,

which lie east of the island, and Prince Edward Island, and lies under a

35. Position.—The Province of Nova Scotia is connected to the continent by the Isthmus of Chignecto, its surface is dotted with small bays, the interior ranges of the coast, the most of the coast, Nova Scotia, extends along the coast, the coast of the island is undulating.

36. The Climate is remarkably healthy, and milder than that of the adjoining continent. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs are rare; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea-breezes. The autumn is beautiful.

37. The Inhabitants consist of descendants of Scottish, Irish, Acadian-French, English, and other settlers.

38. Education.—There are about 300 elementary schools, and a normal and a model school; besides various private schools.

39. The Counties are King, Queen, and Prince's, divided into sixty-seven townships (numbered from 1 to 67), three royalties, and six islands.

40. Chief Towns.—CHARLOTTETOWN (population 5,000), GEORGETOWN, PRINCETOWN, ST. DAVID'S, and DARTMOUTH.

41. Charlottetown, the capital of the island, is situated on the southern shore of Hillsborough Bay. Its harbour is one of the best in the Gulf. The city is well built, and was incorporated in 1855. Its principal streets, which cross each other at right angles, are 100 feet in width. There are four public squares; on one of which, called the Queen's Square, the Province or Parliament building stands. The Government buildings, the

churches, the barracks, and the lunatic asylum are the chief public edifices.

42. The Civil Government, as in the other British North American Provinces, consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, an Executive Council, and two Houses of Parliament.

43. The Commerce of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships, and fish, for British and American products. Annual value of exports about \$775,000; annual revenue about \$150,000.

44. The Manufactures are chiefly for domestic use. Ship-building is prosecuted with considerable enterprise. The fisheries are very valuable.

NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

So called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland and Brittany, "Breton" being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne or Brittany, in France.

Size, less than one fourth that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square

33. Noted For.—NOVA SCOTIA is noted for its coal, other minerals; its fisheries, and its extensive line of sea

34. Position and Extent.—The Province of Nova Scotia includes the peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Ca

QUESTIONS.—23. What is said of the products of Prince-Edward Island? 24. of its climate? 25. inhabitants? 26. education? 27. counties? 28. Describe Charlottetown. 29. What is said of the civil government? 30. commerce? 31. manufactures? What is said of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton? 32. For what is the Province of Nova Scotia noted? 33. Point out on the map its position and extent; also its capes, bays, channels,

which lie east of the island, and Prince Edward Island, and lies under a

35. Position.—The Province of Nova Scotia is connected to the continent by the Isthmus of Chignecto, its surface is dotted with small bays, the interior ranges of the coast, the most of the coast, Nova Scotia, extends along the coast, the coast of the island is undulating.

36. The Climate is remarkably healthy, and milder than that of the adjoining continent. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs are rare; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea-breezes. The autumn is beautiful.

37. The Inhabitants consist of descendants of Scottish, Irish, Acadian-French, English, and other settlers.

38. Education.—There are about 300 elementary schools, and a normal and a model school; besides various private schools.

39. The Counties are King, Queen, and Prince's, divided into sixty-seven townships (numbered from 1 to 67), three royalties, and six islands.

40. Chief Towns.—CHARLOTTETOWN (population 5,000), GEORGETOWN, PRINCETOWN, ST. DAVID'S, and DARTMOUTH.

41. Charlottetown, the capital of the island, is situated on the southern shore of Hillsborough Bay. Its harbour is one of the best in the Gulf. The city is well built, and was incorporated in 1855. Its principal streets, which cross each other at right angles, are 100 feet in width. There are four public squares; on one of which, called the Queen's Square, the Province or Parliament building stands. The Government buildings, the

churches, the barracks, and the lunatic asylum are the chief public edifices.

42. The Civil Government, as in the other British North American Provinces, consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, an Executive Council, and two Houses of Parliament.

43. The Commerce of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships, and fish, for British and American products. Annual value of exports about \$775,000; annual revenue about \$150,000.

44. The Manufactures are chiefly for domestic use. Ship-building is prosecuted with considerable enterprise. The fisheries are very valuable.

NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

So called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland and Brittany, "Breton" being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne or Brittany, in France.

Size, less than one fourth that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square

33. Noted For.—NOVA SCOTIA is noted for its coal, other minerals; its fisheries, and its extensive line of sea

which lie to the south-east of New Brunswick and Prince-Edward Island, and are united under one government and legislature.

35. Physical Features.

—The Peninsula of Nova Scotia is somewhat triangular in shape, and is connected with New Brunswick by a short isthmus 16 miles in width. Its surface is undulating and picturesque, and is dotted over with many small, beautiful lakes. In the interior are several ranges of hills, of which the *Co-Bequid* (c-hid) are the most important. On the coast, the capes, bays, and harbours are numerous. No part of Nova Scotia is more than thirty miles from the sea. A belt of rugged rocks, averaging 800 feet in height and from 20 to 60 miles in width, extends along the Atlantic coast from Cape Canso to Cape Sable, and along the Bay of Fundy coast. The island of Cape Breton is nearly severed in two by Bras-d'Or (brâ-dor') Lake and St. Peter's Bay. The island is rich in minerals, well wooded, and fertile. The surface is undulating, and the scenery generally beautiful.

36. The Principal Capes of Nova Scotia are Mal-a-quis, John, St. George, on the N. coast; Canso, Sambro, Pennant Point, La-have (l-hav'), Negro, Sable, on S. E. coast; Pouchou (poo-shoh'), St. Mary, Dighy Neck, Chi-goo-see-to, Split, and Thomson, on W. coast. In Cape Breton they are St. Lawrence, North, Egmout, En-tu-me, Dauphin, Margala, and Breton.

37. Principal Bays.—Nova Scotia is noted for its numerous bays. The principal on the northern coast are St. George's; on the eastern, Che-d-a-bu-to; on the southern, Chebucto (she-huk-too) (or Halifax), Margaree's, and Mahone; on the western, St. Mary's, Fundy, Minas (channel and basin), Chignecto, and Verte. In Cape Breton the chief are Apsy, St. Ann's, Bras d'Or (Inlet), Sydney, Mi-ré, Gabarus (roof'), and St. Peter's.

38. The Bay of Fundy separates Nova Scotia from New Brunswick. Cumberland Peninsula divides it into Chignecto Bay and Minas Channel. The Bay of Fundy is an arm of the sea, extending 200 miles inland from the Atlantic to the head of Cobequid Bay, and is from 80 to 60 miles wide. It is remarkable for its high tides, and its fogs and storms. The coast is bold and rocky. The rivers St. John, Ste. Croix (krwah), Annapolis, and several others, flow into it.

39. Straits.—Northumberland Strait separates Nova Scotia from Prince Edward Island; and Canseau Strait separates it from Cape Breton.

40. The Principal Rivers in Nova Scotia are the Annapolis, the Avon; the Shi-be-nae'-a-die, the St. Mary's, the Lahave, and the Liverpool. In Cape Breton, the Miré, the Inhabitants, and the Mar-ga-ro'.

41. The Principal Lakes in Nova Scotia are Ros-sig-pol', Ship-Harbour, Grand, and Lochaber, besides numerous other beautiful sheets of water. Three in Cape Breton are Bras d'Or Inlet and Margara.

42. The Principal Islands of Nova Scotia are Cape Sable, Seal, Long, and Pictou (pik-too). Near Cape Breton are Bou-lar-da-rie', Sen-ta-ry, and Ma-dame'. Sable Island, 87 miles south-east of Canseau, is 25 miles long and from one to two wide. It is noted for its sandy and dangerous coast.

43. Climate.—Nova Scotia being within the influence of the Mexican Gulf-Stream, its climate is more equable, and less liable to extremes of heat and cold, than that of Canada. The autumn is an agreeable season of the year.

44. Products.—The Province is rich in coal, iron, and gypsum. In Nova Scotia there are three principal coal-fields, and in Cape Breton about the same. The agricultural productions of Nova Scotia are abundant. At the head of the Bay of Fundy, the alluvial deposits, thrown up by the high tides and enclosed by dykes, render the soil very productive.

45. Railways, Canals, &c.—A railway runs from Halifax to New Brunswick, via Truro, with a branch to Windsor. The Shubenacadie Canal connects Halifax with Cobequid Bay. The electric-telegraph connects every county with Halifax,



CITY OF HALIFAX, THE CAPITAL OF NOVA SCOTIA, FROM DARTMOUTH.

and Halifax with the other Provinces & the U. States. No. of post-offices 850.

46. Manufactures in domestic articles, as well as ship-building, are carried on to some extent.

47. Commerce is greatly promoted by 1,300 miles of sea-coast, and about 50 ports of call. Annual value of exports \$7,000,000; revenue \$600,000; public debt \$5,200,000.

48. Inhabitants.—The Province was originally settled by English and Irish near Halifax, Scots in the Eastern Counties, American United-Empire Loyalists* in the Western and Midland Counties, Germans and Swiss in Lunenburg County, and French in various other parts.

49. Education.—Besides the colleges, there are numerous public schools and academies; besides a normal and a model school.

50. Chief Towns.—HALIFAX (pop. 28,000), LUNENBURG (pop. 2,500), PICTOU (pop. 6,000), TRURO, WINDSOR, ANNAPOLIS, and YARMOUTH.

51. Halifax, the capital of Nova Scotia, was founded in 1749, by Governor Cornwallis, and named after the Earl of Halifax, the active promoter of the settlement. The original name was CUREBUCTO. The harbour is the finest in America, and is rarely frozen. Halifax is well protected by the citadel, which crowns the summit of the hill on the declivity of which it is pleasantly situated. The city is two miles long by about a mile wide, and is well supplied with water and gas. The streets cross each other at right angles, and from the harbour the city presents a very striking appearance. The Province building and other public edifices are plain but substantial structures. There are several good churches and a college. Halifax is the chief station for the Royal Navy in British North America, and a port of call for the English and Irish mail-steamer and from Boston in the United States. Its dockyard covers fourteen acres.

52. Liverpool is a seaport of considerable trade, 75 miles south-west of Halifax. It contains one long street and is well built, but the site is rocky.

53. Lunenburg, capital of the county of that name, south of Halifax, is well built on a peninsula, and presents a fine appearance from the water.

54. Pictou, on Northumberland Strait, is agreeably situated near the entrance to the harbour. It is the second most important town in Nova Scotia, and the centre and seaport of the great mining districts of the Province. Its commercial facilities are very good, and its trade extensive.

55. Truro is a handsome place, near the head of Cobequid Bay. It is on the railway from Halifax to New Brunswick. It contains a normal school.

56. Windsor, on the Avon estuary, is beautifully situated, and is near extensive gypsum-quarries. It has the oldest university in Br. N. America.

57. Annapolis was founded by the French settlers in 1605, and named Port Royal. It was four times captured; but was finally ceded to Great Britain in 1713, when its name was changed to Annapolis, after Queen Anne.

58. Yarmouth, on the south-west coast, owns a large amount of shipping, and is extensively engaged in the carrying-trade.

59. Civil Divisions.—There are fourteen counties in Nova Scotia, and four in Cape Breton; for which, with their chief towns, see map.

60. The Constitution is founded upon Treaties, Orders in Council, Royal Instructions, and Imperial and Colonial Acts. Nova Scotia, then called *A-cen-die*, was settled by the French, under De Monte, in 1604; ceded to England in 1713; colonized in 1749-9; a Constitution was granted in 1759; in 1784 it was modified; Responsible Government (as in Canada) was introduced in 1848; and the public statutes were revised and consolidated in 1861. Cape Breton was taken by England in 1758.

61. Indian Tribes.—When first discovered, Nova Scotia was inhabited by the Miomac (Algonquin) Indians, called Souriquois (soo-ro-kwah') by the French. In 1761 they finally submitted to the whites.

* Noble and gallant Loyalists who perilled their lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honour, to maintain, as "United Empire," England and her Colonies in America, during the American Revolution (1776-83).



THE TOWN OF PICTOU, ON NORTHUMBERLAND STRAIT, NOVA SCOTIA.

QUESTIONS.—35. Describe the physical features of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton. 36. Name and point out the principal capes, and 37. bays of Nova Scotia. 38. Describe the Bay of Fundy. 39. Point out and name the straits; 40. the principal rivers; 41. the principal lakes; 42. the principal islands. 43. What is said of the climate? 44. products? 45. railways, &c.? 46. 47. manufactures, &c.? 48. 49. inhabitants, &c.? 50. chief towns? 51. Halifax? 52. Liverpool? 53. Lunenburg? 54. Pictou? 55. Truro? 56. Windsor? 57. Annapolis? 58. Yarmouth? 59. 60. civil divisions, &c.? 61. Indians?



68 Drawn by F.N. Bowser, A.C.E. Montreal.

66

65 Engr'd by Schönborg & Co. New York.

NEW BRUNSWICK.

(So called from the German seat of the Royal House of Brunswick in Europe.)
Size, about the same as Bavaria, or equal to a square of 165 miles.

62. Noted For.—New Brunswick is noted for its compact shape, its numerous rivers, its fine timber, and its extensive ship-building.

63. Position and Boundaries.—This Province (in shape an irregular square) lies south of the Gaspé Peninsula, and is bounded on the north by the Bay of Chaleurs [shâ-lehr'] and Lower Canada, on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Nova Scotia, on the south by the Bay of Fundy, and on the west by the State of Maine.

64. Physical Features.—The surface of New Brunswick is agreeably diversified with hill and dale, mountain and valley, picturesque lakes and noble rivers. Its forests are well wooded, and the soil along the rivers and in the valleys is rich and fertile. The fine

QUESTIONS.—What countries are shown on the map? Point out the various counties, the bays, capes, islands, straits, gulf, and ocean. Give the derivation and size of New Brunswick. 63. For what is it noted? 63. Point out its position and boundaries. 64. Describe its physical features. 65. Name and trace its principal rivers. 66. Point out and describe the St. John; 67. the Restigouche; and 68. the Miramichi Rivers; 69. the principal lakes; 70. the principal bays.

bays are well adapted for commerce.

65. The Principal Rivers are the To-bique [-book'], St. John, Ste. Croix (which takes its rise in Grand Lake, and separates the southern parts of Maine from New Brunswick), Res-ti-gou-che [-goosh'], Ken-ne-beo-a-gis, Wa-shad-a-mo-ak and Salmon (5. tributaries of the St. John). Richibucto, Mir-a-mi-chi [-she], Se-vogle' (three branches), and Nip-i-sig-nit.

66. The St. John takes its rise in the highlands which separate Canada from the State of Maine and from New Brunswick. It is 450 miles long. For the first 150 miles of its course it is known by its Indian name of the Wal-loosh-took (or Long River). The Grand Falls are 235 miles from the Bay of Fundy (or half-way down the river, near the north-east corner of the State of Maine. They are 80 feet high, and very picturesque. From the Grand Falls to Woodstock it flows in a southerly direction. Thence to the outlet of Grand Lake it takes an easterly direction, and from that lake to the Atlantic it flows almost due south. The St. John is a beautiful river, and is navigable to Fredericton, 84 miles from the sea. From this point small steamers ply as far as Woodstock, 60 miles farther up; and sometimes up to the Grand Falls, 60 miles above Woodstock.

67. The Restigouche is 200 miles long, and expands into the Bay of Chaleurs. It is a boundary-river between the Provinces of New Brunswick and Canada. Restigouche means "finger and thumb,"—the branches of the river being spread out like a hand.

68. The Miramichi is 225 miles long, and nine miles wide at its mouth. It is navigable for 80 miles.

69. The Principal Lakes are Grand Lake in Queen's County, and Grand Lake (source of the Ste. Croix) between Maine and New Brunswick.

70. The Principal Bays are Chaleurs, Mira-



GRAND FALLS ON THE ST. JOHN RIVER, NEW BRUNSWICK.

michi, Cumberland, Chibougamau, St. John, quoddy, 71. T. leura is from 15. It has u nor other navigati celebrate and abun 72. T though extreme is less so Lower C healthy. the Bay rarely ex inland. tiful sea 73. T ucts are coal, ir granite. 74. In Empire 75. E mies an normal 76. T WOODS TEX, KI river S Univers building building Hall, th dral, and the W rian, & Populat 76. S commerce Brunswi a fine ba the St. built, ar from the posing principa the chur rise how court-h the asyru tinary. bridge 7. The har safe, and winter.

(The nam

1. N its nobl for its t 2. E near th from th wick. River f the riv the Hu 3. Bo ritory, of Man tario and the 4. Di or East

QUEST towns; 7 84 manu

are well adapted for
service.

61. The Principal Rivers are the Tobique, the St. John, Ste. Anne (which takes its rise in Lake, and separates the northern parts of Maine from New Brunswick), the Gouche (gouche), the Pesse, the Wapogo, and Salmon (Salmon of the St. John), the Miramichi, the Sevoigne (three rivers), and the Nipigon.

62. The St. John takes its rise in the highlands of Maine and forms a separate Canada from New Brunswick. It is 450 long. For the first 150 of its course it is in by its Indian name a Waloosh-took (or River). The Grand Falls are 395 miles from the mouth of the river, near the east corner of the State of Maine. They are not high, and very picturesque. From the Grand Falls to Woodstock it flows in a southerly direction, and takes an outlet of Lake it takes an easterly direction, and from Lake to the Atlantic coast almost due south. St. John is a beautiful city, and is navigable to Fredericton, 84 miles from the coast. From this point steamers ply as far as Woodstock, 60 miles farther, and sometimes up to Grand Falls, 60 miles farther.

63. The Restigouche is 150 miles long, and extends into the Bay of Chaleur. It is a boundary between the Provinces of New Brunswick and Maine. Restigouche means "river and thumb"—the shape of the river being that of a hand.

64. The Miramichi is 150 miles long, and nine miles wide at its mouth. It is navigable for 80 miles. The principal cities are Grand Lake in the County, and Grand Falls (source of the Ste. Anne) between Maine and New Brunswick.

65. The Principal Rivers are Chaleurs, Mira-

michi, Shediac, Verte, Cumberland, Chepoudy, Oulag-neo-to, Fundy, St. John, and Passamaquoddy.

71. The Bay of Chaleurs is 90 miles long, and from 15 to 20 miles wide. It has neither shoal, reef, nor other impediment to navigation. The bay is celebrated for the variety and abundance of its fish.

72. The Climate, though subject to great extremes of heat and cold, is less severe than that of Lower Canada, and is very healthy. Fogs come from the Bay of Fundy, but rarely extend any distance inland. Autumn is a beautiful season of the year.

73. The Chief Products are agricultural; but coal, iron, asphalt, lead, granite, marble, and other valuable minerals are abundant.

74. Inhabitants.—The Province was chiefly settled by American United-Empire Loyalists, and emigrants from Great Britain and France.

75. Education.—In addition to a university, there are several academies and grammar schools; besides numerous elementary schools, and a normal or training school, supported by the Legislature.

76. The Chief Towns are **FREDERICTON**, **ST. JOHN**, **ST. ANDREWS**, **WOODSTOCK**, **SACKVILLE** (containing the Allison academies), **DORCHESTER**, **KINGSBURY**, **NEWCASTLE**, **CHARLOTTE**, **ST. SEBASTIAN**, and **MONCTON**.

77. Fredericton, the capital, is beautifully situated 84 miles up the River St. John, and is well laid out. The Government-House and the University are fine stone buildings. The other public buildings are the Province Hall, the English Cathedral, and the Roman Catholic, Wesleyan, Presbyterian, & Baptist Churches. Population 6,000.

78. St. John, the chief commercial city of New Brunswick, is situated on a fine bay at the mouth of the St. John. It is well built, and, as approached from the water, has an imposing appearance. The principal buildings, besides the churches, are the marine hospital, the barracks, court-house, prison, lunatic asylum, and the penitentiary. A handsome bridge spans the river. The harbour is capacious, safe, and free from ice in winter. The entrance is



CITY OF ST. JOHN, THE CHIEF COMMERCIAL PORT OF NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM SUPERIOR-BRIDGE.

79. The Principal Exports are timber, ships, grain, iron, coal, gypsum, annual value \$5,000,000; revenue \$675,500; debt \$4,976,414.

80. Railways extend (1) from St. John to Shediac, 115 miles, with a projected branch to Nova Scotia, 37 miles; from Shediac to Miramichi, 90 miles; thence to Canada; and from St. John to the State of Maine, 75 miles. (2) From St. Andrews to Woodstock, 100 miles. One great turnpike-road extends from St. John to Canada; another extends from the State of Maine, through St. John, to Nova Scotia, Shediac, and Restigouche.

81. The Manufactures include articles for domestic use. About 150 ships are built annually. There are 600 mills for sawing timber.

82. Indians.—When Europeans first visited New Brunswick, three Algonquin tribes or nations occupied Acadia, including Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Maine: viz., the Micmac (or Souriquois), from Gaspe Bay to the River Ste. Croix; the Etchemin (or Meliocoetes, "canoe-men"), from the Ste. Croix to the Penobscot; and the Abenacquis (or Montsquiens), from the Penobscot to the Kennebec. These three nations afterwards became more closely united, and were known to the French under the name of "Les Nations Abenacques." The Abenacquis have a few small settlements on the St. John. They are now known as Meliocoetes. Their number does not exceed twelve hundred.



CITY OF FREDERICTON, THE CAPITAL OF NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM THE RIVER ST. JOHN.

THE TWO CANADAS.

(The name "Can-a-da," or "Kan-s-ta," was a word used by the Indians, when Jacques Cartier first visited the country, in describing the position of their villages near Quebec. It is also said to have been given by the Spaniards, who, having found no mines here, exclaimed, "A-can-s-da!" "Here is nothing!")

1. Noted For.—CANADA is chiefly noted for its great lakes, its noble rivers, extensive lines of railways and canals; and also for its timber, mineral, and agricultural products.

2. Extent.—Canada extends in an easterly direction from near the Red-River Settlement to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and from the State of Michigan (in the United States) to New Brunswick. It extends northwards from the Canadian Lakes and the River St. Lawrence to the high ridge of land which separates the rivers of Canada from those of the Hudson-Bay Section of the Hudson-Bay Territory. (See map of North America, page 15.)

3. Boundaries.—It is bounded on the north by the Hudson-Bay Territory; on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the States of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York, and by Lakes Ontario and Erie; and on the west by Lakes St. Clair, Huron, and Superior, and the North-West Indian Territories.

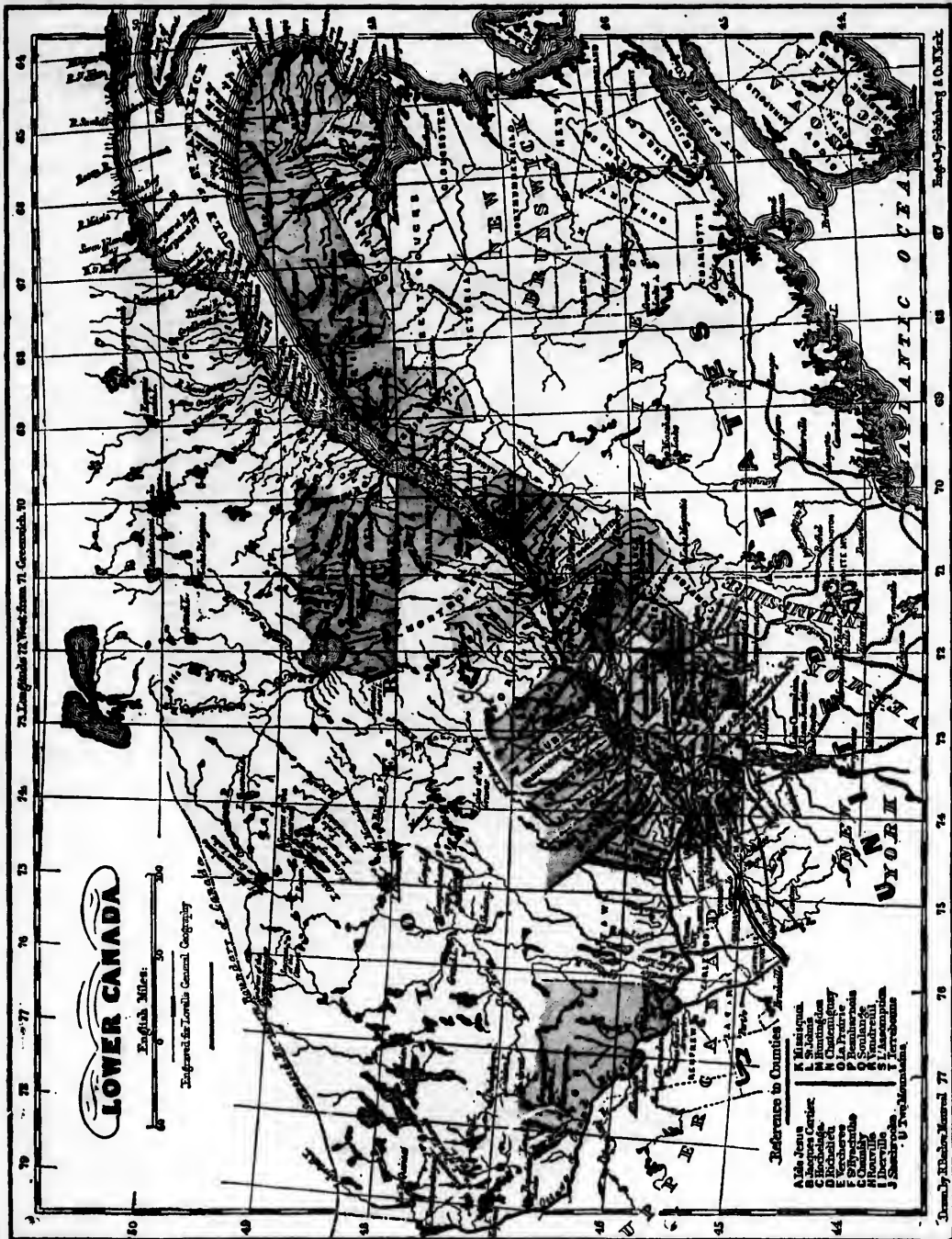
4. Divisions.—Canada is divided into two parts; viz., Lower and Upper, or Eastern and Western Canada. The River Ottawa is the great central

boundary between them. The number of square miles and miles square included in these two divisions, are, with their estimated population, as follows:

	Square Miles.	Miles Square.	Equal to Estimated Population in 1861.
Lower Canada	210,000	450	1,500,000
Upper Canada	180,000	385	1,544,000

5. Commercial Importance.—Canada, the most important of the British Colonies in the New World, occupies the East and West, the areas of North America, embracing the whole northern basin of the great lakes and the valley of the St. Lawrence River. It is rich in valuable timbers and the more important minerals. Its soil is fertile, and its climate agreeable. By means of numerous lakes and navigable rivers, a continuous series of canals and extensive lines of railways (connecting the Upper Lakes with the sea-board), its internal trade is admirably developed. It also possesses every facility for a great transit-trade between the East and the West. Should the projected railway be constructed from the head of Lake Superior (see map of British Columbia, &c., page 19) to the Pacific Ocean, through British territory, the commercial importance of Canada can scarcely be overestimated. Among the British dependencies on this continent, it now occupies a very prominent position. Should a Confederation of these dependencies take place, it would naturally occupy a central and controlling influence.

QUESTIONS.—71. Describe the Bay of Chaleurs; 72. the climate of New Brunswick; 73. the chief products; 74. inhabitants; 75. education; 76. chief towns; 77. City of Fredericton; 78. St. John. 79. What is said of the counties? 80. the government? 81. commerce? 82. principal exports? 83. railways? 84. manufactures? 85. Indians? Give derivation of Canada. 1. For what is it noted? 2-5. Describe its extent, boundaries, divisions, and comm. importance.



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the countries which are shown on this map. What great river runs through them? Name the principal lakes and rivers north of the St. Lawrence; those south of it. Trace the principal rivers. Point out and name the bays. What chief places do the railways connect?

Lower
 1. I
 enterp
 miners
 scenes
 2.
 Canad
 north
 Hudso
 the es
 the G
 on the
 Chalou
 and, t
 on the
 States
 Vermo
 and o
 R. Ott
 3. F
 Thoug
 countr
 Canad
 than th
 on a ty
 gable
 ranges
 insula
 ing to
 Gulf o
 tendin
 4. T
 Mistas
 Franch
 St. Lav
 5. T
 Mauric
 p. 29.)
 Anne,
 6. T
 Lakes
 It agal
 deepen
 into th
 are the
 7. T
 and fa
 and d
 its bar
 which
 8. T
 St. La
 Includ
 tributs
 expans
 (180 f
 9. T
 75 mi
 Cham
 river
 lake s
 10.
 Chale
 Gaspé
 Trinit
 Metis,
 Ha-H
 11.
 the M
 group
 re-al
 12.
 Q
 featur
 10. P
 16. ci

LOWER CANADA.

Lower Canada is about 600 miles from east to west, and 200 from north to south.

1. **Noted For.**—LOWER CANADA is noted for the exploring enterprises of its founders; for its commercial importance, fisheries, mineral wealth, beautiful scenery, and noble rivers.

2. **Boundaries.**—Lower Canada is bounded on the north by Labrador and the Hudson-Bay Territory; on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the Bay of Chaleurs, New Brunswick, and the State of Maine; on the south-east by the States of New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York; and on the S. W. by the R. Ottawa & Upper Canada.

3. **Physical Features.**—Though not a mountainous country, the scenery of Lower Canada is more picturesque than that of Upper Canada. Its rivers and mountain-ridges are also on a grander scale. Fogs frequently prevail in the autumn on its navigable waters. The Lower St. Lawrence is enclosed by two mountain-ranges: viz., the Appalachian, on the south-east, running along the peninsula of Gaspé (here known as the Notre-Dame Mountains), and extending to Alabama; and the Laurentian, on the north, running from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Cape Torment, near Quebec, and thence extending into the interior of the continent north-west of Lake Superior.

4. **The Principal Lakes** are As-tur-a-gam-cook, Pa-pli-mon-a-gaco, Missassinie, St. John, Edward, Mat-a-win, Mis-kou-sa-kane, Grand, St. Francis, Megantic, and Memphram'gog; also the lake-expansions of the St. Lawrence, and the lake-sources of the St. Maurice & Saguenay Rivers.

5. **The Principal Rivers** are the St. Lawrence, the Saguenay, the St. Maurice, the Ottawa and its tributaries (in part), (see OTTAWA, sec. 10, p. 29), the Richelieu (reesh-e-lu'), the St. Francis, the Batiscan', the Ste. Anne, and the Chaudière [sho-de-air']. For minor rivers & lakes, see map.

6. **The St. Lawrence**, as it leaves Upper Canada, expands into Lakes St. Francis and St. Louis. Passing the mouth of the Richelieu, it again expands into Lake St. Peter. Thence it gradually widens and deepens until its waters mingle with those of the Gulf, and then pass into the Atlantic Ocean. Area drained 565,000 sq. m. Its tributaries are the other chief rivers of Lower Canada. (See section 9, page 29.)

7. **The Saguenay**, or outlet of Lake St. John, is 100 miles in length, and falls into the St. Lawrence at Ta-dou-sac'. It has thirty tributaries, and drains a triangular area of 27,000 square miles. In many places its banks are perpendicular rocks. It is navigable for 75 miles; above which the rapids are numerous. Its scenery at Ha-Ha Bay is very grand.

8. **The St. Maurice** rises in Lake Os-ke-la-na-to, and falls into the St. Lawrence at Three Rivers,—so called from its three-fold mouth. Including its windings, it is nearly 400 miles in length. It has many tributaries, and drains an area of 21,000 square miles. In its course it expands into numerous lakes. Besides the great Falls of Sha-wan-e-gan (160 feet in height), it has a great number of minor falls and cascades.

9. **The Richelieu** issues from Lake Champlain, and flows northward 75 miles to the St. Lawrence. Champlain penetrated up this river in 1609, and discovered the lake since named after him.

10. **The Principal Bays** are Chaleurs (in part), Mal-basé, Gaspé, St. Margaret, Lobster, Trinity, English, Our-tard', Grand Mele, Mille Vaches [meel-wach'], Ha-Ha, Murray, and St. Paul's.

11. **The Principal Islands** are the Magdalen group, Mingan group, Anticosti, Or-leans, Mont-real [-awl'], Jesus, and Perrot'.

12. **The Climate** of Lower

Canada, though similar to that of Upper Canada, is colder in winter, and warmer in summer. Spring bursts forth in great beauty, and vegetation is rapid. In winter the cold is generally steady; and the atmosphere is clear and bracing, which renders the sleighing-season very agreeable.

13. **The Chief Products** include various kinds of grain, timber, furs, minerals, &c. The iron and copper mines are highly productive. In 1859 the value of the fish taken in the Gulf and River St. Lawrence was \$1,000,000.

14. **The Inhabitants.**—The first settlers in Lower Canada were chiefly from the central parts of France; but in the Eastern Townships, the inhabitants are chiefly of British origin, including descendants of U. E. Loyalists & Amer. settlers.

15. **Education** is liberally supported by the Legislature. There are three universities; viz., McGill, Laval, and Lennoxville. Besides the common schools, the classical and commercial colleges, academies, and private schools are numerous, and of a superior class.

16. **Cities and Towns.**—There are four cities in Lower Canada: viz., QUEBEC, MONTREAL, THREE RIVERS, and ST. HYACINTHE. The chief towns are given on the map.

17. **Counties and Judicial Districts.**—Lower Canada is divided into 60 counties (see map), and these again into 20 judicial districts.

18. **The Legislative Council Electoral Divisions** are twenty-four.

19. **The District Divisions**, for criminal justice, are Quebec, Montreal, Three Rivers, St. Francis, Kam-oo-shu-ka, Ottawa, and Gaspé.

20. **The City of Quebec** is the oldest city in Canada. It was founded in 1608, by Champlain, near the site of the Indian village of Stad-a-co-na. In 1629, it was taken by Sir David Kirk, but restored in 1632. In 1690, it was unsuccessfully besieged by Sir William Phips. It was finally captured by Wolfe, in 1760, after an heroic defence by Montcalm. The Americans attacked it in 1776; but they were repulsed, and their general, Montgomery slain. The citadel and fortifications are, next to Gibraltar, the most famous in the world. They cover an area of 40 acres, and crown the summit of Cape Diamond, which is 350 feet above the river. The city is divided into Upper Town and Lower Town. Upper Town includes the citadel, and adjoins the Plains of Abraham. Lower Town is the seat of commerce. About 1,500 vessels clear annually from the port. Among the public buildings are the Markets, Laval University, Post-Office, Parliament House, Music-Hall, Marine Hospital, Customs, St. Charles and St. C. Cathedrals, 20 Churches, 2 Colleges, and a Normal School. There are, also, monuments to Wolfe and Montcalm. Population in 1861, 61,568.

21. **The Counties** adjoining Quebec are among the oldest-settled parts of Lower Canada, and are well cultivated. The scenery is highly picturesque. The Island of Orleans, near Quebec, is 20 miles long by 6 wide. It is fertile and well wooded. The ancient Huron Indian village of Lo-rett', the celebrated Falls of Montmorency, and the Beauport Lunatic Asylum, are near Quebec. The Island of Anticosti, 400 miles below Quebec, and an important fishing-station, is 135 miles long by 36 wide. It has several light-houses, and depots to aid ship-wrecked mariners.

22. **The City of Montreal** was founded in 1642, under the name of VILLE MARIE [veel-ma-ree], near the site of the Indian village of Hochelaga [hoch-e-lah-gah]. Its name was afterwards changed to MONT ROYAL, or MONTREAL, from the adjacent mountain. From this mountain the prospect is very beautiful. Montreal is at the head of ship navigation, and is 180 miles from Quebec. It stands on the island of the same name, at the confluence of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers. It is the chief commercial city in Canada, and is connected by the Grand Trunk Railway with Upper Canada, Quebec, and Portland (in the State of Maine). Its manufactures are extensive. There are 34 Churches, 3 Synagogues, a University, 2 Colleges, and 2 Normal Schools. The chief public buildings are the Church of Notre Dame, Christ-Church Cathedral, St. Andrew's Church, St. Patrick's Church, University of McGill College, B. C. Theological College, St. Mary's College, R. C. Female Academy, Cabinet de Lecture, Mechanics' Institute, Post-Office, Seminaire de St. Sulpice, Montreal General-Hospital; Hôtel-Dieu Nunnery, Hospital, and Orphanage; the Custom-House, Court-House, Bon-secours' Market, Exhibition Building of the Lower-Canada Board of Arts and Manufactures, the Exchange, the Banks, &c. Pop. (with extension



CITY OF QUEBEC, FROM POINT LEVI, SHOWING THE CITADEL, AND UPPER AND LOWER TOWN.



THE VICTORIA TUBULAR RAILWAY BRIDGE, FROM ST. LAMBERT.

QUESTIONS.—What is the size, and 1. for what is Lower Canada noted? 2. Point out its boundaries on the map. 3. What is said of its physical features? 4. Point out on the map its principal lakes, and 5. rivers. 6. Describe the St. Lawrence; 7. Saguenay; 8. St. Maurice; and 9. Richelieu Rivers. 10. Point out on the map the principal bays, and 11. islands. 12. What is said of the climate? 13. chief products? 14. inhabitants? 15. education? 16. cities and towns? 17. counties, &c. ? 18. electoral divisions? 19. district divisions? 20. City of Quebec? 21. adjoining counties? 22. City of Montreal?

principal lakes and railways connect?



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the chief countries which are shown on this map. Point out and name the principal lakes, and trace the rivers. What peninsulas are shown? Trace the lines of railways. What river divides the Canadas? Point out the boundary-line between Canada and the United States.

over lines
The Via
Bridge ov
rence is n
length, an
marable
kind in th
gust, 1960
ted by the

23. The
Rivers i
three-fold
er St. Ma
midway
and Mont
for its iron
lation 6,00

24. Th
Country
and the
rivers is
White-pir
iron-ore an
facilitating
have been

25. Th
26. Th
and is an
land (202
the Cath
House, th



27. Dis
St. Franci
power for
Sherbrook
and Fort
this distri

28. Hi
fors of S
[nwal']
Col'le, in
diens") an
29. Ka
this distri
below Qu
adjoining

30. Ga
to the hea
line is 400
180 miles
memorabl
whon he
having be

Upper Can
from 200

1. No
its rich a

2. Bo
of a trian
the Hud
and the
ta-ri-o ar

QUEST
to? 28. K
lakes,—th

over lines) in 1861, 101,002. The Victoria Railway Bridge over the St. Lawrence is nearly two miles in length, and is the most remarkable structure of the kind in the world. In August, 1860, it was inaugurated by the Prince of Wales.

23. The City of Three Rivers is situated at the three-fold mouth of the river St. Maurice. It is about midway between Quebec and Montreal, and is noted for its iron-works. Population 6,000.

24. The St. Maurice Country is well watered, and the land along the rivers is rich and fertile. White-pine timber and iron-ore are abundant. For facilitating trade, roads have been opened, and timber slides and booms constructed on the river.

25. The Ottawa District borders on the River Ottawa. The City of St. Hyacinthe is situated on the Yamaska River; and is connected with Montreal (90 miles distant), Quebec (137), and Portland (263), by the Grand Trunk Railway. The Roman-Catholic College, the Cathedral, the Bishop's Palace, the Convents, as well as the Seigniorial House, the City Hall, &c., are handsome buildings.



THE CITY OF MONTREAL, FROM THE RESERVOIR, ABOVE MCGILL COLLEGE.

Laurentian Hills run westward from the Thousand Islands (near Kingston), and extend north of Lake Simcoe, forming the coast of Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. The water-sheds of Upper Canada are not in general sharp ridges, but rather level, and often marshy surfaces, on which the streams interlock. A main water-shed separates the waters of the Ottawa from those of the St. Lawrence and its lakes; a minor one divides the streams flowing into Lake Simcoe, Georgian Bay, and Lake Huron, from those flowing into Lake Ontario and Lake Erie.

4. The Principal Lakes.—The magnificent lakes which form the southern and western boundaries of Upper Canada, contain nearly half the fresh water on the globe. Their total length is 1,085 miles, and, exclusive of Lake Michigan, they cover an area of 80,000 square miles.

Lake	Length in Miles.	Great-est Width in Miles.	Area in Sq. Miles.	Height in Feet above Sea.	Mean Depth in Feet.
Superior.....	355	160	38,000	601	900
Huron.....	240	120	28,000	573	600
St. Clair.....	30	50	500	571	30
Erie.....	340	200	9,500	568	100
Ontario.....	250	100	5,000	354	500

5. The Minor Lakes are Tamagaming'se, Wa-poos'e, Nip-is-ing', O-pe-on-go, Simcoe, and those in the Counties north of Lake Ontario, and in the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers.

6. The Principal Rivers in Upper Canada are the tributaries of the Ottawa, the Spanish, the French, the Magalloway, the Muskoka, and the Nottawasaga, falling into Georgian Bay; the Sau-geen and the Aux-Sables [o-sab'l], into Lake Huron; the Sydenham and the Thames [tema] into Lake St. Clair; the Grand into Lake Erie, through the County of Haldimand; the Trent and the Moira into the Bay of Quinté [kan-oh']; and the Niagara into Lake Ontario (see page 31).

7. The Boundary-Rivers between Upper Canada and the United States are the St. Clair, the Detroit, the Niagara, and the St. Lawrence; and between Upper and Lower Canada, the Ottawa.

8. The Niagara is 34 miles long, and connects Lake Erie and Ontario. The Falls, which occur 20 miles from its head and 14 from its mouth, are the most celebrated in the world (see cut on page 31). There are two suspension-bridges over the river; a passenger-bridge at Queeraton, and a railway and passenger bridge at Elgin (near the Falls).

9. The St. Lawrence, originally called the Ir-o-quois [-kwah'] or Ca-ta-ra-qui [-kwee'], issues from Lake Ontario at Kingston. It is 750 miles long,—or from its source, with the Great Lakes, 2,270 miles. The chief rapids in Upper Canada are the Ga-lops' and the Long Sault [so']; and in Lower Canada, the Co-leun [-to], the Cedars, the Cascades, and the Lachine [la-sheeh']. These are overcome by ship-canal. Near Kingston is the beautiful extended River-Lake of the "Thousand Islands." The remainder of the river belongs to Lower Canada (see section 6, page 27).

10. The Ottawa rises 100 miles above Lake Temiscamingue, and flows to the foot of the Island of Montreal, a distance of 460 miles. It drains an area of 80,000 square miles. The chief tributaries on the Upper-Canada side are the Petowahwah, the Bonnechère [bun-shahr'], the Madawaska, and the Ri-deau [-do']. On the Lower-Canada side they are the Du Moine, the Black, the Coulonge [koo-lonah'], the Cat-i-neau [-e-no']; Du Li-ey're [le-] Du Nord, and L'A-somp-tion. The lake-expansions of the river are Coulonge, Des Châtes [dash-shah'], Chaudières, and Two Mountains. There are numerous rapids and falls in the river. The chief rapids are the Long Sault, at Temiscamingue; Du Lievre, &c.; and the Long Sault, at Grenville. The falls are the Allouez's, Des Châtes, and Chaudière. The scenery on the river is striking and beautiful. The Ottawa falls into the St. Lawrence by a three-fold branch. The main stream, to the north, is divided by Isle Jésus; its southern branch, by Isle Perrot. Between the Lake Perrot and Montreal occur the Rapids of Ste. Anne, to which Moore refers in his "Canadian Boat-Song."



SHERBROOKE, THE CHIEF TOWN IN THE EASTERN TOWNSHIPS.

27. District of St. Francis.—SHERBROOKE is situated on the River St. Francis and the small River Ma-gog. There is abundance of water-power for manufacturing purposes, and its mills and factories are extensive. Sherbrooke is connected with Montreal (95 miles distant), Quebec (121), and Portland (196), by the Grand Trunk Railway. LENOXVILLE, in this district, is the seat of a Church of England University.

28. Historically, this part of the country is interesting, especially the forts of SOREL, CHAMBLEY [sham-blee'], ST. JOHNS, and ISLE-AUX-NOIX [nwah']. At the battle-fields of CHATEAUGUAY [shâ-to-yay'] and LA-COLLE, in 1813, Col. De Salaberry (commander of the "Vallageurs Canadiens") and his battalion greatly distinguished themselves.

29. Kamouraska District.—KAMORASKA is the chief place in this district. It is situated, on the south side of the St. Lawrence, 90 miles below Quebec,—with which the Grand Trunk Railway connects it. The adjoining counties border on New Brunswick and the State of Maine.

30. Gaspé Peninsula Proper is 175 miles in length, from Cape Gaspé to the head of Lake Ma-ta-pé-di-ao, and is about 90 miles wide. Its coastline is 400 miles. The population is about 25,000. The Magdalen Islands, 130 miles off the coast in the Gulf, are important fishing-stations. Gaspé is memorable as being the spot on which Jacques Cartier first landed, in 1535, when he planted the fleur-de-lys in the New World. The port of GASPÉ having been made a free port, merchandise entering it is exempt from duty.

UPPER CANADA.

Upper Canada is about 750 miles in length, from south-east to north-west; and from 200 to 300 miles in width. Its N.W. boundaries are, however, indefinite.

1. Noted For.—UPPER CANADA is noted for its great lakes, its rich agricultural products, its minerals, and its fertile soil.

2. Boundaries.—Upper Canada, which presents the appearance of a triangular peninsula, is bounded on the north and the east by the Hudson-Bay Territory and the River Ottawa; on the south and the south-east by Lake Superior, Georgian Bay, Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the River St. Lawrence; and on the west

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Victoria Bridge? 23. Three Rivers? 24. St. Maurice? 25. Ottawa? 26. St. Hyacinthe? 27. St. Francis District? 28. Sorel, &c.? 29. Kamouraska? 30. Gaspé? Upper Canada.—its size? 1. what noted for? 2. its boundaries? 3. Point out on the map its physical features; 4. principal lakes,—their size; 5. minor lakes; 6. rivers; 7. boundary-rivers; 8. Niagara; 9. St. Lawrence; 10. Ottawa; and their tributaries,—trace them all on the map.

the rivers. What the United States.

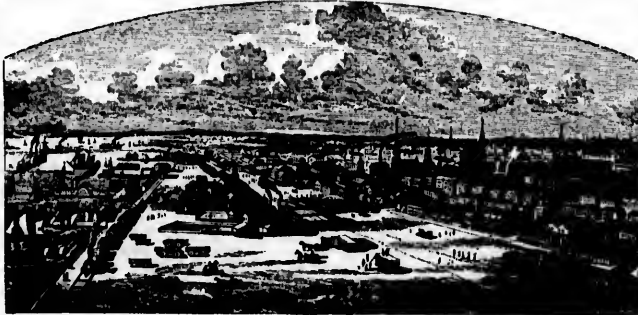
11. The Principal Bays are the Michipicoten (Lake Superior), Georgian, Nottawasaga, Burlington (at Hamilton), and Quinté (north of Fr. Ed. County). (See map.)

12. The Principal Islands in Upper Canada are Grand Calumet and Allumette, Ottawa River; Michipicoten & Caribou (two), Lake Superior; Manitoulin, Cochrane, St. Joseph, and Fitzwilliam, Lake Huron; Point Pelée, and Byerson's, Lake Erie; Navy, in the Niagara River; Amherst, Tonli, Wolfe, and Howe, at the east end of Lake Ontario; and part of the Thousand Islands, in the upper part of the River St. Lawrence.

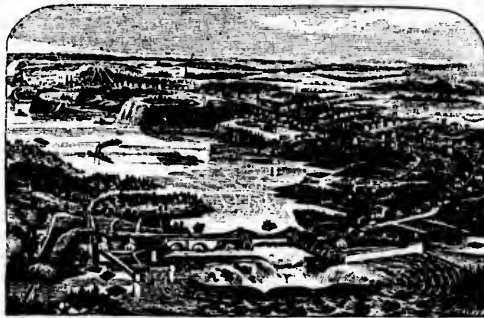
13. The Climate of Upper Canada is agreeably tempered by the proximity of the great lakes. The Indian summer, which generally occurs in October, and the sleighing-season in winter, are the pleasantest periods of the year.

14. The Chief Products include the various kinds of grain, timber, furs, minerals, &c. These form the chief articles of export.

15. Inhabitants.—Upper Canada was chiefly settled by emigrants from the British Isles, and by descendants of the United-Empire Loyalists.



CITY OF TORONTO, FROM A CLEARED SPACE OF THE ESPLANADE, NEAR THE DON RIVER.



CITY OF OTTAWA, THE CAPITAL OF CANADA, FROM THE CHAUDIÈRE FALLS.

16. Education.—Through the liberality of the Legislature, Upper Canada possesses abundant facilities for education, in the common and grammar schools, the colleges, and universities. There are also in the cities and towns many excellent private academies, seminaries, and schools.

17. Counties.—Upper Canada is divided into 42 counties, as shown on the map. The chief towns in each county are also given on the map.

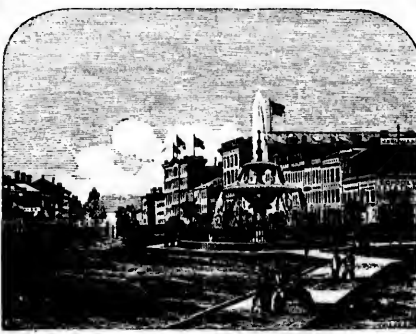


CITY OF KINGSTON, FROM THE CUPOLA OF THE CITY HALL.

18. The Legislative Council Electoral Divisions of Upper Canada are twenty-four.

19. The Cities are OTTAWA (the capital of United Canada), KINGSTON, TORONTO, HAMILTON, and LONDON.

20. The City of Ottawa is situated on the Ottawa River, in the Township of Nepean. It is connected by railway with Prescott (63 miles distant), with Kingston by the Rideau Canal (126 miles in length), and with Montreal (100 miles distant) by the Ottawa River. It is thus connected with the Grand Trunk Railway at three points, with the River St. Lawrence at two points, and with Lake Ontario at Kingston. The



CITY OF HAMILTON, SHOWING THE QUEEN ON KING STREET.

chief trade of Ottawa is derived from the transport of lumber to the Quebec and English markets. HULL (in Lower Canada), opposite Ottawa, and connected with it by a handsome suspension bridge, was first settled in 1800. Ottawa was called BYTOWN until 1865, when its name was changed to the present one.

In 1867 it was selected by the Queen as the seat of government; and in September 1860 the Prince of Wales laid the corner-stones of the Parliament buildings. The Chaudière and Rideau Falls, in the neighbourhood, are very picturesque. Pop. 14,754.

21. The City of Kingston (formerly called CATAWAQUI and FRONTENAC) is at the north-eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, on Cataract Bay, with the Rideau Canal to the east and the beautiful Bay of Quinté to the west. A fort was built here by Count de Frontenac, a French Governor, in 1673, but the actual settlement of the place dates from 1783. Kingston possesses a safe harbour; the entrance to which is guarded by two martello towers. Fort William-Henry is on Point Henry, opposite to the city. In 1811, Lord Sydenham, then Governor-General, (who is buried here,) made Kingston the first capital of United Canada. The Town-Hall (which includes the market-house) is a handsome stone structure. There are two colleges, viz., Queen's (with University powers), and Regi-op-olis. The Provincial Penitentiary is situated near the city. Population 23,884.

22. The City of Toronto (formerly called YORK) is situated on a circular bay of the same name, and was founded by Governor Simcoe in 1794. It is 166 miles from Kingston, and 50 from the Falls of Niagara. Its chief public buildings are the two Cathedrals, the Churches, the Universities of Toronto (including University College), and Trinity College; the Normal School, St. Michael's College, Good's Hall, the St. Lawrence Hall, the Mechanics' Institute, the Lunatic Asylum, the Post-Office, the Exchange, the Banks, the Insurance Offices, and the City Grammar and Common Schools. It is the permanent seat of the Superior Law Courts, and of the Department of Public Instruction, for Upper Canada. It is an important station on the Grand Trunk Railway; which connects Detroit in Michigan with Portland in Maine, and Sarnia with Rivière du Loup (167 miles below Quebec). King and Yonge (young) Streets are the principal thoroughfares. It is the capital of Upper Canada, and, from 1840 to 1850, was, with Quebec, the alternate seat of government of Canada. Pop. 44,425.

23. The City of Hamilton is situated on Burlington Bay, at the western extremity of Lake Ontario. It was settled in 1813, and is an important commercial city. The principal public buildings are the Churches, the Court-House, the Post-Office, the Banks, and the Public Schools. The "Gore," with its fountains, is a handsome square. The Water-Works are extensive. The numerous villa-residences near the city evince much social wealth and prosperity. Hamilton is the chief station of the Great Western Railway, which extends from the Niagara Suspension-Bridge to Windsor, opposite Detroit, and to Sarnia, opposite Port Huron. Population 19,200.

24. The Frontier Counties are noted for their historical interest: they contain many of the battle-fields of the war of 1812, including Queenston Heights and Lundy's Lane. The Welland Canal crosses the counties

QUESTIONS.—11. Point out on the map the principal bays; and 12. islands, of Upper Canada. 13. What is said of the climate? 14. of the chief products? 15. inhabitants? 16. education? 17. Give the number, and point out the counties and their chief towns on the map. 18. What is said of the electoral divisions? 19. Name the cities. 20. Describe the City of Ottawa; 21. Kingston; 22. Toronto; 23. Hamilton, and point out their respective positions on the map. 24. What are the frontier counties noted for? Trace on the map the boundary-line and the boundary-rivers of Upper Canada.

of Lincoln and Ontario, and connecting the navigation of the celebrated Niagara.

25. The Niagara is a great natural wonder of the world. Its feet in height divided by 1000 into the American feet wide, and the British feet wide, or from Horse-aloe feet wide.)

26. The London is the River Thames, 80 miles west of London, and from Detroit, which it is a railway. It the chief connecting the Canada Banks, the Detroit, and from the north



CITY OF LONDON, SHOWING THE STE. MARIE (OR LA RONCE) ON CHIPPEWAGON (OR CHIPPEWAGON) HILL.

GOVERNMENT

1. United Kingdom.—The Lower Canada her people, large, obnoxious, reverend things are joined by the title to "Honourable" the Honours of the Crown. 2. Executive.—The system of a Governor, representing the Queen, and the Council, composed of departments, by the Government usage, Council must be in the form of a Governor and a Council.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of the chief products? 2. inhabitants? 3. education? 4. of the electoral divisions? 5. Name the cities. 6. Describe the City of Ottawa; 7. Kingston; 8. Toronto; 9. Hamilton, and point out their respective positions on the map. 10. What are the frontier counties noted for? Trace on the map the boundary-line and the boundary-rivers of Upper Canada.

rade of Ottawa is from the trans-lumber to the Que-English markets. (In Lower Canada), the Ottawa, and con- with it by a hand-suspension bridge, was dled in 1860. Ottawa led Brown until when its name was d to the present one. It was selected by teen as the seat of ment; and in Sep- 1800 the Prince of aid the corner- of the Parliament g. The Chaudière idou Falls, in the ourhood, are very equo. Pop. 14,754.

The City of Kings- formerly called Ca- ur and FROM-TEN- on a Chaudière (tiff) Bay of Quinté frontena, a French on dates from 1783. h is guarded by two rry, opposite to the ral, (who is buried n. The Town-Hall a structure. There and Re-gi-op-o-lia. Population 23,884. is situated on a cir- r Simcoe in 1794. Niagara. Its chief es, the Universities, ollege, on Ontario Lawrence Hall, the fice, the Exchange, amar and Common Law Courts, and of ia. It is an impor- onnects Detroit in ière du Loup (loo) ets are the principal from 1849 to 1869. anada. Pop. 44,425. ington Bay, at the in 1813, and is an es are the Churches, ublic Schools. The Water-Works are evince much social the Great Western lridge to Windsor, Population 19,300. historical interest: 2, including Queer-rosses it; counties

of Lincoln and Welland, and connects Lakes Erie and Ontario, surmounting the difficulties of navigation caused by the celebrated Falls of Niagara.

25. The Falls of Niagara are one of the great natural wonders of the world. They are 165 feet in height, and are divided by Goat Island into the American (920 feet wide), and the Canadian, or from its shape, Horse-shoe Fall (1,500 feet wide). (See page 20.)

26. The City of London stands upon the River Thames, and is 30 miles west of Ham- ilton, and 120 east of Detroit; with both of which it is connected by railway. It is surrounded on all sides by a rich agricultural country. It is the chief commercial depot of the west of U. C. The public buildings, including the Cathedral, the Churches, the Court-House, the Post-Office, the Banks, the Public Schools, &c., are handsome structures. Population 11,681.

27. The Lake-Superior or Mining Section of the Province extends from the mouth of the French River, westward to the source of the Pigeon River. Its length is 410 miles, breadth 160; area 48,000 sq. miles; coast-line 600 m. (180 on Lake Huron and the River St. Mary, and 420 on Lake Superior). The coast is bold and rocky, but the harbours are numerous and safe. Copper-ore and white-fish are the great commercial-staples. SAULT



CITY OF LONDON, FROM THE TOWER OF ENGLISH CATHEDRAL.

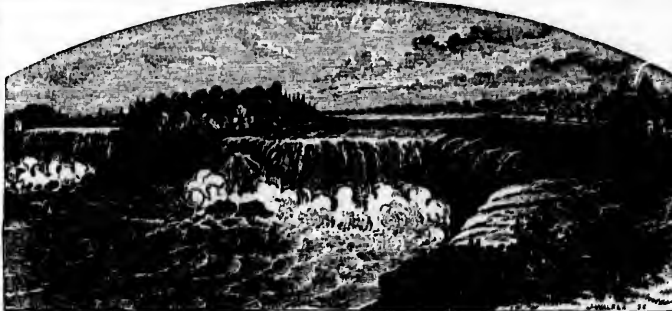
STE. MARIE is, like Gaspé (page 29, section 30), a free port. CHÉ-ROU-REGON (or LA POINTE), in this region, was the ancient capital of the Ojib-way (or Chip-pe-wa) Indians.

GOVERNMENT AND RESOURCES OF CANADA.

1. United Canada.—Since 1840, the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada have been politically and commercially united. With her people, loyalty to the Sovereign, obedience to the laws, and reverence for sacred things, are felt to be duties enjoined by the scriptural injunction to "HONOUR ALL MEN, LOVE THE BROTHERHOOD, FEAR GOD, HONOUR THE KING."

2. Executive Government.

—The system of government is monarchical, in its most popular form. The Executive consists of a Governor-General (who represents the Queen), and a Cabinet Council comprising the heads of departments, who are appointed by the Governor. By constitutional usage, the members of this Council must have seats in Parliament. In the U. S. such councillors are excluded from Congress.



FALLS OF NIAGARA, FROM THE CANADA SIDE, (SHOWING THE AMERICAN AND HORSE-SHOE FALLS).

land, or to the Senate of Congress in the U. S. It may originate any bill not relating to the revenue, and may reject any bill passed by the Assembly.

6. The Legislative Assembly corresponds to the House of Commons in England, and to the Congress House of Representatives in the United States. It consists of 130 members (65 from Lower Canada and 65 from Upper Canada), elected by freeholders and householders in counties, cities, and towns. The Legislative Assembly can originate any bill. It controls the revenue and the expenditure of the Province.

7. Commercial Facilities.—In addition to the lakes and rivers of the Province, there are numerous canals, railways, and telegraph-lines. The postal-system is also efficient. Canada has reciprocity arrangements for the free exchange of natural products, with Great Britain, the British N. A. Colonies, and the U. States; and has also a decimal currency, and silver coinage.

8. The Chief Imports are woollens, cottons, silks, iron, tobacco, tea, and sugar. Their annual value is about \$40,000,000.

9. The Chief Exports include the products of the mine, the sea, and the forest; animals and their produce, agricultural products, manufactures, and ships. Their annual value is about \$35,000,000.

10. The Manufactures are principally woollen, iron, glass, India-rubber, cabinet-ware, soap, &c., with ship-building and lumber-making.

11. Yearly Revenue, about \$10,000,000; direct & ind. debt, \$65,000,000.

12. The Canals are extensive and important, and have been constructed at a cost of about \$16,000,000. Their total length is 216 miles.

13. Railways.—In 1850 there were only two short railways in Canada. They are now numerous, and have an aggregate length of about 1,800 miles. The two principal railways in the Province are the Grand Trunk and the Great Western. The Grand Trunk line extends to 1,026 miles, and includes the Victoria Tubular Bridge (see illustration on page 27). The Suspension-Bridge on the Great Western Railway is also a wonderful structure.

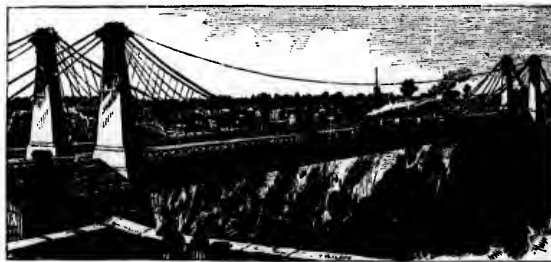
14. Ocean Steamers.—A Canadian line of ocean-steamships, running to Ireland and England, from Montreal and Quebec in summer, and Portland in winter, has been established, in connection with the G. T. Railway.

15. The Telegraph extends to all the principal cities and towns in Canada, the Eastern Provinces, and the United States.

16. Post-Offices are established in about 1,700 places in Canada. The post-routes extend to an aggregate of 14,000 miles.

THE INDIANS OF BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

17. Although the Indian tribes which were scattered over the entire continent were very numerous, they have all been found to belong to eight or ten distinct groups or families. Four of these occupy the area of British North America, viz.:—I. The Esquimaux, who, in their appearance, but still more in their manners, belief, and superstitious customs, resemble the natives of Lapland and Greenland. II. The Chip-e-way-ans (not the Chipewas or Ojibways, who are Algonquians). III. The Algonquians. And IV. The Huron-Iroquois. Each of these four groups speak a distinct language. The four groups are subdivided into various tribes, each speaking a dialect of their original tongue; yet among all the tribes a remarkable similarity in customs and institutions prevails. In colour, form, temperament, religious belief, and pursuits, all are alike. The men engage in war, hunting, and fishing; while the women perform other kinds of labour. These tribes number from 125,000 to 150,000.

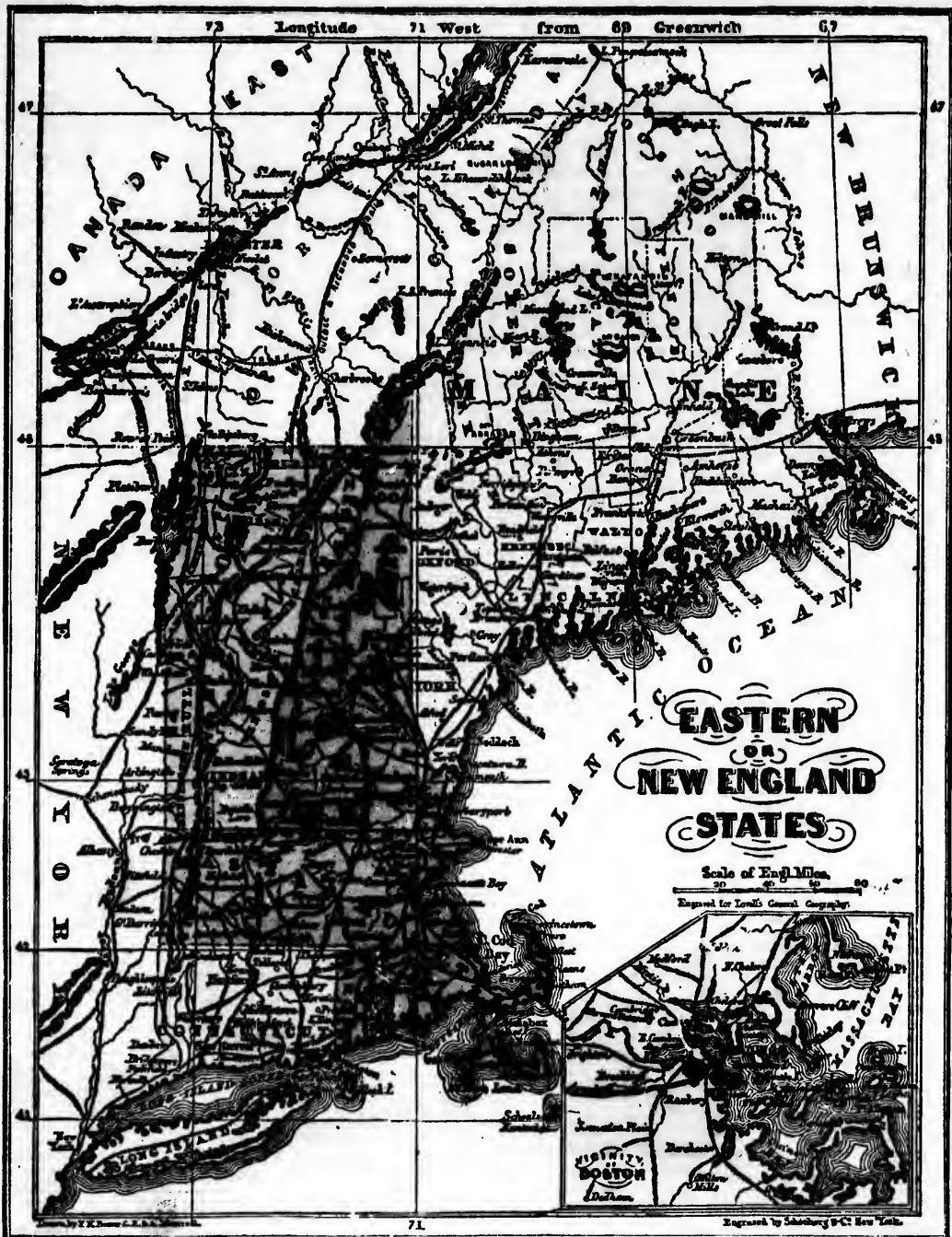


RAILWAY AND PASSENGER SUSPENSION-BRIDGE OVER THE NIAGARA RIVER.

QUESTIONS.—25. What is said of the Falls of Niagara? 26. City of London? 27. Lake-Superior or Mining Section? 28. ancient Indian capital? 1. What is said of United Canada? 2. of the Executive Government? 3. Legislature? 4. Governor-General? 5. Legislative Council? 6. Legislative Assembly? 7. commercial facilities? 8. chief imports? 9. chief exports? 10. manufactures? 11. yearly revenue, and debt? 12. canals? 13. railways, and the Victoria and Suspension Bridges? 14. Canadian ocean-steamers? 15. telegraph? 16. post-offices? 17. Indian tribes of British North America?

N KING STREET.

? 14. of the chief 18. What is said of ut their respective Upper Canada.



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the States and countries which are shown on this map. Name the great river at the north, and the ranges of mountains parallel to it. Point out and name the principal lakes. Name and trace the rivers. What chief places do the railways connect? Name the capes, islands, &c.

See, also
I. N. areas of
 lantic to
 of the M
 and the
II. B.
 by Briti
 the south
 on the w
III. P.
 vided into
 slope; 2
 taic slope
 plain, tra
 Appalac
 alpi River
IV. Th
 In the sam
 Rod River
 its source,
 which tak
 miles, uni
 from the C
 which tak
 flowing 1,
 and 1-saw
 2,000 mile
V. The
 for gold, 1

NAME A
 CH

MAINE...
 [maine...]
 NEW HAMPSHIRE...
 [nu-ham...]
 VERMONT...
 [ver-mon...]
 MASSACHUSETTS...
 [mas-sa-c...]
 RHODE ISLAND...
 [rods-i-la...]
 CONNECTICUT...
 [kon-nect...]

2. Not
 the stirri
 tional pre

3. Fos
 and, east
 the Atlan

4. Phys
 of the Ne
 and are
 beautiful
 bours. T
 Mountains
 names, run
 and South
 giving a S
 slope to t
 Vermont a
 the Green
 Hampshire
 Mountains
 pai rivers
 scot and
 in Maine;
 in New H
 the Conne
 ing New H
 Vermont,
 through
 and Conne
 5. Clim
 ucts.—Boi

QUEST
 V. the Min
 of each Sta

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Size, about the same as British North America, or equal to a square of 1,905 miles.

I. Noted For.—The UNITED STATES are noted for their great areas of habitable territory, stretching from the Northern Atlantic to the Pacific, and including the great central river-basin of the Mississippi; for the cotton, rice, and tobacco of the South, and the railways, commerce, and manufactures of the North.

II. Boundaries.—The United States are bounded on the north by British North America, on the east by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico and the Republic of Mexico, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

III. Physical Features.—The territory of the United States is divided into three great natural regions: 1. The Atlantic or Alleghany slope; 2. The Mississippi Valley; and 3. The Pacific or Rocky-Mountain slope. The general character of the country is that of an immense plain, traversed by two chains of mountains, viz. the Alleghany (or Appalachian) and Rocky Mountains, and drained by the great Mississippi River and its tributaries. (For Rocky Mountains, see sec. 10, p. 14.)

IV. The Mississippi River takes its rise (at the outlet of Lake Itasca) in the same great water-shed as, and near the head of, Lake Superior and the Red River of the North, and falls into the Gulf of Mexico 2,600 miles from its source. The principal tributary is (1) the Missouri (or "Mud River"), which takes its rise in the Rocky Mountains, and, after a course of 3,100 miles, unites with the Mississippi opposite Alton, near St. Louis, 1,350 miles from the Gulf. Its other tributaries are (2) the Ohio (or "Beautiful River"), which takes its rise in the Alleghany Mountains south of Lake Erie, and, flowing 1,800 miles, joins the Mississippi at Cairo (key-roy); (3) the Arkansas (new), which takes its rise in the Rocky Mountains, and, flowing 2,000 miles, joins the Mississippi at Napoleon. Area drained, 1,230,000 sq. m.

V. The Chief Mineral Centres of the United States are: California for gold, Pennsylvania for coal, and the Western States for copper, lead, iron.

VI. The Old Colonies.—Thirteen of these States were originally British Colonies. They declared their independence in 1776; and, after a severe contest, it was acknowledged by Great Britain in 1783.

VII. Inhabitants.—The United States were at first settled by emigrants from Great Britain and Holland. The population now consists of descendants of people from every country. Europe, besides Negroes and Indians. The population, by the eighth decennial census of 1850, was 27,678,320 free, and 4,063,000 slave; total 31,677,320.

VIII. Government.—The several States are united under one general government, called a Federal Republic. Each State has a government of its own; but the general concerns of the nation are entrusted to the central government. This government consists of three branches: viz. the Legislative, the Executive, and the Judicial power. The Legislative power is vested in a Congress, which consists of two branches: viz. the Senate and the House of Representatives. The Executive power is vested in a President and a Vice-President, assisted by five Secretaries. The Federal Judicial power is vested in one Supreme Court, and nearly fifty District and Circuit Courts; in addition to the State Supreme and other Courts.

IX. Statistics.—Yearly exports of the United States \$367,500,000; revenue of the Federal Government \$30,000,000; of the several States \$40,000,000; total revenue \$14,000,000; debt of the Federal Government \$11,500,000, of the several States \$205,000,000; total debt \$326,500,000; miles of railway 31,000, total cost \$1,200,000,000; miles of telegraph 35,000, total cost \$4,000,000; post-offices 30,000, and yearly cost of mail-service \$15,000,000.

X. Extent.—To the 13 original States, 31 new ones have, since 1776, been added, making a total of 44 States. Besides these, there are ten Territories, and one District, viz. Columbia, which contains Washington, the capital of the Republic. (See the various maps.)

XI. State Divisions.—Each State has its own independent legislature, judiciary, and executive government, consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives, a Governor, Judges, &c.; who have the power to make, judge of, and execute all laws pertaining to the State, except such as belong to the General Government. The chief officer of a State is styled Governor. Each State is for the most part divided into counties or townships, as in Canada. In population and wealth New York and Pennsylvania rank first. Massachusetts, Virginia, and Ohio rank next in order. In many of the States there is a fund for the support of schools; and education is widely diffused, especially in the Eastern and Northern States.

I. THE NEW-ENGLAND OR EASTERN STATES, WITH THEIR CAPITALS, ARE AS FOLLOWS:

NAME AND PROMINENT CHARACTER.	Derivation or Signification.	Date of Settlement.	By whom Settled.	Admitted into the Union.	Area in Square Miles.	Free Population 1850.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Mail Distance from Washington.	Population.
MAINE.....	From Queen Henrietta's (France).	1630	The English.....	1820	31,770	620,000	Augusta.....	Kennebec River.....	596 Miles.	15,000
NEW HAMPSHIRE.....	From Gov. Masson's birth-place in England.	1633	The English.....	1776	9,380	326,075	Concord.....	Merrimac River.....	474 "	9,800
VERMONT.....	From its Green Mountains.	1726	From Massachusetts.	1791	10,212	316,000	Montpelier.....	Winocheet River.....	524 "	2,400
MASSACHUSETTS.....	Indian for "Blue Mountains."	1630	The Puritans..... (Under Sir H. Rowley).	1776	7,800	1,231,500	Boston.....	Massachusetts Bay.....	433 "	178,000
RHODE ISLAND.....	The island being like the Ido of Rhodes.	1636	Roger Williams, from Mass.	1776	1,306	174,000	{ Providence..... { Newport..... { Hartford..... { New Haven.....	{ Narraganset Bay..... { Rhode Isl., in Bay..... { Connecticut River..... { Near Long Isl. Sound.....	{ 394 " { 408 " { 335 " { 510 "	{ 50,700 { 10,000 { 17,000 { 46,000
CONNECTICUT.....	Indian Quoniacut, or "Long River."	1636	The English, (see note to Rhode Island, 1636.)	1776	4,750	466,870				

2. Noted For.—The NEW-ENGLAND STATES are noted for the stirring incidents in their early colonial history, their educational pre-eminence, and their extensive manufactures.

3. Position.—These States are bounded on the north by Canada, east by New Brunswick and the Atlantic Ocean, south by the Atlantic Ocean, and west by the State of New York.

4. Physical Features.—With the exception of Vermont, the whole of the New-England or Eastern States lie on the Atlantic sea-board, and are indented with beautiful bays and harbours. The Appalachian Mountains, under various names, run in a S. Western and Southern direction, giving a S. and S. Eastern slope to the rivers. In Vermont they are called the Green, and in New Hampshire the White, Mountains. The principal rivers are the Penobscot and the Kennebec, in Maine; the Merrimac, in New Hampshire; and the Connecticut, separating New Hampshire from Vermont, and running through Massachusetts and Connecticut.

5. Climate and Products.—Being the most

northerly of the United States, the climate in the New-England is generally colder (especially in Maine) than in the other States; but it is less so in Massachusetts and Connecticut. Agriculture is the chief pursuit in the New-England States; but, owing to their maritime position, early settlement, and abundance of water-power from the numerous rivers, commerce, fisheries and manufactures have acquired great importance.

6. Travelling Facilities.—In no part of the United States are these facilities developed to a higher degree than in New England. Radiating from Boston (the commercial capital), railroads diverge in every direction. Portland, in Maine, forms the eastern terminus of the Grand Trunk Railway of Canada, and a winter-outlet to the ocean for Canadian products.

7. Inhabitants.—The original settlers were chiefly British colonists, who named their new home "New England." The principles of civil and religious liberty which they brought with them from England, took deep root in the new soil, and have been developed in their political institutions.

8. Maine lies west of New Brunswick, and south-east of Lower Canada. It is well watered with numerous lakes and rivers. The valleys of the St. John, Penobscot, and Kennebec are fertile and productive. Lumber and ships are the chief articles of commerce.



CITY OF PORTLAND, THE CHIEF SEAPORT OF THE STATE OF MAINE, ON CASCO BAY.

QUESTIONS.—Give the size of the United States. I. For what noted? II. Describe their boundaries; III. physical features; IV. the Mississippi; V. the Mineral Centres; VI. the Old Colonies; VII. inhabitants; VIII. government; IX. statistics; X. extent; XI. divisions. 1. Give the particulars of each State in the table. 2. For what are they noted? 3. Point out their position. 4. Describe their physical features; 5-7. climate, &c.; 8. Maine, &c.



QUESTIONS.—Name and trace the boundaries of the States which are shown on this map. Point out and name the principal lakes and bays. Name and trace the principal mountain-ranges and rivers. What chief places do the lines of railway connect? Name the principal places in the vicinity of New-York city.

9. the en
nebo
the S
with
Scotl
on Ca
port,
Canada
the P.
 10. Mal
at the
espec
tains,
pictur
It has
18 mil
dant,
The pr
caused
called
 11. of
the M
sive m
HANOV
 12. cele
formin
The be
this St
 13. C
has, fr
BOGO a
The tw
plain, is
 14. I
was fir
bounda
rather
power,
though
and gen
its pro-
- NAME
- New Yo
[nu-yo
PENN
[pen-s
New Jer
[nu-je
DELAWA
[del-a-
2. No
cial pro
RIA, for
WARE, 1
 3. Po
Western
the Sou
 4. Phy
York, th
Appalach
direction
ranges;
the Tusc
son, the
hols, an
tains. T
 5. Clir
latitudo
mate of t
The prod
cultural;
- QUEST
Now Ham
1. Give the
5. climated

9. Chief Cities.—**AUGUSTA**, the capital, is situated on the Kennebec; **EASTPORT**, at the east of the State, has extensive commerce with New Brunswick and Nova Scotia; **PORTLAND** (pop. 26,350), on Casco Bay, an important seaport, is connected by railway with Canada; **BANGOR** (pop. 16,500), on the Penobscot, is a lumber-depot.

10. **New Hampshire** lies W. of Maine. It is mountainous, except at the south-east; and its scenery, especially in the White Mountains, is considered to be the most picturesque in the United States. It has but one harbour, and only 18 miles of sea-coast. Iron is abundant, and tin has been discovered. The preponderance of granite has caused New Hampshire to be called the "Granite State."

11. Chief Cities.—**CONCORD**, the capital, and **MANCHESTER**, are on the Merrimac. The latter, as well as **DOVER** and **NASHUA**, have extensive manufactures. **PORTSMOUTH**, the only seaport, has a fine harbour. **HANOVER** is the seat of Dartmouth College.

12. **Vermont** lies west of New Hampshire. It is traversed by the celebrated Green Mountains (whence it derives its French name), forming a water-shed for the numerous rivers flowing east and west. The beautiful Lake Champlain extends from Canada up two thirds of this State, and separates it from the State of New York.

13. Chief Towns.—**MONTPELIER**, the capital, on the Win-oo-ki, has, from its central position, an extensive trade. **WINDSOR** and **BRATTLEBORO** are on the Connecticut, and **MIDDLEBURY** (Ber.) on Otter Creek. The two latter are manufacturing towns. **BURLINGTON**, on Lake Champlain, is beautifully situated, and, like Middlebury, is the seat of a university.

14. **Massachusetts**, the most important of the New-England States, was first settled by English Puritans (a strict religious party). Its boundaries touch upon all the Eastern States except Maine. It is hilly rather than mountainous; and, owing to the abundance of its water-power, it is more noted for its manufactures than its agriculture, though it excels in both. The foundation of its commercial prosperity and general intelligence was laid while it was a British colony, and its pre-eminence in these respects has since been maintained.



THE CITY OF BOSTON, CAPITAL OF MASSACHUSETTS, FROM THE HARBOR.

15. Chief Cities.—**BOSTON**, the commercial and literary capital of New England, is situated on Massachusetts Bay. It has a fine harbour, and an extensive commerce. The Old State-House and Faneuil Hall are noted in its political history. Pop. 178,000. **CAMBRIDGE** (Name.), near Boston, is the seat of a university founded by the Rev. John Harvard, an Englishman, and fostered by the Legislature of the Colony. **SPRINGFIELD**, on the Connecticut, contains a U.S. arsenal; and **CHARLESTOWN**, opposite Boston, a U.S. navy-yard. **LOWELL** (pop. 27,100) and **LAWRENCE**, on the Merrimac, are celebrated for cotton and other manufactures. **LYNN**, **SALEM**, **NEW BEDFORD**, and **WORCESTER** (wool-ter) are also important towns.

16. **Rhode Island**, the smallest State of the Union, lies between Connecticut and the south-eastern part of Massachusetts. The State takes its name from a small island (shaped like the Isle of Rhodes, in the Mediterranean) in Narraganset Bay. Its rivers and mountains are inconsiderable, but its numerous streams furnish water-power for manufacturing purposes.

17. Chief Cities.—Though scarcely forty miles square, this little State has two capitals; viz., **PROVIDENCE**, at the head of Narraganset Bay, and **NEWPORT**, on Rhode Island, in the bay. Providence (so named by Roger Williams), is the seat of Brown University, and is noted for its manufactures, as a Newport for its fine harbour and as a watering-place. At **PAWTUCKET** the first cotton-mill in America was erected.

18. **Connecticut** lies between Rhode Island and New York. Long-Island Sound is its southern boundary. Its bays and rivers are numerous, and its general scenery picturesque. Its minerals are valuable; and its manufactures extensive, particularly in hardware and clocks.

19. Chief Cities.—Like Rhode Island, this State has two capitals; viz., **HARTFORD** and **NEW HAVEN**. Hartford, a manufacturing town, is finely situated on the Connecticut River, fifty miles from Long-Island Sound. Near Hartford there was an oak (blown down in 1850), called the "Charter Oak," in which the original charter of King Charles II. was hidden, when the Governor sent out by James II. sought to obtain it. New Haven, four miles from the Sound, is a beautiful city and the seat of Yale College. **MIDDLETOWN**, which is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut, is, like Hartford, the seat of a university.

1. THE NORTHERN OR MIDDLE STATES, WITH THEIR CAPITALS, ARE AS FOLLOWS:

NAME AND PRO- NUNCIATION.	Derivation or Signification.	Date of Settle- ment.	By whom settled.	Admit- ted to the Union.	Area in Square Miles.	Free & Sl. Popula- tion 1880.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Mail Dis- tance from Washington.	Popula- tion.
NEW YORK.....	After the Duke of York (N.York.)	1614	The Dutch.....	1776	46,000	3,881,548	Albany.....	Hudson River.....	378 Miles.	58,000
PENNSYLVANIA.....	After William Penn, its founder.	1682	English.....	1776	47,000	3,924,500	Harrisburg.....	Susquehanna River.	193 "	14,000
NEW JERSEY.....	After Jersey Isle, Gov. Riv- er (Carteret's birth-place).	1624	Dutch and Swedes. (Growth of last century.)	1776	6,881	678,100	Trenton.....	Delaware River.....	176 "	16,000
DELAWARE.....	Where Lord De la War. died.	1637	Swedes and Finns..	1776	2,130	1,110,548 s. 1,808	Dover.....	Centre of State.....	161 "	4,500

2. **Noted For.**—**NEW YORK** is chiefly noted for its commercial pre-eminence, and for its railways and canals; **PENNSYLVANIA**, for its coal and iron; **NEW JERSEY**, for its fruit; and **DELAWARE**, for its fruit and grain.

3. **Position.**—The Middle States lie between the Eastern and Western States,—hence their name. Canada is at the north, and the South-Eastern States at the south.

4. **Physical Features.**—Except Pennsylvania and eastern New York, these States are rather level. Through these two States the Appalachian Mountains, under various names, run in a southern direction. In New York they are called the Moho-gan and Catskill ranges; and in Pennsylvania, the Laurel-Hill Ridge, the Allegheny, the Tuscarora, and the Blue Mountains. The chief rivers are the Hudson, the Delaware, the Susquehanna, the Allegheny, the Monongahela, and the Ohio (in part), all running in the direction of the mountains. The Niagara and St. Lawrence Rivers, with Lakes Erie and Ontario, form the northern boundary of these States.

5. **Climate and Products.**—As New York lies in nearly the same latitude as Upper Canada, its climate does not differ much from the climate of that part of Canada. In the other States, the climate is warmer. The products of New York, New Jersey, and Delaware are chiefly agricultural; in Pennsylvania they are chiefly mineral.

6. **Travelling Facilities.**—These are developed in a high degree in both New York and Pennsylvania. Two railways, and a canal to the Hudson River, connect Lakes Erie and Ontario with the cities of Albany and New York; while rivers, canals, and railways intersect Pennsylvania.

7. **Inhabitants.**—These States were first settled by the two most commercial people in Europe; viz., the English and the Dutch. The continued commercial pre-eminence of these States may be thus accounted for.

8. **New York** is a triangular State, with its longest side bordering upon Lake Ontario and the St. Lawrence. The Mohagan Mountains separate the rivers falling into Lake Ontario and the St. Lawrence from those falling into Lake Champlain and into the Hudson River. Midway in the State, these mountains, which form a curve towards the Catskill, are intersected by the Mohawk River and its fertile valley. The scenery of Lake Champlain and the Hudson is justly celebrated for its picturesque beauty. In population, wealth, and the extent of its public improvements, New York ranks first among the States.

9. Chief Cities.—**ALBANY**, the political capital, is situated on the Hudson, 150 miles above New York. Its transit trade is extensive. **NEW YORK**, the commercial capital, (population 825,000), is situated on Manhattan Island, at the mouth of the Hudson River, and is the first commercial city in the United States. It has two outlets to the ocean; viz., one by Long-Island Sound, and the other by the Narrows, at Staten Island. The city is fourteen miles long, by two wide. It is abundantly supplied with pure water, brought a distance of forty miles by means of the

QUESTIONS.—9. Point out on the map, and mention what is said of, the chief cities of Maine; 10. Boundaries, physical features, and 11. cities of New Hampshire; 12, 13. The same of Vermont; 14, 15. The same of Massachusetts; 16, 17. The same of Rhode Island; 18, 19. The same of Connecticut. 1. Give the particulars of each Northern State in the table. 2. For what are they noted? 3. Give their position. 4. What is said of their physical features? 5. climate and products? 6. travelling facilities? 7. inhabitants? 8. Point out on the map the boundaries, physical features, and 9. cities of New-York State.

and bays. Name and city of New-York city.



Questions.—Name and point out the boundaries of the States which are given on this map? Name and trace the principal mountain-ranges and rivers. What chief places do the railways connect? Name the places near New Orleans. Point out and name the various capes, sounds, and bays, the gulf and ocean.

Croton
way,
steep
ionab
Wall
custo
chang
of bu
square
in the
city, th
are o
Bacon
opposi
tains a
FALO
of Lak
forwar
era con
Roch
Osw
rio, an
on the
ishing
70 mil
is num
New Y
and Ho
of univ

10. I
Thought
and Ch
tain d
Susque
product
abunda
four, l
butter,
ticles o
State is
liam P
Quaker
honour
the Ind
of his s

11.
HARRIS
tal, is si
quellam
PHILA, 1
son, on th
second o
the U.
During
was the
ted Col
building
pecially
In the O
Declarati

NAME	C
MARYLAND	(mari-land)
VIRGINIA	(vir-ji-ni-ah)
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA	(dis-trikt of ko-lum-bee-ah)
KENTUCKY	(ken-tuck-ee)
TENNESSEE	(ten-nes-ee)
LOUISIANA	(loo-ee-zee-ah)
NORTH CAROLINA	(noth-er kar-oh-lee-nah)
SOUTH CAROLINA	(sooth-er kar-oh-lee-nah)
MISSISSIPPI	(mis-siss-ee-pee)
ALABAMA	(al-ah-bah-mah)
MISSISSIPPI	(mis-siss-ee-pee)
LOUISIANA	(loo-ee-zee-ah)
TEXAS	(tex-ah-s)
FLORIDA	(flo-ree-dah)

Formed into a Southern Confederacy in 1862.

QUESTIONS: 12, 13.

Croton Aqueduct. Broadway, with its shops and extensive hotels, is a fashionable promenade; but Wall Street, with its banks, custom-house, and exchange, is the chief centre of business. Parks and squares are numerous; and in the upper part of the city, the private residences are costly and elegant. **BROOKLYN** (pop. 273,000), opposite New York, contains a navy-yard. **HUFFALO** (81,000), at the E. end of Lake Erie, is the chief forwarding-place for Western commerce to N. York. **ROCHESTER** (43,000) and **OWEGO**, on Lake Ontario, and **TROY** (40,000), on the Hudson, are flourishing cities. **SYRACUSE**, 70 miles south of Owego, is noted for its salt-works. New York, Troy, Geneva, and Rochester are the seats of universities.



NEW-YORK, WITH EAST RIVER AND BROOKLYN TO RIGHT, AND HUDSON R. AND JERSEY CITY TO LEFT.

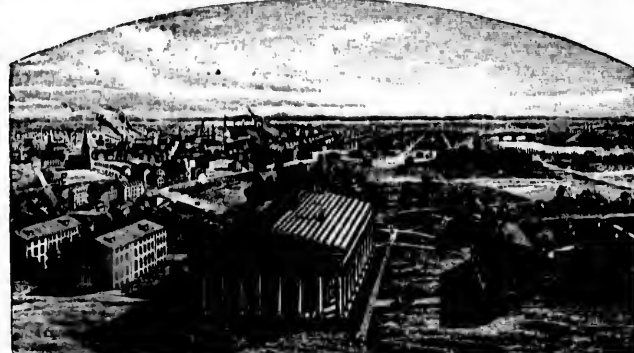
dence was adopted by the Colonial Congress. **PITTSBURGH** (40,000), at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers (which here form the Ohio River), in the centre of a coal-region, is a place of extensive iron-manufacture, and is the gate of commerce from east to west of the State. **LANCASTER** (17,000), west of Philadelphia, is a handsome town. Erie is a well-situated port on Lake Erie.

12. New Jersey is separated from Pennsylvania by the Delaware River, and lies between that State and the ocean. Its rivers are unimportant; and, except the northern Alleghany ridge (the Schooley), and the Palisades, on the Hudson, it is not mountainous. Along the Atlantic coast the soil is sandy, but near the Delaware River it is richer. The route from New York to the South is through this State.

10. Pennsylvania, a large, compact State, lies south of New York. Though inland, it has easy access to the ocean by the Delaware River and Chesapeake Bay. The principal branches of the Alleghany Mountains divide the State into three sections, watered by the Delaware, Susquehanna, and Alleghany Rivers. Coal and iron, the great staple products, are found in abundance. These, with flour, Indian corn, and butter, form the chief articles of commerce. The State is called after William Penn, an English Quaker, who made an honourable treaty with the Indians for the site of his settlement.

13. Chief Cities.—**TRENTON**, the capital, on the Delaware, above Philadelphia, is the head of inland navigation. **NEWARK** (pop. 72,000) and **PHILADELPHIA** are on the Passaic River, the latter near its Falls. **NEW BRUNSWICK** and **PRINCETON** each a college. **CAMDEN**, opposite Philadelphia, and **JERSEY CITY** (pop. 29,000), opposite New York.

11. Chief Cities.—**HARRISBURG**, the capital, is situated on the Susquehanna. **PHILADELPHIA**, 100 miles from the sea, on the Delaware, is the second commercial city in the U. S. (pop. 608,000). During the Revolution, it was the capital of the United Colonies. Its public buildings are elegant, especially Girard College. In the Old State-House the Declaration of Independence



CITY OF PHILADELPHIA (NEAR JUNCTION OF THE SCHUYLKILL AND DELAWARE), FROM GIRARD COLLEGE.

14. Delaware, which gives its name to the river and the fine frontier-bay, occupies half the peninsula lying between the Chesapeake and Delaware Bays. It is the second smallest State in the Union. An extensiveypress-swamp lies along its south-eastern boundary, and extends into Maryland. The soil is productive.

15. Chief Cities.—**DOVER**, the capital, is in the centre of the State; **WILMINGTON** (21,225), the chief sea-port, is on the Brandywine River, and **NEW CASTLE** on the Delaware.

1. THE SOUTHERN AND SOUTH-EASTERN STATES, WITH THEIR CAPITALS, ARE AS FOLLOWS:

NAME AND PRONUNCIATION.	Derivation or Signification.	Date of Settlement.	By whom Settled.	Admitted to the Union.	Area in Square Miles.	Free & Slave Population 1860.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Mail Distance from Washington	Population.
MARYLAND	After Charles I.'s Queen's mother, Mary de Medicis.	1633	Irish & Catholics (Under Lord Baltimore)	1776	11,120	7, 640,300 85,404	Annapolis	Chesapeake Bay	43 Miles	4,900
VIRGINIA	After the Virgin Queen Elizabeth of England	1607	The English (Under Lord de la Warr)	1776	61,358	2,107,378 403,820	Richmond	James River	180 "	26,900
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA	After Christopher Columbus	1790	Various States	.....	60	72,000	WASHINGTON	Potomac River	" "	61,400
KENTUCKY	Indian for "dark and bloody ground."	1782	Daniel Boone, from Virginia.	1792	37,680	7, 933,707 235,902	Frankfort	Kentucky River	527 "	6,000
TENNESSEE	Indian name of the river.	1767	The English	1796	44,400	550,225 87,112	Nashville	Cumberland River	774 "	23,720
NORTH CAROLINA	After Charles IX. of France.	1680	The English	1776	45,600	679,063 328,377	Raleigh	Neuse River (near)	316 "	6,000
SOUTH CAROLINA	After Charles IX. of France.	1670	The Huguenots	1776	34,900	268,156 407,143	Columbia	Congaree River	376 "	8,000
GEORGIA	After George II. of England.	1733	Gen. Oglethorpe	1776	58,000	615,336 647,461	Milledgeville	Oconee River	855 "	3,500
FLORIDA	Spanish for "flowers."	1565	The Spanish	1845	59,268	268,156 63,800	Tallahassee	Leon County	106 "	2,500
ALABAMA	Indian for "here we rest."	1763	The French	1819	50,723	220,444 435,473	MONTGOMERY	Alabama River	1,019 "	6,000
MISSISSIPPI	Indian for "the great water."	1718	The French	1816	47,156	268,156 479,007	Cap. of S. Confed.	Pearl River	1,094 "	3,000
LOUISIANA	After Louis XIV. of France.	1769	The French (Trans. by De Bow in 1804)	1811	41,346	254,243 312,180	Baton Rouge	Mississippi River	1,407 "	4,800
TEXAS	Spanish for "tent-covered."	1820	The Spanish	1845	374,350	415,000 124,900	Austin	Colorado River	1,315 "	5,800

QUESTIONS.—9. What is said of the cities in New-York State? 10. Point out on the map the boundaries and phys. feat., and 11. cities of Pennsylvania; 12, 13. The same of New Jersey; 14, 15. The same of Delaware. 1. Give the particulars relating to the Southern and South-Eastern States in the table.

ranges and rivers. to gulf and ocean.

7 Longitude West from Greenwich. 82
 I C O
 X
 M E
 S
 92
 7 Longitude West from Greenwich. 82
 I C O
 X
 M E
 S
 92

2. Noted For.—The SOUTHERN and SOUTH-EASTERN STATES are chiefly noted for their products of cotton, tobacco, and sugar; and for their large Negro population, which is still kept in slavery.

3. Position.—These States chiefly lie on the Atlantic coast, and are intersected, as far as Alabama, by the Alleghany Mountains.

4. Physical Features.—A triple range of the Alleghany Mountains extends from the north-east to the State of Alabama. The Mississippi River bounds the western tier of States; and the Florida Peninsula extends far southwards from Georgia and Alabama. An extensive swamp of cypress, pine, and cedar lies between Virginia and North Carolina.

5. Maryland lies south of Pennsylvania, and is intersected by Chesapeake Bay. (See map of Northern States, page 34.) The Po-to-mac River forms its southern and south-western boundary. Every part of the State is thus easy of access by water. It was colonized by Lord Baltimore. Tobacco, Indian corn, wheat, iron, and coal are its chief products.

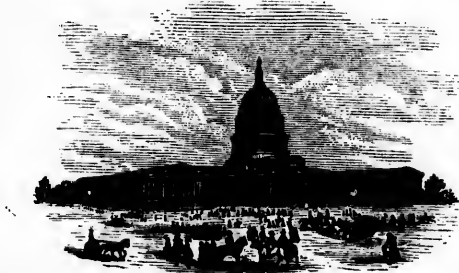
6. Chief Cities.—ANNAPOLIS, the capital, is situated on Chesapeake Bay. It has fine public buildings. The Old State House, in which Congress was once held, contains the room in which General George Washington resigned his commission in the army. BALTIMORE, the principal seaport, is noted for its public buildings, monuments, and fountains. It has the principal tobacco and flour market in the United States. Pop. 214,100.

7. Virginia, the first English settlement in America, lies south of Maryland and Pennsylvania. A ridge of the Alleghanes separates the rivers flowing into the Atlantic from those forming the tributaries of the Ohio River. The Great Dismal-Swamp, on its south-eastern boundary, extends into North Carolina. The chief products are tobacco, iron, and salt. The Virginia sulphur-springs are noted for their medicinal properties. General Washington was born in this State.

8. Chief Cities.—RICHMOND, the capital, is beautifully situated on the James River, 150 miles from the sea. Its commerce is extensive. NORFOLK, near the ocean, is the principal seaport, and is a naval station. WHEELING, on the Ohio, is a place of trade. AT MOUNT VERNON, on the Potomac, General Washington is buried. HARPER'S FERRY is also on the Potomac. (See map of the Northern States, page 34.) WILLIAMSBURG and CHARLOTTVILLE contain universities.

9. The District of Columbia is an area of 60 square miles on the banks of the Potomac River, 120 miles from its mouth, which was ceded by Maryland to the United States as a site for the seat of the Federal or general government.

10. Washington, the capital of the Republic, and GEORGETOWN, are



THE NEW CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

the principal cities. Washington contains the Capitol, in which Congress assembles, and other handsome public buildings, including the Smithsonian Institute, founded by James Smithson, an Englishman, and the "White House" or official residence of the President. The city was laid out by General Washington, who was the first President.

11. Kentucky lies west of Virginia, in the valley of the Ohio River, which river forms its northern boundary. It is highly fertile, and produces Indian corn, hemp, flax, and tobacco. From the celebrated Mammoth Cave, at the south, nitre is obtained. Iron, coal, and salt are the other more important minerals of the State.

QUESTIONS.—2. For what are the Southern and South-Eastern States noted? 3. Point out on the map their position, and 4. physical features. 5. What is said of Maryland? 6. Of its chief cities? 7, 8. Of Virginia? 9, 10. Of the District of Columbia? 11, 12. Of Kentucky? 13, 14. Of Tennessee? 15, 16. Of North Carolina? 17, 18. Of South Carolina? 19, 20. Of Georgia? 21, 22. Of Florida? 23, 24. Of Alabama? 25, 26. Of Mississippi? Describe illustrations.

19. Chief Cities.—FRANKFORT, the capital, is on the Kentucky River. LOUISVILLE, on the Ohio, is a place of extensive commerce (pop. 75,200). LEXINGTON, on the Elkhorn River, is the oldest city in the State.

13. Tennessee lies south of Kentucky. The Cumberland (Alleghany) Mountains run through its eastern part, giving a picturesque character to its scenery. The soil is good. The chief products of the State are cotton, tobacco, hemp, iron, coal, and salt.

14. Chief Cities.—NASHVILLE, the capital, on the Cumberland River, is a fine city, and has a large trade. MEMPHIS, situated on a high bluff of the Mississippi, is the southern outlet of the State. KNOXVILLE, at the eastern part of the State, is the seat of a university.

15. North Carolina lies south of Virginia. It has an extensive coast-line; but, owing to its numerous shoals, the coast is dangerous. The interior is hilly and mountainous. The State produces tar, turpentine, resin, cotton, indigo, Indian corn, and gold. Rice is the staple.

16. Chief Cities.—RALEIGH [ral'-je], the capital, is in the centre of the State. WILMINGTON, on Cape Fear River, at the south-east, is a commercial port of importance (pop. 21,235). BRAUFORT has a good harbour.

17. South Carolina is triangular in form. The coast is low and swampy, but the interior is more diversified. Its chief products are rice, cotton, Indian corn, indigo, gold, and lumber. The islands on the coast produce the celebrated long-fibred sea-island cotton.

18. Chief Cities.—COLUMBIA, the capital, is in the centre of the State. CHARLESTON, on the coast, is one of the chief commercial cities of the South (pop. 40,300). It has a fine harbour, and is a place of extensive trade. The city is well laid out, and the streets are planted with handsome trees.

19. Georgia is separated from South Carolina by the Savannah River. It was the most southerly of the thirteen original States. In its appearance and products it is similar to South Carolina. An extensive swamp on its southern boundary extends into Florida. To the north the State is mountainous and undulating.

20. Chief Cities.—MILLEDGEVILLE, the capital, is near the centre of the State, and in the midst of a rich cotton-country. AUGUSTA and SAVANNAH are on the Savannah River. Savannah, near its mouth, is the chief commercial city (population 16,000). It has numerous public squares.

21. Florida is a great peninsula south of Georgia. Though its coast-line is extensive, it has but few good harbours. There are no mountains, and but few rivers. A long range of hills extends through the State. Near its southern point are the "Everglades," an extensive marsh or shallow lake, studded with numerous islands. Along the rivers the soil is fertile, and, being near the tropics, vegetation is luxuriant. The chief productions are cotton, sugar-cane, rice, tobacco, oranges, lemons, figs, &c. On the southern coast, the navigation among the islands or "Keys" is dangerous, and wrecks are frequent.

22. Chief Cities.—TALLAHASSEE is in the centre of northern Florida. PENSA-COLA, at its north-western corner, is the principal seaport. It is a naval station. ST. AUGUSTINE [-teen], two miles from the Atlantic, on an inlet, is the oldest city in the United States, having been founded by the Spaniards in 1605. KEY WEST, on one of the Key islands near Florida Strait, is a place of commercial importance, and exports salt and sponges.

23. Alabama lies west of Georgia. The Alleghany Mountains terminate in this State. These mountains render the northern part of the State somewhat picturesque. Towards the Gulf of Mexico the surface is a dead level. Cotton is the chief product.

24. Chief Cities.—MONTGOMERY, capital of the State and of the Southern Confederacy, is on the Alabama River. Its cotton-trade is extensive. MOBILE [-beel], near the sea, is the chief commercial port. In cotton export it rivals New Orleans [-loens']. FLORENCE, at the north, and TUSCALOOSA, near the centre of the State, are important towns.

25. Mississippi lies west of Alabama, and takes its name from the Mississippi River, which forms its western boundary (and which also forms the eastern or western boundary of ten States, beginning with Minnesota, near Lake Superior). From the Gulf of Mexico inland the surface is level, but towards the north it is hilly. The soil is fertile. The products are similar to those of Alabama.

26. Chief Cities.—JACKSON, on Pearl River, in the centre of the State, is the capital. VICKSBURG and NATCHEZ, each on a bluff of the Mississippi, have a large cotton-trade.



RICE, WITH A GRAIN MAGNIFIED.



COTTON-PLANT, FLOWER AND POD.

ucky River.
pop. 75,300).
ste.
and (Alle-
picturesque
ducts of the
land River,
a high bluff
OXVILLE, at
an extensive
dangerous.
tar, turpen-
the staple.
ne centre of
h-east, is a
ood harbour.

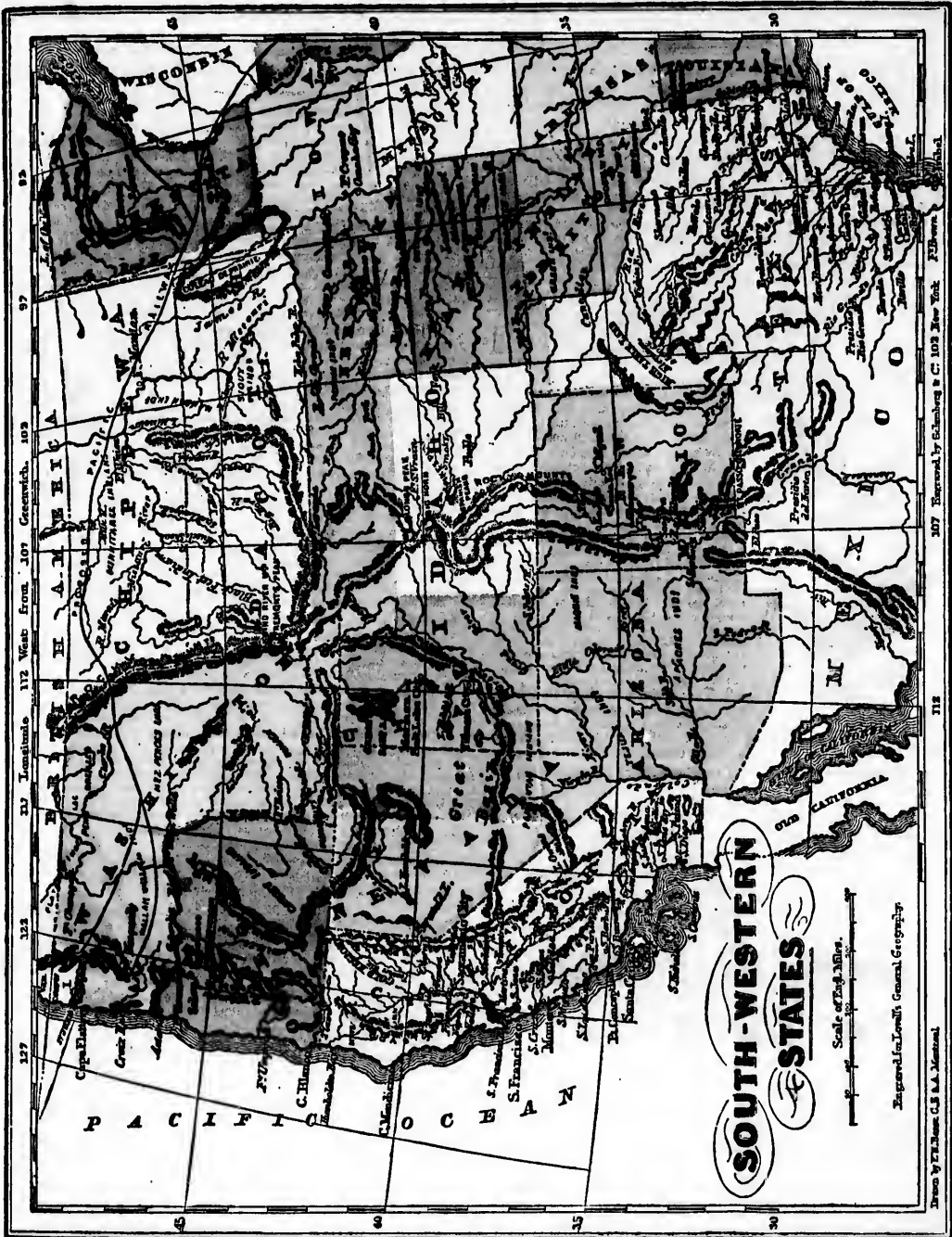


RICHS, WITH A
GRAIN MAG-
NIFIED.
the centre of
and SAVAN-
is the chief
square.
gh its coast-
are no moun-
through the
an extensive
ation is luxu-
ce, tobacco,
e navigation
e frequent.
ern Florida.
port. It is a
atlantic, on an
unded by the
near Florida
d sponges.



T. FLOWER
OD.

ical features.
essace? 15, 16.
illustrations.



SOUTH-WESTERN STATES

Scale of English Miles.
0 10 20 30 40 50

Prepared by Lewis' General Geography

Drawn by F. H. Dean, U.S.A. Montreal.

QUESTIONS.—Name and point out the boundaries of the States on this map. Name and trace the mountain-ranges, and the principal rivers. Point out the principal gulfs and lakes. Trace the proposed railway. Point out the capes. Name the ocean. What countries lie to the north and the south?

27. Louisiana lies south-west of Mississippi, and is the most important of the Southern States. It includes within its boundary the delta, the outlet, and both sides of the noble Mississippi River for 250 miles inland from its mouth. The surface is level, but towards the west there are a few low hilly ranges. The great delta is subject to inundations in the spring. Sugar, cotton, rice, and tropical fruits are the chief products. The Mississippi River was explored in 1672 by Marquette and Jollette of Canada; and Louisiana was settled in 1699 by Iberville, a native of Montreal.



THE CITY OF NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA, SHOWING ALGIERES AT THE LEFT SIDE.

28. Chief Cities.—BATON ROUGE [roosh], the capital, is two hundred miles inland, on the Mississippi; but NEW ORLEANS, a hundred miles from its mouth, is the great commercial capital of the State, as well as of most of the Southern States. Its levee or quay, four miles long, forms the embankment to the river, and is a place of unceasing

activity. The public buildings are numerous and handsome; but, owing to the prevalence of yellow-fever in summer, the private residences of the wealthier inhabitants are chiefly out of the city. Population 170,800.

29. Texas, the largest State in the Union and originally a separate republic, lies west of Louisiana. The Rio Grande separates it from Mexico. Its chief rivers, the Brazos and Colorado, rise in the elevated table-land in the interior. The soil is highly productive. Except at the north, where it is mountainous, the climate is tropical, and vegetation luxuriant. Cotton, sugar, iron, silver, and lead are the staple products. The prairies abound in buffaloes and wild horses.

30. Chief Cities.—AUSTIN, the capital, on the Colorado, is 200 miles inland. GALVESTON, with its fine bays, HOUSTON, MATAGORDA, and CORPUS CHRISTI [kris-toe] are the chief commercial ports.

L THE SOUTH-WESTERN STATES AND TERRITORIES, WITH THEIR CAPITALS, ARE AS FOLLOWS:

NAME AND PROMINENT CLIMATE.	Derivation Or Signification.	Date of Settlement.	By whom Settled.	Admitted to the Union.	Area in Square Miles.	Free & Slave Population 1860.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Mail Distance from Washington	Population.
ARKANSAS [ar-kan'-sas].	Are (bow), (named by the French), and Kansas.	1683	The French.	1836	52,200	7,331,710	Little Rock.	Arkansas River.	1,008 Miles.	4,000
NEW-MEXICO TERRITORY. [ni-mex'-o-ko].	After Mexiti, the Aztec god of war.	1594	The Spanish.	.....	150,000	109,095	Santa Fé.	Rio Grande River (near) .....	.....	5,800
*ARIZONA TERRITORY. [ar-iz-on'-a].	Spanish.	1858	Various States.	.....	100,000	8,000	.....	.....	.....	.....
CALIFORNIA [kal-fo'-r-ni-a].	Spanish.	1769	The Spanish.	1850	200,000	384,770	Sacramento.	Sacramento River. { By St. Louis 5,670 } { By N. York 5,912 }	.....	28,000
NEVADA TERRITORY. [nev-ah'-da].	Spanish, "white," from Sierra Nevada.	1858	Various States.	.....	175,000	0,000	.....	.....	.....	.....
OREGON [or'-e-jon].	Spanish for wild "sage."	1811	New-England and other States.	1859	185,030	52,860	Salem.	Willamette River. { By St. Louis 4,470 } { By N. York 5,470 }	.....	2,000
WASHINGTON TERRITORY. [wash'-ing-ton].	After General Washington.	1811	.....	.....	123,022	11,800	Olympia.	Chehalis River (near)	0,843 "	800
UTAH TERRITORY. [u'-ta].	Indian, Territories (Idaho, marked).	1846	The Mormons.	.....	120,000	40,000	Fillmore.	Sovier Lake (near).	.....	1,000
COLORADO OR IDAYO TERR. [kol-o'-rah'-da, -day'-ho].	Indian for "thus," "son of the mountain."	1858	Various States.	.....	120,000	17,500	Pike's Peak.	Kansas River .....	.....	1,000
INDIAN TERRITORY. [ind'-yan].	Territory reserved for the Indians.	.....	The Indians.	.....	71,127	100,000	Tahquah.	Arkansas River (near) .....	.....	1,800
KANSAS [kan'-sas].	Indian name of the river.	1854	Various States.	1860	300,000	100,000	Leocompton.	Kansas River .....	.....	500
NEBRASKA TERRITORY. [nev-bras'-ka].	Indian for a broad and "flat" or shallow river.	1854	Various States.	.....	300,000	28,000	Omaha.	Missouri River.	.....	600
DAKOTA TERRITORY. [dik-to'-ka].	Indian for allied or "united" tribes.	1858	Various States.	.....	135,000	8,000	.....	.....	.....	.....
*CHIFFEWA TERRITORY. [chip'-e-way].	Indian for "fisher's-skin" clothing.	1859	Various States.	.....	150,000	8,000	.....	.....	.....	.....
MISSISSIPPI TERRITORY. [mis-si-pi].	Indian for "sky-coloured water."	1849	Various States.	1858	81,160	170,000	St. Paul.	Mississippi River.	1,847 "	6,500

2. Noted For.—The SOUTH-WESTERN STATES and TERRITORIES are noted for their noble rivers and prairies, and minerals.

3. Position.—These States and Territories extend from the Gulf of Mexico to Vancouver Island, and from the Gulf of California to Lake Superior. The Rocky Mountains intersect them.

4. Physical Features.—The centre of these States and Territories forms the great water-shed for all the rivers flowing eastward as tributaries of the Mississippi, and westward into the Pacific Ocean.

5. Arkansas lies north of Louisiana. It is nearly divided in two by the Arkansas River. Its north-west corner is traversed by the Ozark Mountains. Inland from the Mississippi the surface is highly diversified; but, except near the rivers, the soil is not good. Cotton, grain, iron, lead, and coal are the chief products.

6. Chief Cities.—LITTLE ROCK, the capital, is on the Arkansas River. Its hot springs for invalids are celebrated. VAN BUREN, also on the Arkansas, is the commercial capital. FORT SMITH, CAMDEN, and BATESVILLE are thriving towns.

7. New-Mexico Territory lies between Texas and Arizona. The Sierra Madre and other ranges of the Rocky Mountains traverse its western part, and form the water-shed for the rivers flowing into the Gulfs of California and Mexico. SANTA FÉ is the capital.

8. Arizona Territory lies west of New Mexico. It is watered by

the Gila [gee-lá] and Little Colorado Rivers. Various kinds of minerals are abundant, but the soil is not very fertile.

9. California lies on the Pacific coast between Mexico and Oregon. The Sierra-Nevada Mountains to the east and the Coast Mountains to the west enclose the fertile valley of the Sacramento and San-Joaquin Rivers. Gold is found in abundance on the western slope of the Sierra Nevada. Along the coast the climate is temperate, but in the interior it is hot. Gold and quicksilver are the chief minerals. Cattle, wild horses, and deer are numerous. The chief products are wheat and fruits.

10. Chief Cities.—SACRAMENTO, the political capital, is in the centre of the State. SAN FRANCISCO, the commercial capital, (pop. 60,000,) is on a bay which is entered through the "Golden Gate," a passage only a mile wide.

11. Nevada Territory lies east of California, and occupies the great Pacific Basin, between the Sierra-Nevada and Rocky Mountains. The Humboldt and Pyramid Lakes have no visible outlet.

12. Oregon lies between California and the Columbia River. The Cascade and Blue Mountains divide it into three parts. The coast-valley of the Willamette River is fertile, but the Lewis-River valley not so much so. Wheat and lumber are the chief exports.

13. Chief Cities.—SALEM, the capital, and PORTLAND, are on the Willamette. ASTORIA is at the mouth of the Columbia River.

14. Washington Territory lies between Oregon and British Columbia. The interior is watered by the Clark and Columbia Rivers.

QUESTIONS.—27. What is said of Louisiana, and 28. its chief cities? 29. Of Texas? 30. Of Texas? 1. Give the particulars relating to the South-Western States and Territories in the table. 2. For what are they noted? 3. What is said of their position? 4. physical features? 5. Of Arkansas, and 6. its chief cities? 7, 8. New Mexico and Arizona? 9, 10. California and its chief cities? 11. Nevada? 12, 13. Oregon and its chief cities? 14. Washington Territory?

public build-
 ous and hand-
 ing to the prev-
 yellow-fever in
 e private resi-
 ne weather inc-
 e chiefly out of
 opulation 170,800.

as, the largest
 Union and origi-
 arate republic,
 Louisiana. The
 separates it from
 chief rivers, the
 Colorado, rise in
 table-land in the
 the soil is highly

Except at the
 re it is moun-
 climate is tro-
 vegetation luxu-
 ton, sugar, iron,
 lead are the
 wild horses.

orado, is 200 miles
 MATAORDA, and
 s.

WS:

Population	Distance from Washington
4,000
5,500
28,000
2,000
800
1,000
1,000
1,200
500
600
6,800
1,347

kinds of miner-

ico and Oregon.
 st Mountains to
 and San-Joaquin
 ope of the Sierra
 e in the interior
 s. Cattle, wild
 wheat and fruits.
 is in the centre
 p. 65,000,) is on a
 only a mile wide.
 occupies the great
 mountains. The

la River. The
 s. The coast-
 is-River valley
 s.

ND, are on the
 iver.

British Colum-
 umberia Rivers.

-Western States
 a, and d. its chief
 ington Territory?



QUESTIONS.—What States and countries are shown on this map? Point out and name the capital of each State. Point out and name the principal lakes, bays, and islands. Trace the course of the principal rivers. What chief places do the railways connect? What State contains two peninsulas?



THE CITY OF SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA, ON THE PACIFIC COAST.

OLYMPIA, at the head of Puget Sound, is the capital. Victoria, the capital of the British island of Vancouver, is near the Sound's entrance.

15. **Utah Territory** lies east of Nevada. Its rivers fall into lakes which have no visible outlet; the principal of which are Great Salt-Lake, to the north, and Nicholet, south of it. Except along the rivers, the soil is not fertile. Great Salt-Lake is shallow, and abounds in crystallized salt. Coal and iron are found in abundance.

16. **Chief Cities.**—FILLMORE, on a branch of the Nicholet, is the capital. SALT-LAKE CITY, on the Jordan, is the capital of the Mormons, — a religious sect which has largely settled in the Territory.

17. **Colorado, or Idaho, Territory** is separated from Utah by the Green River. A double chain of the Rocky Mountains runs through it.

18. **The Indian Territory**, which lies north of Texas, has been set apart for the Indians who have been removed from various South-Western States. TALL-POPPLE is the capital.

19. **Kansas** lies west of Missouri. It is an extensive plain, drained by the Kansas and Arkansas Rivers, on which herds of buffaloes feed. Along the rivers the soil is good, and the country is being rapidly settled. LAWRENCE is the capital.

20. **Nebraska Territory** lies north of Kansas, and is watered by the Nebraska or Platt's River. OMAHA is the capital.

21. **Dakotah Territory** lies between Minnesota and Nebraska, and is chiefly inhabited by Indians. The Black Hills, running from the Rocky Mountains to the Missouri River, divide it into two parts.

22. **Chippewa Territory** lies north of Dakotah. The Missouri River takes its rise in this Territory, and runs in a westerly direction through it.

23. **Minnesota** lies between Iowa and the British Colony at Red River. The noble Mississippi River has its source in Itasca Lake, in this State. The surface is chiefly undulating prairie, sloping to the east. The lakes and rivers are numerous, and the water is singularly pure. Timber is scarce, but coal and copper are abundant.

24. **Chief Cities.**—ST. PAUL, nine miles below the Falls of St. Anthony, on the Mississippi, is the capital. PEMBINA, on the Red River near the British frontier, is a trading-place.

1. THE WESTERN STATES, WITH THEIR CAPITALS, ARE AS FOLLOWS:

NAME AND PRONUNCIATION.	Derivation Or Signification.	Date of Settlement.	By whom Settled.	Adults to the Union.	Area in Square Miles.	Free & Slv. Popula- tion 1860.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Mile Dis- tance from Washington.	Popula- tion.
OHIO, [oh-ee-oh]	Indian for "Beautiful River."	1788	New England.....	1802	39,864	2,370,000	Columbus.....	Soloto River.....	534 Miles.	18,640
INDIANA, [in-dee-an-ee]	Indian country.	1702	The French.....	1816	33,809	1,350,000	Indianapolis.....	West Br. White River.	725 "	17,000
MICHIGAN, [mich-ee-gan]	Indian for "Great Lake."	1870	The French.....	1836	56,243	754,300	Lansing.....	Grand River.....	819 "	3,000
WISCONSIN, [wis-kon-sin]	Indian.	1830	Various States.....	1048	38,024	775,000	Madison.....	Between Third and Fourth Lakes.....	1,022 "	7,000
ILLINOIS, [il-lin-oy]	Indian for "Hare men."	1683	The French.....	1818	35,400	1,691,200	Springfield.....	Sangamon River.....	1,024 "	7,000
MISSOURI, [mis-soo-ree]	Indian for "Mud River."	1763	The French.....	1821	65,037	1,065,484 " 115,207	Jefferson.....	Missouri River.....	1,119 "	4,000
IOWA, [ee-oh-wa]	Indian.	1833	Various States.....	1840	50,014	682,500	Des Moines.....	Raccoon River, b'n of the Des Moines	1,220 "	4,500

2. **Noted For.**—THE WESTERN STATES are noted for their extent, their prairies, and their agricultural and mineral products.

3. **Position and Physical Features.**—These States occupy the great northern basin of the Mississippi River. Five of them lie between the Ohio and Missouri Rivers, and two border on the great Canadian lakes. They are well watered with numerous large rivers. Their surface is chiefly a vast undulating prairie; and except at the south of the State of Missouri, they have few elevations higher than hills.

4. **Ohio** lies south of Lake Erie. It is not mountainous; but an elevated table-land divides the waters flowing into it from the numerous tributaries of the Ohio River, which forms its southern boundary. Prairies abound to the north-west. The soil is generally fertile. Iron, coal, salt, wheat, Indian corn, wool, and pork are the chief exports.

5. **Chief Cities.**—COLUMBUS, the capital, is near the centre of the State. CINCINNATI (pop. 163,000), on the Ohio, at the south-west corner, is the largest city in the Western States. It is the great pork-market of the West. CLEVELAND (43,500), on Lake Erie, is well laid out, and its harbour is the best on the lake. SANDUSKY is also an important lake-port.

6. **Indiana** lies west of Ohio, and is separated from Kentucky by the Ohio River. It is watered by tributaries of that river. The surface is undulating, and diversified with prairies and lowlands. The soil is good. Agricultural products and domestic animals are the chief staples.

7. **Chief Cities.**—INDIANAPOLIS, the capital, on the west branch of the White River, is the diverging centre of numerous railroads. MADISON and NEW ALBANY, both commercial towns, are on the Ohio.

8. **Michigan** lies north of Ohio and Indiana, and north-east of Wisconsin. It is divided into two parts by Lake Michigan. It borders on Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior, and is admirably situated for internal trade. Except Florida, its coast-line is longer than that of any other of the States. The southern peninsula slopes towards the east and the

west, and is generally fertile; but the northern is rocky, and abounds with copper. The Pictured (sandstone) Rocks on the coast of Lake Superior, worn by time, present the appearance of old ruins. The Strait of Mackinac (naw), or Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac, forms the outlet of Lake Michigan, and the Sault [so] Ste. Marie of that of Lake Superior.

9. **Chief Cities.**—LANSING, the capital, is on Grand River, in southern Michigan. DETROIT (pop. 46,850), on the River St. Clair, opposite Windsor, is connected with Canada by the Grand Trunk and Great Western Railways. MACKINAC, or MICHLIMACKINAC, was once noted in Canadian history as a military post. PORT HURON, opposite Sarnia, is also connected with Canada by the above railways.

10. **Wisconsin** lies between Lake Michigan and the Mississippi. Its surface is slightly undulating, and slopes gradually towards that river. Towards the south there are extensive prairies and timber-lands. The lead and copper mines of the State are highly productive.

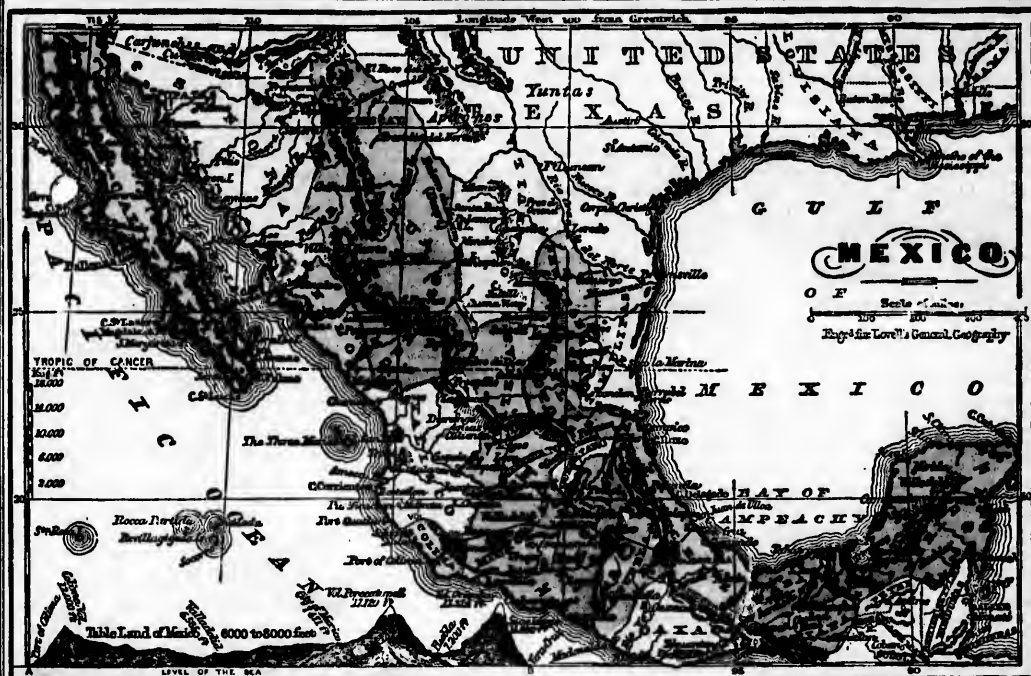
11. **Chief Cities.**—MADISON, the capital, is at the south, between Third and Fourth Lakes, a branch of the Rock River. MILWAUKEE (p. 45,350) and RA-CINE [seen], on Lake Michigan, are commercial ports.

12. **Illinois** lies south of Wisconsin. Opposite Alton, on its western boundary, the junction of the Missouri and Mississippi Rivers takes place; and at Cairo, at its southern point, the junction of the Ohio and Mississippi. The surface of the State is generally a vast undulating prairie, sloping towards the south, and the soil is fertile. The chief products are agricultural, but minerals are abundant.

13. **Chief Cities.**—SPRINGFIELD, the capital, is about the centre of the State. CHICAGO [she-kaw-go] (p. 108,450), on Lake Michigan, is the chief place of trade. GA-LA-NA, near Wisconsin, is noted for its lead-mines.

14. **Missouri** is separated from Illinois by the Mississippi River, into which the waters of the Missouri and its tributaries flow from the westward, through the centre of the State. Prairies abound north of this river, but south of it the surface is broken and mountainous. At the south-eastern part of the State there is a mountain of almost pure

QUESTIONS.—15. Point out on the map and describe the boundaries, and 16. cities, of Utah; 17. The same of Colorado Territory; 18. of the Indian Territory; 19. of Kansas; 20. of Nebraska; 21. of Dakotah; 22. of Chippewa; and 23, 24. of Minnesota and its cities. 1. Give the particulars of each of the W. States in the table. 2. For what are they noted? 3. Point out on the map the position and physical features of these States. 4. Point out and describe the boundaries, and 5. cities, of Ohio; 6, 7. The same of Indiana; 8, 9. of Michigan; 10, 11. of Wisconsin; 12, 13. of Illinois. 14. Describe Missouri.



Drawn by A. R. Graham, Toronto

Engr'd by Schilling & Co. New York

Nichollet, is the
of the Mormons,
ry.
from Utah by the
s runs through it.
exas, has been set
a various South-
ve plain, drained
of buffaloes feed.
is being rapidly
d is watered by
d Nebraska, and
anning from the
wo parts.
e Missouri River
ction through it.
o Colony at Red
-tas-ca Lake, in
sloping to the
er is singularly
ant.
Falls of St. An-
e Red River near

Small Distance from Washington	Population
654 Miles.	18,840
725 "	17,000
819 "	3,000
902 "	7,000
954 "	7,000
119 "	4,000
220 "	4,500

y, and abounds
coast of Lake
ld ruins. The
orms the outlet
Lake Superior.
River, in south-
Clear, opposite
Great Western
ted in Canadian
ia, is also con-
Mississippi. Its
ards that river.
er-lands. The
outh, between
MIL-WAD-KEE
mercial ports.
on its western
Rivers takes
n of the Ohio
vast undula-
fertile. The
t.
the centre of
Michigan, is the
its lead-mines.
ppi River, into
flow from the
band north of
mountaino s.
f almost pure
of the Indian
of each of the
t and describes
Missouri.

iron. Lead and coal are also abundant. Indian corn, hemp, tobacco, cattle, and horses are the other chief products.
15. Chief Cities.—JERUSALEM, on the Missouri, is the capital; but St. Louis (pop. 102,500), on the Mississippi below the Missouri junction, is the commercial capital of the western States bordering on these rivers.
16. Iowa lies north of Missouri, and between the Missouri and Mississippi Rivers. Its surface is chiefly a rolling prairie, watered by numerous rivers, the principal of which is the Des Moines. Agricultural products are the most important; but lead, coal, and iron are abundant.
17. Chief Cities.—DES MOINES, the capital, is on a branch of the Des Moines River. DUBUQUE [du-book'], on the Mississippi, has extensive lead-mines. BURLINGTON, also on the Mississippi, has a considerable river-trade.

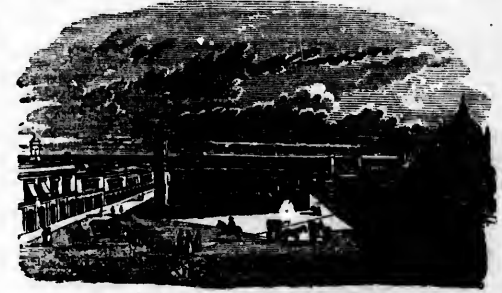
THE UNITED STATES OF MEXICO.

Mexico is derived from *Mes-At-Itl*, the Mars, or god of war, of the Aztecs, a tribe who are supposed to have migrated to Mexico from the Mississippi Valley, A. D. 1193. Size, about twice that of Canada, or equal to a square of 925 miles.

- 1. Noted For.**—MEXICO is noted for its ancient civilization, its numerous volcanoes, and its rich silver-mines.
- 2. Position and Extent.**—This republic lies south of the United States, between the Gulf of Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. It consists of 22 States, 3 Territories, and a Federal District.
- 3. Physical Features.**—The Rocky Mountains, under the name of the Sierra Madre, traverse the country in various ranges, terminating in Yucatan, and produce great diversity of scenery and climate. Volcanoes are numerous: the most important one is Pop-o-cat'-a-petl, the culminating point of Mexico. The Rio Grande del Norte is the principal river, and also forms the N. E. boundary. The interior between the mountain-ranges consists of the high table-land of Anahuac [an-a-wak'].
4. The Products are varied, according to the climate, and include Indian corn, tropical fruits, &c. The gold, silver, iron, copper, lead, and quicksilver mines are very productive. The exports are cattle, hides, fruit, Indian corn, indigo, silver, lead, &c. Mexico contains numerous beautiful and massive ancient ruins and pyramids, indicative of early civilization.
5. Yearly Exports \$20,000,000; revenue \$10,000,000; debt \$150,000,000.

QUESTIONS.—15. Point out on the map the cities of Missouri. 16. Point out the boundaries, and 17. cities, of Iowa. What is said of the derivation and size of Mexico? Point out on the map the boundaries of each of its states, territories, &c. Point out its gulfs, &c. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its position and extent; 3. phys. features. What is said of its products, &c.? 5. exports, &c.? 6. travelling facil.? 7. inhabitants? 8. chief cities. F

- 6. Travelling Facilities.**—Mules furnish the chief means of transport. The Isthmus of Tehuantepec [tay-wan'-tay-pek], at the south, 170 miles wide, connects the Atlantic Ocean with the Pacific. Short railways extend from Mexico and Vera Cruz.
- 7. The Inhabitants** are now a mixed people consisting of about 4,000,000 Indians, 1,000,000 descendants of the Spaniards, 2,000,000 Mestizoes (European-Indians); besides Zamboes (Africo-Indians), Mulattoes, &c.
- 8. Chief Cities.**—MEXICO, the capital, is beautifully situated on a fine plain near Lake Tex-cu-co, and is surrounded by lofty mountains. The city is square, and encircled by high walls. VERA CRUZ (with its hand-



THE PRINCIPAL SQUARE OF VERA CRUZ.

some public squares) and TAMPICO, on the Gulf of Mexico, are the chief commercial ports. GWADALAXARA (pop. 70,000) is next to Mexico in size. ACAPULCO and MAZATLAN are ports on the Pacific coast. TEHUANTEPEC, south of the isthmus, was, in 1853, sold to the Government of the U. S. of America. MERIDA is the capital of the State of Yucatan, and SIAL is its seaport; but CAMPEACHY is the principal seaport in the republic.

CENTRAL AMERICA.*

Size, a little larger than Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 510 miles.

1. **Noted For.**—CENTRAL AMERICA is noted for its important geographical position between North and South America, and the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans; and for its dyewoods and varied tropical products.

2. **Political Divisions.**—There are five republics in Central America; viz., GUATEMALA, SAN SALVADOR, HONDURAS, NICARA-GUA [rah'-gwé] (including MOSQUITIA, or the MOSQUITO COAST), and COSTA RICA [ree'-ka]; besides BA-LIZE [leez'], or BRITISH HONDURAS.

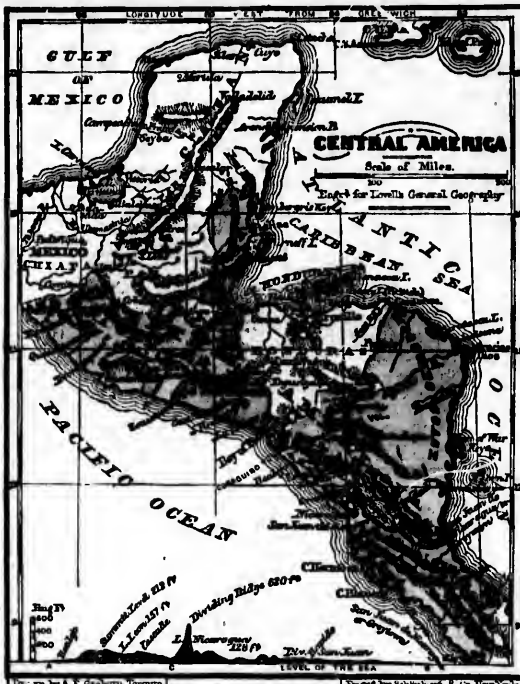
3. **Commercial Highways.**—Of the three principal commercial highways between the two oceans, one (that of Tehuantepec) lies within the territory of Mexico; the second (that of Nicaragua), is in Central America; and the third (that of Panama) belongs to South America.

4. **Physical Features.**—The Andes of South America commence in these States. Branching off as they run along either coast, they converge again into a single chain as they reach the Isthmus of Panama. The Cordillera of Guatemala continues the range to the Anahuac plateau of Mexico. Volcanoes occur along the Pacific coast. Between the mountain-ranges, and along the central plateau or table-land, there are numerous fertile plains.

5. **Products, &c.**—Tropical plants grow in great profusion. Indigo, dyewoods, cotton, mahogany, sugar, and minerals are the chief exports. Indian corn, rice, and cattle are articles of domestic trade. Reptiles and beautiful birds abound in the luxuriant forests.

6. **Chief Ports.**—The principal commercial ports on the Caribbean coast are O-MO-A (pop. 2,500) (the hottest town in America) and TRUXILLO (5,500), in Honduras; and SAN JU-AN, or GREYTOWN, in Mosquitia, now belonging to Nicaragua. The most important towns on the Pacific coast are NEW GUATEMALA (40,000), in Guatemala; and LEON (25,500) and GRANADA (10,500), in Nicaragua.

7. **British Honduras,** a dependency of Jamaica, lies south of Yucatan. Numerous islands lie along the coast, which is swampy. The interior is wooded, and the soil in the valleys fertile. The climate is moist, but not unhealthy. The principal rivers are the Balize, Rio Hondo, and Si-hoon'. The chief exports are mahogany, cocoa-nuts, cochineal, logwood, and sarsaparilla, value \$2,250,000; revenue \$150,000. Pop. 25,000. The capital is BALIZE, or WA-LI, a Spanish corruption for Wallace,—the name of a noted English pirate who formerly frequented the principal river of Honduras. Pop. 7,000.



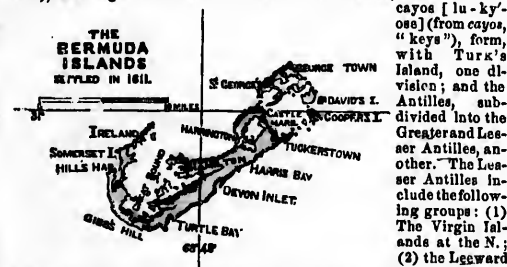
THE WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

(So called by Columbus, who supposed that they lay on the route to the East India.) Size, about that of England and Ireland, or equal to a square of 300 miles.

1. **Noted For.**—THE WEST-INDIA ISLANDS are noted for their tropical productions, fertility, and insular position, and for being chiefly owned by Gt. Britain, France, and other European powers.

2. **Position.**—These islands stretch in a curved line from the mouth of the Orinoco River to the Peninsula of Florida, and with that Peninsula, enclose the Mexican Gulf and Caribbean Sea.

3. **Divisions.**—These islands are divided into two general classes: viz., I. the Bahamas, which stretch 600 miles south-east of Florida; and II. the Antilles [an-teelz'] (from *anti-isles*, or isles opposite the main land), reaching from Cuba to Trinidad. The Bahamas, also called Lucayos [lu-ky-ose] (from *cayos*, "keys"), form, with Turk's Island, one division; and the Antilles, subdivided into the Greater and Lesser Antilles, another. The Lesser Antilles include the following groups: (1) The Virgin Islands at the N.; (2) the Leeward



* See statistics relating to Central America in the table on page 16.
† The term "Caribbean" is derived from "Caribe," the name of the original inhabitants of the West-India Islands; a few of whom are found in St. Vincent, &c.

QUESTIONS.—Give the size of Central America. 1. For what is it noted? Point out on the map its gulfs, bays, rivers, and mountains; 2. its political divisions and their boundaries; 3. its commercial highways; 4. its physical features. 5. What is said of its products, &c.? 6. chief ports, and of the term Caribbean. 7. Point out and describe British Honduras. What is said of the West-India Islands? 1. For what are they noted? 2. Point out their position; 3. divisions. 4. Give the particulars of each island in the table. 5. Point out and describe the Bermuda; and 6. the Bahama Islands.

[loo-ard] islands, in the middle; and (3) the Windward Islands, at the south. The Greater Antilles are the Greater and Lesser Cayman [ki'-man], Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica [jā-may-kā], and Porto Rico [ree'-ko].

4. The British West-India Islands are as follows:

NAME (in geographical order).	Mode of Acquisition and Date.	Area in Square Miles.	Population.	CAPITAL.	Population.
BERMUDAS.....	Settlement .....1611	47	14,000	Hamilton.....	2,500
BAHAMAS.....	Settlement .....1629	4,500	28,500	Nassau, N. P.	5,500
TURK'S AND CAICOO ISLANDS...	Settlement' .....1629	400	3,500	Grand Turk	2,000
JAMAICA.....	Capitulation' .....1655	6,400	500,000	Spanish Town ..	6,000
LEEWARD ISLANDS:					
Antigua.....	Settlement .....1632	108	37,150	St. John.....	15,500
Dominica.....	Ceded by France 1763	290	25,230	Roseau.....	5,000
St. Christopher.....	Settlement nt. 1623, 1650	70	21,000	Basseterre.....	7,700
Anguilla.....	Settlement nt. ....1666	34	5,002	Anguilla.....	350
Montserrat.....	Settlement nt. ....1632	54	8,000	Plymouth.....	1,400
Nevis.....	Settlement nt. ....1629	20	10,000	Charlestown.....	1,800
Virgin Islands.....	Settlement nt. ....1666	127	5,700	Roadtown, Tortola, Barbuda.....	2,300
Barbuda.....	Capitulation .....1666	76	1,750	Barbuda.....	150
WINDWARD ISLANDS:					
Barbados.....	Settlement nt. ....1605	166	180,000	Bridgetown.....	23,000
St. Vincent.....	Ceded by France 1763	130	30,200	Kingstown.....	5,600
Tobago.....	Ceded by France 1763	80	14,500	Scarborough.....	5,000
Grenada.....	Ceded by France 1763	133	35,000	St. George Town ..	4,000
St. Lucia.....	Capitulation .....1803	300	26,500	Castries.....	3,000
TRINIDAD.....	Ceded.....1801	2,020	90,000	Port of Spain ..	18,000

5. **The Bermudas,** a cluster of coralline islands, of every size and shape, in the N. Atlantic Ocean 600 miles from N. Carolina, were named after Juan Bermudez, a Spanish discoverer. Their scenery is very beautiful. They are almost surrounded by coral-reefs, the only ones in the Central Atlantic. The chief exports are potatoes, tomatoes, arrow-root, &c., value \$150,000; revenue \$80,000. HAMILTON, the capital, is on Long Island, the principal island. Grosvenor, on St. George's Island, is well fortified.

6. **The Bahamas,** a group of 500 islands north-west of Cuba and east of Florida, between which and the Bahama Islands the Gulf

AMERICA

Geography

CH

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

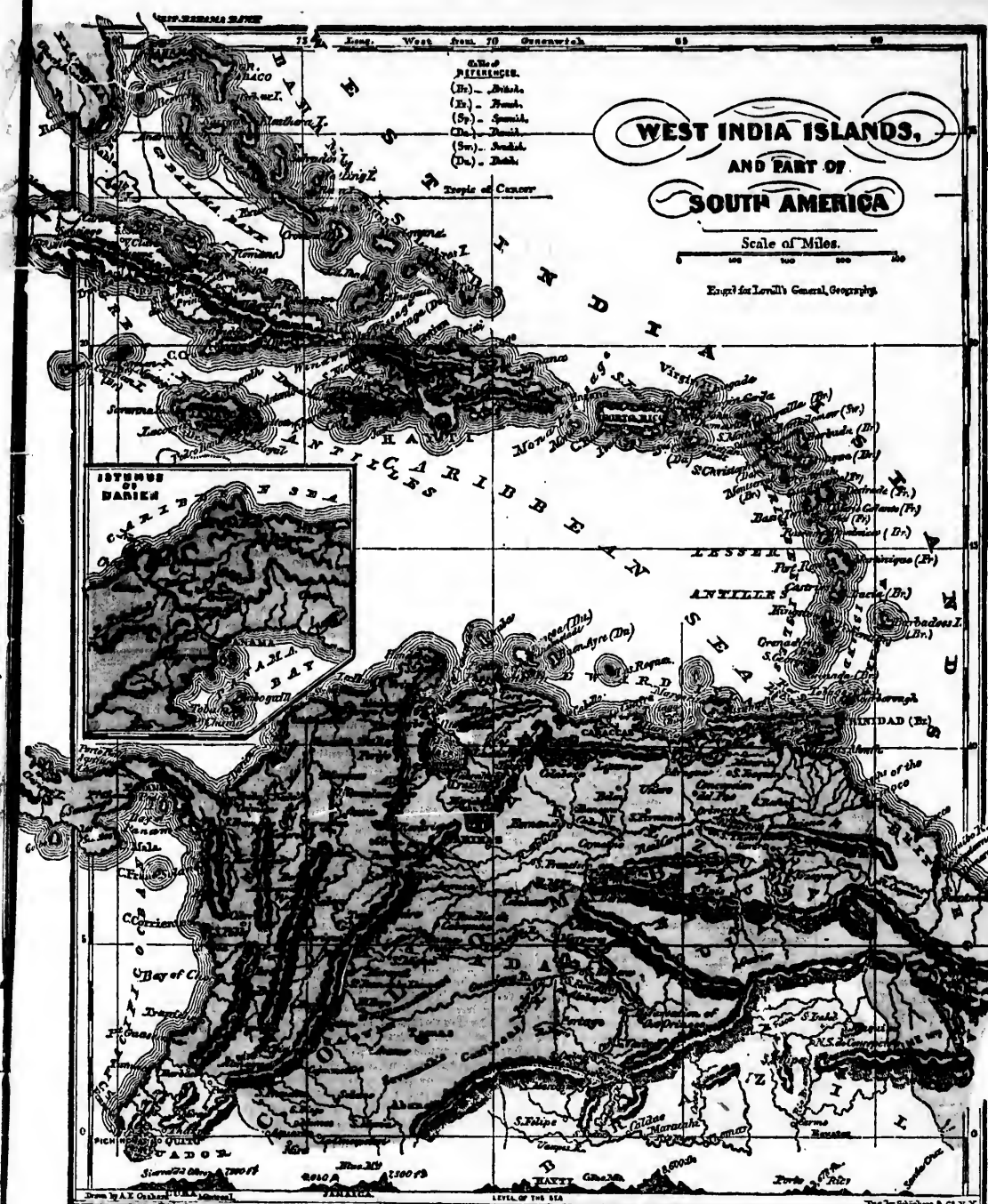
20

21

22

23

24



**WEST INDIA ISLANDS,
AND PART OF
SOUTH AMERICA**

Scale of Miles.
0 100 200

Exapt for Lovell's General Geography

LANGUAGES.
(Br.) - British.
(Fr.) - French.
(Sp.) - Spanish.
(Dn.) - Dutch.
(Sw.) - Swedish.
(Da.) - Danish.



Population.
2,500
8,500
2,000
6,000
15,500
5,000
7,700
150
1,400
1,800
12,500
100
23,000
5,500
3,500
4,000
3,000
15,000

size and named beautiful. Central, value and, the fortified. ba and be Gulf; 2. its of the out B.

QUESTIONS.—Name the groups of islands on this map. Point out those belonging to the various European Powers. What other countries are shown?

SKETCH OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.



first land of the New Western World discovered by Christopher Columbus. 7. Commerce, &c.—The chief exports are salt, sponges, coffee, and fruit, value \$700,000; revenue \$170,000. Many of the settlers in 1783 were American United-Empire Loyalists. The capital is Nas'-sau [-saw], a well-built city on New-Providence Island. Its harbour affords safe anchorage. Pop. 8,500. 8. Jamaica.—This most important of the Greater Antilles, and the largest of the British West-India Islands, is 90 miles south-west of Cuba, in the Caribbean Sea. Its general appearance is very beautiful. Its

Stream flows in to the Atlantic. They are chiefly long, narrow, and rocky. The sandbanks are dangerous to navigation. SAN-SALVADOR ISLAND in this group is supposed to be the

14. Mont-ser-rat is an oval-shaped island. Two thirds of the surface are mountainous; the remainder is fertile. Exports: sugar, rum, &c., an. val. \$120,000; rev. \$18,000. Chief town, PLYMOUTH (p. 1,400).

15. Nev-is is a single mountain, two miles south of St. Christopher. Exports: sugar, rum, molasses, &c., an. val. \$250,000; revenue \$32,000.

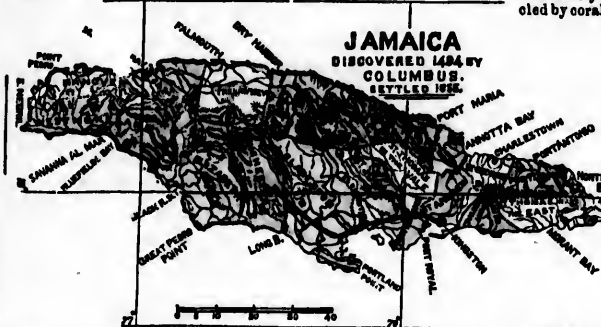
16. The Virgin Islands are a group of 100 small isles east of Porto Rico. They occupy a space of about 100 miles long, by 20 wide. Fifty of them, of which Toa-ro-la is the chief, are British; the others belong to Denmark and Spain. Exports: sugar, cattle, &c., annual value \$850,000. Roa'-ro-va, in Tortola, is the capital of the British islands.

17. Barbuda is a fertile island, producing grain, cotton, and tobacco. 18. The Windward Islands are as follows:

19. Barbados [-bay-] (the first British West-India Colony) is the most easterly, and the chief of the group. It is nearly encircled by coral-reefs.



The surface is highly picturesque. It is rich in coal and other minerals; and is one of the healthiest of the West-India Islands. Rains fall in November and December; but violent thunder-storms are not frequent. Of the 108,470 acres which it contains, 100,000 are under cultivation,—40,000 with sugar-cane. Exports consist of sugar, molasses, meal, flour, rum, &c., an. value \$7,345,000; revenue \$450,000. BRIDGETOWN (p. 23,000) is the capital. It is a gay, handsome city. Codrington College is on the east side of the island.

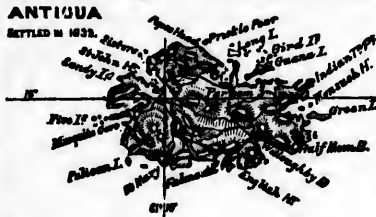


length is 150 miles, and its width 50. The Blue Mountains, in many places from 7,000 to 8,000 feet high, traverse its entire length. Its tropical vegetation is very exuberant. Toa's and Caines [kí'-koes] islands are annexed to Jamaica. Yearly revenue \$30,000; exports \$150,000.

9. Commerce, &c.—The chief exports are sugar, rum, coffee, spices, &c., annual value \$900,000; revenue \$1,200,000. SPANISH TOWN is the capital (pop. 6,000); but KINGSTON is the chief place of trade (pop. 35,000).

10. The Leeward Islands, the most north-easterly of the Lesser Antilles, and which lie east of Porto Rico, are as follows:

11. An-ti-gua [-tee'-gá] is the principal island of the group. The coast is indented, and rugged. The interior is rich and fertile. The climate is dry. Exports: sugar, rum, and molasses, an. val. \$1,650,000; revenue \$200,000. Chief towns: St. JOHN (the capital, pop. 15,500), FALMOUTH, and PARHAM.



12. Do-min-i-ca is of volcanic origin, and is the highest of the

Lesser Antilles. Though mountainous, the valleys are fertile. Exports: sugar, rum, cocoa, &c., annual value \$450,000; revenue \$72,500. Chief towns: Ro-sau [-so'] (the capital, pop. 5,000) and St. JOSEPH.

13. St. Christopher, (or St. Kitts), is traversed in the centre by a volcanic mountain-ridge; in the middle of which rises Mount Misery, 3,711 feet high. The scenery is beautiful, the soil fertile, and the climate healthy. There are four rivers, and several salt-ponds. Hurricanes occur occasionally: a terrific one visited the island in 1772. Exports: sugar, rum, &c., an. val. \$950,000; rev. \$120,000. BASSETERA [bas-ter'] (pop. 7,700) is the capital. The island of AN-GUILL-LA is a dependency.

20. St. Vincent, discovered by Columbus on the festival of that saint, is a hundred miles west of Barbados. A ridge of well-wooded hills runs north and south. Souf-fre, a volcanic mountain, is 3,000 feet high, with a crater 3 miles in circuit and 500 feet deep. The valleys are fertile, and the climate is humid. The exports are sugar, arrow-root, rum, &c., an. value \$1,205,000; rev. \$106,000. 120 islets called the GARRA-DINES [-deens'] are dependencies.

21. Tobago, twenty-four miles north-east of Trinidad, is a mass of rocks, with small picturesque valleys between them. The island, though unhealthy, is well watered. Exports: sugar, molasses, and rum, annual value \$362,500; revenue \$68,000. Capital, SCAANOUON (pop. 3,000).

22. Gren-a-da, north-west of Tobago, is a beautiful oblong island. The interior, traversed by volcanic mountains (some of them 3,000 feet high), is rugged and picturesque. In the centre is a circular lake, 1,700 feet above sea-level, and enclosed by lofty mountains. Streams are numerous. Exports: sugar, rum, cocoa, &c., annual value \$928,000; revenue \$88,500. St. George Town (p. 4,000) is the capital.

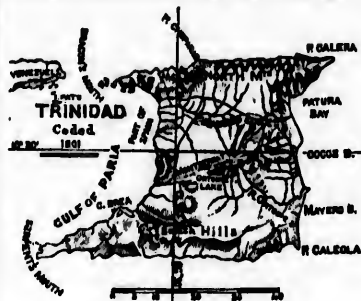
23. St. Lucia is twenty-one miles north by east of St. Vincent, and twenty miles south of the French island of Mar-ti-nique [-neek']. It has a rugged and mountainous surface; many of the heights are fantastic in appearance. The climate is insalubrious. The forests are dense, but the valleys are fertile and well cultivated. Exports: sugar, cocoa, &c., annual value \$475,000; revenue \$68,500. The chief towns are CAERRENS [kas'-tree] (the capital, pop. 3,000) and SOUVERRAIN.

24. Trinidad, next to Jamaica, is the most important of the British West-India Islands. It lies between Tobago and the north-east coast of Ven-ez-u-e-la, at the mouth of the Gulf of Pa-ri-a, and opposite the northern mouths of the Orinoco River. GATHERING SUGAR-CANE.



QUESTIONS.—What further is said of the Bahamas, and 7. their commerce, capital, &c.? 8. Point out on the map and describe Jamaica, its bays, harbours, ports or coves. 9. What is said of its commerce and chief town? 10. Point out on the map the Leeward Islands. 11. What is said of Antigua? 12. of Dominica? 13. of St. Christopher? 14. of Montserrat? 15. of Nevis? 16. of the Virgin Islands? 17. of Barbuda? 18. of the Windward Islands? 19. of Barbados? 20. of St. Vincent? 21. of Tobago? 22. of Grenada? 23. of St. Lucia? 24. of Trinidad? Point out on the map (p. 45) each of these islands.

the is occurs bitume in circ The so molasse of Br West I
Size, m...
26. West-port")
27. West-I It is 7...
28. Island of [kôw- Mountain tile, Ch revenue
CITY
29. C west con harbour narrow I
1. N ness, an ranges its trop
27. Point Hayti,
38. St. B



the island there are bubbling mud-volcanoes. A submarine volcano occurs on each side of the island; one discharges petroleum, the other bitumen. On the west side there is an asphaltum or pitch lake, 11 miles in circuit, and 80 feet above the sea. The climate is not unhealthy. The soil is fertile, and timber abundant. The exports are sugar, cocoa, molasses, rum, &c., annual value \$5,300,000; revenue \$727,000. **PORT OF SPAIN** (pop. 18,000), the capital, is one of the finest towns in the West Indies. The harbours on the south and west coasts are good.

THE SPANISH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

Size, more than half that of the W. I. Archipelago, or equal to a square of 230 miles.

26. Noted For.—CUBA is noted for being the largest of the West-India Islands, and for its fertility. **PORTO RICO** ("rich port"), a dependency of Cuba, is noted for its agriculture.

27. Position.—The island of Cuba, the most important of the West-India group, lies south of Florida in the United States. It is 700 miles long. The island of Porto Rico lies east of Hayti.

28. Physical Features, &c.—A mountain-range runs along the island of Cuba, dividing it into North and South Cuba. The **Cauto** (kōw'-ē), the largest river in the island, flows 70 miles from the Copper Mountains. The valleys and plains of the northern part are rich and fertile. Chief products tobacco, tropical fruits, and copper. Pop. 1,300,000; revenue \$19,000,000. The **ISLAND OF PINAS**, to the south, belongs to Cuba.



CITY OF HAVANNA, CUBA, CAPITAL OF THE SPANISH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

29. Cities.—**HAVANNA**, the capital, is admirably situated on the north-west coast of Cuba, and is a place of great commercial importance. The harbour is one of the best in America. The entrance to it is through a narrow passage half a mile long. A strongly-fortified castle guards either

25. Physical Features.—This island is oblong, with three long angular projections. From the north it appears like an immense ridge of rocks; from the south, the panorama of hill and valley is magnificent. The mountains, some 3,000 feet high, run east and west. The rivers are large. In the south-west of

side of the entrance. (See engraving.) The Cathedral, the Governor-General's Palace, the Post-Office, and the Arsenal are the principal edifices. Population 155,000. A railway connects the adjacent towns. The remains of Christopher Columbus, who died in 1606 at Valladolid (Spain), aged 70, were removed in 1839 from Seville (Spain) to San Domingo (Hayti), in 1806 to Havana, and in 1850 to a cemetery near that city. **HAVANNA** (pop. 20,000) is an important seaport. **SANTIAGO** (25,000) and **PUERTO PRINCEPE** (30,000) are important towns.

30. Porto Rico is a beautiful island, with a fine climate and fertile soil. Pop. 650,000. **SAN JOAN** (pop. 30,000) is the capital. The island of **CULEBRA** (koo'-lay'-brā), or **PASSAGE ISLAND**, belongs to Porto Rico.

HAYTI, OR SAN DOMINGO.

(Hayti, from *Asy-ti*, "high land.")

Size, about the same as New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 173 miles.

31. Position, &c.—The island of **HAYTI**, or **SAN DOMINGO**, lies between Cuba and Porto Rico. It is intersected by mountain-ranges and numerous rapid rivers. It has good harbours, and is highly fertile. The chief products are mahogany, dyewoods, coffee, cotton, tobacco, and fruit. A loadstone mountain rises in the interior.

32. Divisions.—Politically, the island is divided into two parts, called **HAYTI** and **DOMINICA**. **PORT-AU-PRINCE** (pop. 30,000), on the Bay of Gonaves ([-niv-]), is the capital of the empire of Hayti; and **SAN DOMINGO** (15,000), on the south coast, the capital of the republic of **DOMINICA**.

THE FRENCH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

Size, about a square of 41 miles.

33. Martinique, one of the Caribbean Isles, is separated from Guadeloupe ([-loop'] by Dominica. Pop. 138,000. It is rocky, and has an irregular coast-line. The interior is well wooded, and, where level, is fertile. The chief exports are sugar, coffee, &c. **PORT ROYAL** is the military capital. **ST. PIERRE** (p. 30,000) is the principal place of trade. It is the birth-place of Josephine, the first Queen of Napoleon I.

34. Guadeloupe lies south of Antigua. It is divided by a strait into two islands, called **GRANDE TERRE** and **BASSE TERRE**. Pop. 133,100. **BASSE TERRE** is volcanic, and contains the burning-mountain of Soufrière. **GRANDE TERRE** is of coral formation, and is less fertile. **MARIE GALANTE** (mā'-ree'-gā'-lant'), **DESHADES** (deh'-ze-rad'), and part of the island of **ST. MARTIN**, to the north, are dependencies. The chief exports are sugar, coffee, cocoa, spices, &c. **BASSE TERRE** is the capital. **POINT-A-PITRE** (pwant'-ā-pest') (p. 12,000) is the chief town in Grande Terre.

THE DANISH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

Size, about a square of 14 miles.

35. These Islands are **SANTA CRUZ**, **ST. THOMAS**, and **ST. JOHN**. **36. Santa Cruz** is the largest of the Virgin Islands. The northern part is hilly, but the interior is flat. The chief products are sugar and cotton. **CHRISTIANSTADT** (pop. 10,000) is the capital of the group. **37. St. Thomas** and **St. John** are two islands to the north of Santa Cruz. They are rocky and irregular. The capital of **ST. THOMAS** is a free port, and a chief station of the British West-India mail-steamers.

SWEDISH WEST-INDIA ISLAND.

Size, about a square of 5 miles.

38. St. Bartholomew, the only Swedish colony in America, lies between St. Martin and Barbuda. It is hilly. The exports are cotton and salt. The capital is **GUSTAVIA** (population 10,000).

THE DUTCH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS.

Size, about a square of 24 miles.

39. These Islands lie in the north and south parts of the Caribbean Sea. They are **ST. MARTIN** (in part), **SABA**, **ST. EUSTATIA**, **BOEN AVON** [bu-en-ay'-re], **CURAÇOA** [ku-rā-ō'-ā], **ORUBA**, &c.

40. St. Martin is at the north, among the Leeward Islands, east of Porto Rico. The Dutch own the southern part. It is steep and rocky. The chief exports are goats, hogs, poultry, sugar, and cotton.

41. Buen Ayre, Curaçoa, and Oruba are off the South-American coast. They are hilly, rather than mountainous. The chief exports are salt, timber, lime-juice, cochineal, and fruit. **WILLIAMSTADT** (p. 7,000) is the capital of the group, and is a place of considerable trade.

42. Venezuelan.—**MARACAITA**, **TORTUGA**, &c. belong to Venezuela. **ASCENSION** (pop. 1,500) is the capital.

SOUTH AMERICA.

Extreme length, 4,800 miles; extreme breadth, 3,250 miles; area, 6,400,000 square miles, or equal to a square of 2,530 miles.

1. Noted For.—**SOUTH AMERICA** is noted for its compactness, and its unbroken line of sea-coast; its magnificent mountain-ranges and noble rivers; its valuable timbers, and the profusion of its tropical productions; and its silver and diamond mines.

2. Extent.—**SOUTH AMERICA** extends from Panama to Tierra del Fuego, and from Cape Blanco to Cape St. Roque [roke].

3. The Physical Features of South America are on a grand scale. There are two great river-basins; viz. (1) the Amazon, at the North,

QUESTIONS.—25. What is said of the physical features of Trinidad? What is the size, and 26. for what are the Spanish West-India Islands noted? 27. Point out their position. 28. Describe the physical features of Cuba. 29. Describe Havanna. 30. Point out and describe Porto Rico. 31. The same of Hayti—its derivation, size, position, &c.; 32. its divisions; 33. The same of Martinique; 34. Guadeloupe; 35. Danish W. I.; 36. Santa Cruz; 37. St. Thomas; 38. St. Bartholomew; 39. Dutch W. I.; 40, 41. St. Martin, &c.; 42. Venezuelan. What is the size of S. America? 1. noted for? 2. extent? 3. phys. feat.?

and (2) the Rio de la Plata, at the South; and three lesser ones: viz. (1) the Magdalena, (2) the Orinoco, and (3) the Rio Para. The mountain-chains are (1) the Andes, which run in parallel ridges along the entire Pacific coast, and (2) the Brazilian Mountains, which traverse the whole eastern part of the country. The Brazilian ranges are the Parime [pa-res'-may] Mountains, at the north, and the Sierra de Espinaco [es-peen-yah'-so], at the south-east.

4. Physical Features of the North-East Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS AND STRAITS.	ISLANDS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAS.
CARIBBEAN.	De-ri-on, Venesuela [vee-nay'-way'-ah]. Para. Pinson.		Trinidad. Hoon Ayre. Curaçoa.	Gallinas. Pt. Barina. Curaçoa. St. Roque [St. roke].	Paraguana [pa-rá-nah'-ah].

5. Physical Features of the South-East Coast.

All Saints.	Ma-gol'-lan.	Falkland.	Frio.	Patagonia.
Paraguana [pa-rá-nah'-ah]. San Matias. St. George.	Le Maire. [swá].	Tierra del Fuego. St. Georgia.	St. Maria. Cor-rí-en-tes. St. Geo. Horn.	

6. Physical Features of the West Coast.

Penas [pen'-yas].	Magellan.	Wellington.	Pillar.	Tree Mon-
Gua-yquil. Cho-co. Pan-a-má.		Chile. Juan Fernan- des. St. Felis.	Ag-u-ya. St. Lorenzo. St. Francisco.	tes.

7. Physical Features of the Interior.

MOUNTAIN RANGES.	RIVERS FLOWING NORTH.	RIVERS FLOWING SOUTH.	RIVERS FLOWING EAST.	RIVERS FLOWING WEST.	LAKES.
ANDES (along the Pacific coast). Highest peak, 23,910 feet.	Magdalena, Cau-ca, 800 m. Rio Negro, 400 m. Madera, 4,000 m. U-cay-a, 1,000 ft.	300 m. Magdalo (La Am-a-son and Plata), 1,000 m.	Orinoco (in part), 1,800 miles. Am-a-son (in part), 4,000 m. Colorado, 700 m.		Maracay-bo. Til-a-cu-ca. Atlixera [ow'-yah'-gwa].
PARIME (Atlantic coast). Highest peak, 11,000 feet.	Orinoco (in part), 1,800 m. Essequibo [es-sé-kee'-bo], 450 m.	Rio Negro, St. E. (in part), 1,500 m.	Orinoco (in part), 1,200 miles.		
ESPINACO, &c. Highest peak, 8,500 feet.	St. Francisco (in part), Rio Para, 200 m. Xingu [sin-goo], 1,300 m.	Para'-na, (in part), 4,000 m. Paraguay, 1,600 m. Uruguay, 800.	St. Francisco (in part), 1,500 m. Rio de la Plata and trib., 2,000 m.		Pat-a. Mi-rim.

8. The Andes are a continuation of the great Rocky-Mountain chain of North America. (See section 10, page 14.) From the depression or break in the chain at the Isthmus of Panama (see section 8, page 14), they extend the whole length of South America, for 4,500 miles. The Andes range consists of a series of lofty ridges running parallel to each other, and covering one sixth of South America. Of the Andes (Span. *andé*, "a step"), A-con-ca-gua [-gwa], the highest summit, 23,910 feet, is east of Valparaiso.

9. The Amazon or Ma-rai'-on [-yon] is the largest but not the longest river on the Globe. Its length is 4,000 miles; that of the Mississippi is 3,450. The Amazon drains an area of 2,000,000 square miles; the Mississippi, 1,220,000 square miles. The Amazon rises its rise in the Andes in Peru within 30 miles of the Pacific Ocean, and flows in an easterly direction through South America to the South Atlantic Ocean, from which it is navigable for 3,500 miles inland. Its northern and southern sources are 1,000 miles apart. It has 200 tributaries. The principal are the Madera [ma-day-ra], 2,000 miles long; the Rio Negro, 1,500; the Ucayali [u-kyah'-le], and four others, 1,000 miles each. The *bars* (or tidal-waves at the mouth of the Amazon) occurs two days before and two days after full moon. Three or four of these waves, 15 or 20 feet high, rush in succession with great force, and irresistibly destroy small craft; for this cause the Indians have named the river A-ma'-so-na, or "boat-destroyer."

10. The Rio de la Plata is an estuary 200 miles long, and 170 miles wide at its mouth, formed by the union of the Parana and U'-ru-guay Rivers. The Paraguay, after a south-west course of 1,600 miles, joins the Parana above the town of Cor-rí-en-tes. The area drained by these rivers is about one fourth of South America.

11. The Chief Products include almost all the European grains and fruits. The indigenous plants are maize and tobacco; the man'-i-oo and cacao [kay'-co] or cocoa trees of the tropics; the cin-cho'-na, or Peruvian bark, and the potato of the Andes; the cow-wort of Guiana; and the ivory-palm, vanilla, sal-ap, and cactus plants of Mexico. Cotton, coffee, and sugar are among the staple commodities of Mexico.

QUESTIONS.—4. Point out on the map the physical features of the N. E. coast; 5. on the S. E. coast; 6. on the W. coast; and 7. of the interior. 8. Describe the Andes Mountains; 9. the Amazon, and 10. the Rio de la Plata Rivers. 11. Mention the chief products of South America; 12. antiquities. 13. Give the particulars in the table. Give the derivation and size of New Granada. 14. For what is it noted? 15. Describe its extent. 16. physical feet; 17. chief exports. 18, 19. What is said of the Isthmus of Panama, and of the cities of New Granada? 20-24. What is said of the republic of Venezuela?

12. Antiquities.—Like Mexico, the ancient civilization of South America, especially of Peru, seems to have attained a very high standard. The splendid ruins and remains of art in Central America, and the refinement and magnificence of the celebrated Incas, or original rulers of Peru, evoked the astonishment of their European conquerors three centuries ago.

13. The Political Divisions of South America are as follows:

NAME AND PROVINCIATION.	Extent in Eng. Sq. Miles.	Population.	CAPITALS and where situated.	Population.
NEW GRANADA (Gr. Con.) [nu-grá-nah'-da].	315,200	2,000,000	Bogotá, on San Francisco. [bo-go'-ta].	45,000
VENEZUELA (republic).....	468,712	1,400,000	Caracas, near north coast. [ts-ráh'-hah].	33,000
BRITISH GUIANA.....	76,000	254,000	Georgetown, on Demerara. [jor'-town].	25,000
FRENCH GUIANA.....	26,500	17,148	Cayenne, on Gulf of coast. [kay'-yenn].	5,000
DUTCH GUIANA.....	28,500	55,500	Paramaribo, on Surinam. [par-a-mar'-i-bo].	20,000
BRAZIL (empire).....	2,850,000	3,000,000	Rio de Janeiro, E. coast. [rye-de-já-nei-ro].	200,000
ECUADOR (republic).....	285,000	750,000	Quito, on Imbabura R. [kee-to].	70,000
PERU (republic).....	508,000	2,000,000	Lima, on Limaes River. [per'-u].	73,000
BOLIVIA (republic).....	374,500	2,235,000	Chuquisaca, n. Pichumayo. [bo-lee-ah].	25,000
CHILE (republic).....	146,000	1,200,000	Santiago, on Mapocho R. [chee'-le].	50,000
LA PLATA (Argen. Confed.)	1,130,000	1,300,000	Buenos Ayres, on R. de la Plata [lah-plá-ta].	123,000
PARAGUAY (republic).....	85,000	605,000	Asunción, on Paraguay R. [pah-rá-gway].	25,000
URUGUAY (republic).....	190,000	325,000	Montevideo, on Rio de la Plata. [ur-roo-gway].	25,000
PATAGONIA AND TIERRA DEL FUEGO. [pat-a-gone'-yah'-te-er'-ra-dee-foe-goo].	350,000	400,000	Punta A-re-vé-na, on the Strait of Magellan. [pá-ta-gone'-yah'-te-er'-ra-dee-foe-goo].	.....
FALKLAND ISLANDS (Br.) [fawk'-landz].	14,000	1,000	Port Louis, on S. Falkland Island.....	400

CONFEDERATED REPUBLIC OF NEW GRANADA.

(Named from *Grenada*, a town of Spain.)

Size, one third larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 750 miles.

14. Noted For.—NEW GRANADA is noted for its celebrated Isthmus of Panama (also called Darien), and for its emerald-mines. 15. Extent.—The republic of the Granadian Confederation (eight States) extends from Costa Rica to the River Amazon.

16. Physical Features.—The three-fold range of the Andes, which stretches from the north, unites into one at the boundary of Ecuador, forming the Knot of Pasco. Within these ranges, the Magdalena River with its tributaries flows for 1,000 miles northward to the Caribbean Sea. Along the eastern range, the tributaries of the Orinoco River take their rise; and some of the tributaries of the Amazon water the extensive plain at the south. The soil is fertile. On the grass-plains, or llanos, immense herds of horses and cattle feed.

17. The Chief Exports are the usual tropical products, medicinal herbs, gold, silver, iron, platinum, salt, and emerald.

18. The Isthmus of PANAMA forms the link between N. and S. America, and is now the passenger-route by railway between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. The GALAPAGOS ISLES, a group in the Pacific Ocean near the Equator, were ceded to the United States in 1854.

19. Cities.—BOGOTÁ, the capital, (pop. 45,000,) lies on the fertile plateau of the Eastern Andes, 9,000 feet above the sea, and is well built. It is subject to earthquakes. Near it are the famous emerald-mines, and a cataract on the Bogotá River 600 feet high. CAR-TA-O'E'-NA (pop. 10,000) is the principal seaport. CHAC'-RES is a mail-station. AS'-ZIN-WALL and PANAMA are important ports, 45 miles apart; the former on the Atlantic, the latter on the Pacific, side of the Isthmus of Panama. They are connected by a railway, which has now become the chief route to the Pacific.

THE REPUBLIC OF VENEZUELA.

(*Little Venice*: Vesputius having found a village on Lake Maracaybo built on piles.) Size, more than one third larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 622 miles.

20. Noted For.—VENEZUELA is noted for its llanos or plains. 21. Position.—This republic lies east of New Granada.

22. Physical Features, &c.—The Parime or Eastern Andes extend along the south, and the Sierra-Pa-ca-rai-ma [-ry'-] Mountains along the north, enclosing the richly-fertile valley of the Orinoco River. The extensive llanos or plains slope towards the mouth of this fine river. Salt, coal, and copper are abundant.

* Lake Maracaybo is an island extension of the Gulf of Venezuela.

23. The Chief Exports are cattle, tropical produce, pearl-oysters, &c.
 24. Cities.—CARACAS, the capital, is on the north coast; also VALEN-
 CIA (pop. 16,000), CU-MA-NA' (12,000), and MARACAYBO (14,000). AN-GOS-
 TU'-NA (4,000) is on the Orinoco. VA-RI-NAS [-'ree'] lies inland. — — —

BRITISH, FRENCH, AND DUTCH GUIANA.

(From *Gu-a-yan'-o-sis*, a native Indian tribe.)

Size, nearly one fourth smaller than Upper Canada, or equal to a square of 276 m.

25. Noted For.—GUIANA is noted for its fertility, for its spices and firewoods, and for its belonging to three European powers.

26. Extent.—It extends from Venezuela to the O-ya-pok' River.

27. British Guiana lies between Brazil and the River Co-ren-ty'n, and includes the districts of DAM-BA-NA, KA-SU-QUI-RO, and BAN-NION [-'beee']. The coast-line is low and sandy, and, like Holland, it is banked to keep out the sea. The first elevations are sand-hills; behind them the land is undulating. The interior is diversified by chains of mountains. In the Pacaraima, the loftiest range, an elevation of 7,500 feet (Mount Ro-rai-ma) is attained. The Sierra-A-ca-rai [-'ry'] chain is densely wooded.

28. Rivers, &c.—The Essequibo River is 450 miles long, and 15 or 20 miles wide at its mouth; the Demerara, 200 miles long and navigable for 100 miles; the Corentyne, 250 miles long and navigable for 180 miles; the Berbice, 250 miles long and navigable for 165 miles. The Victoria-Rigia water-way was discovered up the Berbice. The cascades in several rivers are grand and picturesque; they vary from 300 to 1,500 feet in height.

29. Climate, Products, &c.—There are two wet and two dry seasons. During the dry seasons the climate is agreeable. There are violent thunder-storms, but no hurricanes. Vegetation is luxuriant. The pine-apple, the tamarind, and other tropical fruits abound. Chief exports: sugar, rum, &c., annual value \$7,000,000; revenue \$1,412,000.

30. Chief Towns.—GEORGETOWN (p. 25,500), the capital, at the mouth of the Demerara; NEW AMSTERDAM (3,500), BERBICE, and DEMERARA.

31. French Guiana is the eastern portion, and lies between the rivers Ma-ro-ri' and Oyapok. The soil is fertile and well watered; but the climate is not so healthy as in other parts of Guiana. CAIRNAS (p. 6,000), the capital, is on an island of that name. Exports: pepper and spices.

32. Dutch Guiana separates French from British Guiana. Its physical features are similar to those of British Guiana. Su-rin-am' is the principal river, and gives a name to the colony. PAR-A-MAR-I-NO (pop. 20,000), the capital, on this river, is five miles inland. Fort ZA-LAK-DI-A, near the capital, is the residence of the Dutch Governor-General.

THE EMPIRE OF BRAZIL.

(From *bras-sa*, the name of the red-wood of the country.)

Size, one fourth larger than British N. America, or equal to a square of 1,963 miles.

33. Noted For.—BRAZIL is noted for its great River Amazon; its luxuriant forests; its wild animals, and birds of brilliant plumage; and its gold and diamond mines, and tropical productions.

34. Position.—This empire embraces the whole of the great eastern projection of South America from Venezuela to Uruguay.

35. Physical Features.—This extensive country is drained chiefly by the noble River Amazon. A range of mountains separates the empire from Venezuela and Guiana to the north; and another, at the south, with numerous branches, separates the tributaries of the Amazon from those of the La Plats. There are very few high mountains; but vast plains occur between the rivers, and dense forests in the interior.

36. Soil, Climate, Products, &c.—The soil is rich and fertile, and, except at the Equator (north of the Amazon), the climate is mild and agreeable. The luxuriant forests are filled with almost every kind of dangerous animals, reptiles, and insects, and with birds of brilliant plumage. The extensive plains are the abodes of immense herds of wild cattle and horses. Of trees, the palm-species predominates; but flowering trees and shrubs are here met with in all their gorgeousness and variety. The chief exports are sugar, coffee, cotton, hides, drugs, dye and other woods, annual value \$90,000,000; revenue \$22,000,000; debt \$35,000,000. The diamond-mines of Brazil are the richest in the world. Its mineral wealth is also great.

37. Cities.—RIO DE JANEIRO ("January River") (p. 290,000), the capital, and the largest city in South America, is situated on a fine bay of the same name. For situation and commercial facilities, this city is one of the finest in the world. The harbour, bay, and mountain scenery are highly picturesque. The city is supplied, by a noble aqueduct, with abundance of water. The churches, charitable institutions, and other public buildings are numerous. PA-BA' (pop. 14,000), CO-ME-PA (20,000), and MAR-AN-HAM (30,000), at the north. FER-NAM-BU-CO (27,000), near the middle of the coast, the seat of a university, BA-RU-A (125,000), farther south, and SALVADOR (25,000), west of Rio de Janeiro, are places of considerable trade. Brazil was a Portuguese colony until 1815; then a kingdom; and in 1822-25 an empire.

QUESTIONS.—Give the derivation and size of Guiana. 25. For what is it noted? 26. Point out its extent. 27. Point out and describe British Guiana. 28. Describe its rivers, &c.; 29. climate, &c.; 30. chief towns; 31. French Guiana; 32. Dutch Guiana. Give the derivation and size of Brazil. 33. For what is it noted? 34. Point out its position. 35. What is noted of its physical features? 36. soil, &c. 37. cities? Give the derivation and size of Ecuador. 38. For what is it noted? 39. Point out its position. 40. Describe its physical features, and 41. cities. 42-45. The same of Peru; 46-49. The same of Bolivia.

THE REPUBLIC OF ECUADOR.

(From *Equator*; the capital of the country being under the Equinoctial line.)

Size, one sixth smaller than Canada, or equal to a square of 276 miles.

39. Noted For.—ECUADOR is noted for its volcanic mountains. 39. Position.—It lies west of Brazil, on the Pacific coast.

40. Physical Features.—The Andes run in a double range, 20 miles apart and 100 miles inland. Some of its loftiest peaks are to be found here; viz. the celebrated Chim-bo-ra-so (21,420 feet high), Cay-am'-be (19,800), An-ti-sa-na (19,140), and the truncated volcanic cone of Co-to-pax-i (18,000). Six or eight others higher than Mont Blanc occur, and all within a distance of 250 miles. Owing to the deep valleys in the mountain-ranges, and the high table-lands, the climate and products vary a good deal, and combine those of Brazil and New Granada. On the plains of Quito there is perpetual spring.

41. Cities.—QUITO (p. 70,000), the capital, a handsome city, lies near the Equator, on the site of the extinct volcano of Pi-chin'-cha. Its churches, college, and charitable institutions are fine structures. Eleven snow-peaks are within sight of the city. It has suffered much from earthquakes. CUENCA [kwen'-ka] (20,000), RI-O-NAM-BA (20,000), on the eastern slope of the Andes, and GUAYAQUIL [gwya'-a-keel'] (18,000), on the coast, are important towns.

THE REPUBLIC OF PERU.

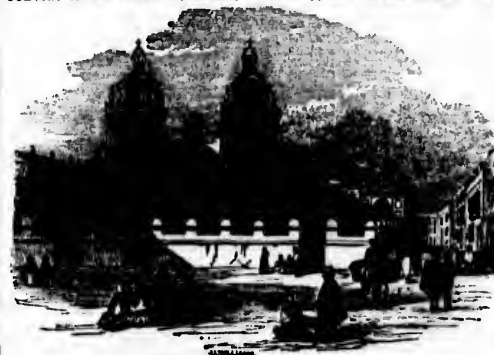
Size, nearly one third larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 710 miles.

42. Noted For.—PERU is noted for its silver and other mines; its medicinal bark, its guano, and its great length of Pacific coast.

43. Position.—It lies south of Ecuador, on the Pacific coast.

44. Physical Features, &c.—One third of the principal range of the Andes is within the borders of Peru. A second parallel range is divided into two by the Ucayali River and tributaries, which run northward to the Amazon. About half of Peru is a mountainous region; the other half is sandy, with many fertile table-lands and valleys. Peru is rich in minerals; and these, with Peruvian bark, indigo, chinchilla-fur, and guano, are the chief articles of export, annual value \$16,500,000.

45. Cities.—LIMA (p. 72,000), on the coast, is the capital. A railway connects it with CALLAO [kal-yah'-o] (20,000), its seaport, seven miles distant. It is a regular and well-built city. Principal buildings: the Cathedral, Convent of San Francisco, Palace, University, and Senate-House. The



CONVENT OF SAN FRANCISCO, LIMA.

streets radiate from a fine public square. PASCO (p. 10,000), in the interior, and CUSCO [koo'-ko] (45,000) and AREQUIPA [a-ray-kee'-pa] (35,000), in the mountain-region, are the other chief towns.

THE REPUBLIC OF BOLIVIA.

(Named from *Simon Bolivar*, who liberated it from the Spaniards in 1825.)

Size, a little smaller than Canada, or equal to a square of 619 miles.

46. Noted For.—BOLIVIA is noted for its extensive plains; and for its desert of Atacama, on the Pacific coast.

47. Position.—This republic lies south of Peru, and between Brazil and the Pacific Ocean. Its position is almost inland.

48. Physical Features, &c.—This country possesses almost every variety of physical aspect, soil, and climate. An inner range of mountains runs southwards, and parallel to the Pacific chain. Between

er
to
he
th
ch
Bu
5
5
60
betw
State
61.
(4,500
specie
The na
I. r
regard
influen
2. E
Arctic
and th
Marmo
Que
Give the
&c. of Pe
the deriv

REPUBLIC OF CHILI—CONTINENT OF EUROPE.

81

these two ranges are the elevated lakes Titicaca and Aullagas. Titicaca is on the boundary of Peru, and was the seat of the Incas. The products and exports are similar to those of Peru.

49. Cities.—CHUQUIBACCA (pop. 25,000), the capital, stands in the fine valley of a table-land in the interior, and between two rivers flowing in opposite directions. Near it is POTOSÍ (17,000), famous for its silver-mines, and COCHA-RAMBA (30,000), LA PAZ (43,000), near Lake Titicaca, has a large transit-trade.

THE REPUBLIC OF CHILI, OR CHILE.

Size, a little smaller than Upper Canada, or equal to a square of 278 miles.

50. Noted For.—CHILI is noted for its narrow width and extensive coast-line, and for its lofty mountain-peaks.

51. Position.—It lies east of La Plata, on the Pacific coast.

52. Physical Features, &c.—Numerous hilly spurs jut out from the Andes towards the coast, forming deep ravines and many fertile valleys. In the Chilean Andes are numerous volcanoes. The rivers are short, but the Biobío is 200 miles long. The chief products are silver, copper, wheat, eggs, olives, and grapes. The climate is very healthy. Of this coast is the island of Juan-Fernández, on which Alexander Selkirk was wrecked, and whose adventures suggested to Daniel Defoe the story of "Robinson Crusoe."

53. Cities.—SANTIAGO (p. 80,000), the capital, is in the centre of Chili, at the foot of the Andes. A railway connects it with VAL-PAISADO ("Valle de Parícuti") (73,500), the chief seaport. CONCEPCIÓN [kon-sep-she-own'] (10,000), and SAN CARLOS on the island of Chilo (2,500), are at the south.

LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.

(From the *plata*, "silver," and *argentina*, "silver.")
Size, one third that of British North America, or equal to a square of 1,010 miles.

54. Noted For.—LA PLATA is noted for its vast plains or pampas, and for its herds of cattle and wild horses.

55. Position.—The republic of the Argentine Confederation (including Buenos Ayres) extends from Chili to Patagonia, and forms the great south-eastern slope of South America.

56. Physical Features, &c.—The interior is a vast plain; the southern part of which is called the Pampas, in the centre of which is an extensive saline desert. On these pampas (or treeless plains) are immense herds of cattle and wild horses, which are captured with the lasso by the shepherd-hunters. Ostriches also abound on these plains. The Buenos Ayres separated in 1853, but rejoined the Confederation in 1860.

57. Cities.—BUENOS AYRES (from the Spanish for "good breezes," on account of the salubrity of the climate), the capital, is on the Rio de la Plata. It is a well-built city, with an extensive trade. Pop. 122,000. RAMEN-DO-CA (12,000), formerly the capital, is on the river of that name. SALTA (9,000), at the foot of the Andes, SALTA (9,000), on a branch of the Salado (12,000), and CARMÉN, at the N., are the other chief towns.

THE REPUBLIC OF PARAGUAY.

Size, about three times that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 200 miles.

58. Noted For.—PARAGUAY is noted for being entirely inland.

59. Position.—This republic lies between La Plata and Brazil.

60. Physical Features, &c.—This country forms the high table-land between the Paraná and Paraguay Rivers, and is the only inland State in South America. The soil is fertile, and the climate temperate.

61. Cities, &c.—ASUNCIÓN (pop. 25,000), the capital, and CONCEPCIÓN (4,500), are on the Paraguay River. Their chief exports are the leaves of a species of holly called *yerba mate* (or Paraguay tea), hides, tobacco, sugar, &c.

III. THE CONTINENT OF EUROPE.

The name of Europe is supposed to be derived from the "broad-browed" Euro-pa, daughter of Asop-nor, a Phœnician king; or from two Greek words, *eu-ros* and *opa*, signifying "broad view"; or from the Phœnician words *eu-ros*, "fair aspect" or complexion; or from *Wpa*, a Semitic word signifying "the West," or the "land of Sunset;" or distinguished it from *Le-vent*, or the "region of Sunrise."

Size, about one quarter larger than British North America, or equal to a square of 3,000 miles.

1. Noted For.—EUROPE, though smallest in extent, is, in regard to Christian civilization, extensive commerce, and political influence, the most important division of the Globe.

2. Boundaries.—Europe is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and the Ural Mountains; on the south by the Mediterranean, Marmora, and Black Seas; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean.

QUESTIONS.—Give the size of Chili. 50. For what is it noted? 51. Point out its position on the map; 52. physical features; 53. chief cities. 54-57. Give the derivation, size, &c. of La Plata. 58-61. Give the size, &c. of Paraguay. 62-65. Give the size, &c. of Uruguay. 66, 67. Give the derivation, size, &c. of Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego; 68-70. of the Falkland Islands; 71, 72. of Pitcairn Island. 73. What is said of the Antarctic Regions? Give the derivations and size of Europe. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out on the map its boundaries; 3. its physical features; and 4. its river-basins.

REPUBLIC OF URUGUAY, or BANDA ORIENTALE.

Size, about half that of Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 200 miles.

62. Noted For.—URUGUAY is noted for having been the eastern boundary (or *banda orientale*) of the regions formerly composing Spanish America.

63. Position.—This republic lies east of La Plata.

64. Physical Features, &c.—A double range of mountains from Brazil encloses the valley of the Rio Negro. The climate is humid but healthy, and the soil is generally good. The exports are hides, &c.

65. Cities.—MONTE VIDEO (pop. 35,000), the capital, on the north side of the La-Plata estuary, is well fortified. It is well and regularly built.

PATAGONIA AND TIERRA DEL FUEGO.

(From the Spanish *pat-a-gos*, "large foot," and *tierra del fuego*, "land of fire.")
Size, about as large as Canada, or equal to a square of 618 miles.

66. Noted For.—PATAGONIA and TIERRA DEL FUEGO are noted for being the southern extremity of the American Continent.

67. Physical Features, &c.—In the Andes, which terminate in Patagonia, are several volcanoes. The interior is a vast plain, and is variously sterile. It is overrun by immense herds of wild animals of Sovereignty over these countries is claimed by the adjoining states.

THE FALKLAND ISLANDS.

Size, about the same as the British West Indies, or equal to a square of 190 miles.

68. Noted For.—THE FALKLAND ISLANDS are chiefly noted as a rendezvous for British shipping in the South Atlantic.

69. Position.—These islands are situated 300 miles east of Patagonia. There are two large and about 150 smaller islands. EAST and WEST FALKLAND are separated by a narrow sound.

70. Physical Features, Climate, &c.—The whole group of islands is much indented with bays, sounds, and harbours. The climate is equable and salubrious. There are no trees; but sweet-scented flowers abound. The chief products are cattle, horses, and vegetables. Yearly value of exports \$75,000; revenue \$45,000. This group was taken possession of by England for the protection of the southern whale-fishery to Great Britain, but the climate is too cold for settlement.

PITCAIRN ISLAND.

So called from its discoverer. Size, 21 miles long, by 1 wide.

71. Noted For.—PITCAIRN ISLAND is noted for having been settled, in 1790, by the mutineers of His Majesty's ship *Bounty*.

72. This Island, in the Pacific Ocean, was discovered in 1767. The English war-ship *Bounty*, by John Adams, one of the mutineers of the *Bounty*, and twenty-six other persons. The colony has been removed to Norfolk Island, Australia (see page 92).

THE ANTARCTIC REGIONS.

73. These Regions, which lie directly opposite to the Arctic or Northern Regions, include a vast area of nearly 4,000,000 square miles of almost inaccessible ice and water. On the map of the Western Hemisphere (page 12) it will be seen that they project beyond the Antarctic Circle; the SOUTH SHETLAND ISLANDS being only 450 miles from Tierra del Fuego, and VICTORIA LAND 540 miles from the Emerald Isles, and thence to New Zealand 650. ENDEBBY'S LAND, on the map of the Eastern Hemisphere, is about 1,500 miles from Africa, and SARRIEN and ADRIEL LAND about the same distance from Tasmania. Victoria Land was discovered in 1840 by Sir James C. Ross. It is very cold and mountainous. Mount Erebus a lofty volcanic peak 13,400 feet above the sea. To the west is the South Magnetic-Pole, also discovered by Sir James, in 1841. There are likewise various islands, chiefly volcanic; but they are too inhospitable for habitation.

...ect line.)
... miles.
... mountains.
... coast.
... 20 miles
... to be found
... Cay-am-be
... cease of Co-
... Blanc occur,
... deep valleys
... climate and
... soil and New
...
... lies near the
... its churches,
... an snow-peaks
... earthquakes,
... eastern slope of
... are impor-
...
... 710 miles.
... other mines;
... Pacific coast.
... Pacific coast.
... range of the
... range is divid-
... run north-
... region; the
... leys. Peru is
... chinchilla-fur,
... \$18,500,000.
... A railway con-
... miles distant,
... the Cathedral,
... -House. The

... in the inter-
... (35,000),
...
... islands in 1855.)
... 813 miles.)
... extensive plains;
...
... and between
... at inland.
...
... almost every
... range of moun-
... chain. Between
... British Guiana.
... l. 33. For what is
... Ecuador. 38. For
... me of Bolivia.

in Southern Russia; the Dan-ube, in Austria and Turkey; the O-der, Elbe, Wes-er, and Rhine, in North-Western Europe; the Po, in Northern Italy; the Rhone, Loire (Ivair), and Seine (seine), in France; the E-bro, Guediana, Te-gus, and Dou-ro, in Spain; the Thames (tema) and Sev-ern, in England; the Shannon, Barrow, and Liffey, in Ireland; and the Tay and Clyde, in Scotland.

5. Physical Features of the North Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS AND STRAITS.	ISLANDS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAS.
WHITE (an inlet of the Arctic Ocean).	Va-rang-er.		Nova Zem-bla ("new Spitzberg'n).	North-land").	

8. Physical Features of the North-West Coast.

BALTIC (between Southern Sweden and Russia).	Bothnia. Finland. Bl-ga. Cattegat. Skag'er Rack.	Sound. Great Belt. Little Belt.	Aland. Gothland. O-se-l. Zooland. Land. Fu-nen.	Nee-s. Skaw.	Norway & Sweden. Denmark.
--	--	---------------------------------	---	--------------	---------------------------

7. Physical Features of the West Coast.

NORTH (between Britain and Denmark).	Mor-ay Frith. Frith of Forth. Wash. Solway Sea.	North. Bristol. English. Dover.	Fa-roe. Shetland. Orkney. Heb-ridee.	Wrath. Clear. Land's End. Hagu-e. Fin-Is-ter-re. Ortagal. St. Vincent.	Cornwall. Britanny.
IRISH (between Ireland and England).	Biscay.	St. George's.	Great Britain. Ireland. Channel.		

8. Physical Features of the South Coast.

CASPIAN. A-rov.	Sa-ion-i-oo. Lo-pan-to. E-ge-na.	Yen-i-ka-leh. Bosporus. Dardanelles. O-tran-to. Messina. Bonifacio.	Cyo-la-des. Spor-a-des. Candia. (Candia. Te-u-la-da. St. Martin. Haguo. [ak-lood']. Gals. Tarifa.	Mat-a-pan. Spartivento. Hassero. Pa-jos [ak-lood']. Gals. Tarifa.	Cri-mo-a. Greece. Sic-ily. Spain and Portugal.
MAR-MO-RA.	Taranto.	Dover.			
MEDITERRANEAN. E-M-AN.	Tri-est'e. Ven-ice. Naples. Gen'o-a.	St. George's.	Malta. [maul-tk]. Corsica. Sardinia. Balearic. Gibraltar. [jib-raw'-tar].		
IONIAN. ADRIATIC.	Lyons.				

9. Physical Features of the Interior.

MOUNTAIN RANGES.*	RIVERS FLOWING NORTH.	RIVERS FLOWING SOUTH.	RIVERS FLOWING EAST.	RIVERS FLOWING WEST.	LAKES.
USAL. Highest peak, 5,397 feet.	Petchora, 900 m. Mesen, 400 m. Dwica, 700 m. G-ne-ga, 300 m.	Ural, 1,190 m. Don, 2,000 m. Dnieper, 1,200 m.	2,350.	Ural (in part), 1,150 m.	Ladoga. Onega. Pei-pous. Bi-ann'a.
SCANDINAVIAN (Norway). Highest peak, 5,785 feet.	AM (So.).	Tornea, 600 m. Dahl. Glommen, 400 m.	tha, 400 m. 250 miles. Umea, 200 m.		Wen-er. Wetter. Malar.
BALKAN (Turkey). Highest peak, 9,282 feet.		Ma-ris-na, 200 m. Vardar, 170 m.	Danube (in part), 1,850 m.		Och-ri-da. Ja-ni-na.
CARPATHIAN. Highest peak, 9,282 feet.	Vistula, 228 m. Oder, 250 m. Elbe (in pt.), 690 m.		Danube (in part), 1,650 miles. Dniester, 600 [nee-ter].		Be-la-ton.
ALPS. Highest peak, 15,310 ft.	Elbe (in pt.), 690 m. Rhine, 760 m. Seine, 430 m.	Rhone, 860 m. Adige [ad'-e-jay], 290 m.	Danube (in part), 1,650 m. Po (in part), 450 m.	Loire, 570 m.	Swiss and Sardinian Lakes.
AP-ENNINES. Highest peak, 9,420 feet.			Po (in part), 450 m.	Arno, 75 m.	
PYRENEES. Highest peak, 11,623 feet.			Ebro, 420 m.	Garon'ne, NW 250 m. Dou-ro, 400 m.	

* The mountain-ranges of Europe generally lie in the direction of the parallels of latitude, while those in America lie in an opposite direction. (See page 14.)

10. The Ural Mountains are chiefly rounded, plateau-shaped elevations extending 1,500 miles from the Arctic Ocean, the highest southwards towards the Caspian Sea. The central ridge divides Europe from Asia.

11. The Scandinavian Mountains extend northwards 900 miles through Norway and Sweden. They are a series of lofty summits rather than mountain-chains. Glad-hop'-pi-gen, the highest peak, is in Norway.

12. The Carpathian Mountains, divided into the East and West

Carpathians, are 800 miles in length, and form a semicircular belt round Hungary.

13. The Alps run 450 miles in the same direction as the Pyrenees, and culminate in Mont Blanc (blong) (in France). This mountain attains an elevation of 15,310 feet above the sea-level, and its summit is the highest point in Europe. The Alps separate France and Switzerland from Italy.

14. The Pyrenees, a double chain of mountains, 20 miles apart, except at the centre, separate France from Spain, and extend 270 miles east and west. The peaks of the Pyrenees are not so lofty as those of the Alps.

15. The Volga is the greatest river in Europe. It flows through the great Russian plain, and empties itself into the Caspian Sea. Length 2,550 miles.

16. The Danube, next to the Volga, is the largest river in Europe. It drains the chief part of Southern Germany and European Turkey, and after a course of 1,630 miles, falls into the Black Sea by several mouths. It has numerous tributaries, and is the great commercial highway of South-Eastern Europe. Its basin is rich and fertile.

17. Climate.—It is cold at the north; but as three fourths of the Continent lie within the temperate zone, the climate of Central Europe is invigorating, while toward the South it is mild and balmy.

18. Chief Products.—Oranges, citrons, figs, the vine, rice, and tobacco are cultivated in the South; but apples, pears, peaches, and walnuts are the principal European fruits. The trees are the oak, beech, fir, chestnut, pine, &c. All kinds of grain grow south of Finland and of the middle of Norway and Sweden. Iron, lead, copper, and tin are the principal mineral productions of Europe. Coal abounds chiefly in Great Britain and Belgium.

19. The Population of Europe is estimated at 275,000,000. The most densely-peopled countries, for their areas, are Belgium, Britain, and Holland.

20. Religion.—The Christian religion, as professed by the Protestant, Roman-Catholic, and Greek Churches, is established in every part of Europe; except in Turkey, where Mohammedanism prevails.

21. The Political Divisions of Europe amount to 51; namely, 4 empires, 14 kingdoms, 1 ecclesiastical state, 5 grand-duchies, 7 duchies, 12 principalities, 4 republics, and 4 free towns. The chief powers are:

22. The Five Great Powers of Europe.

NAME, AND FORM OF GOVERNMENT.	Extent in Eng. Square Miles.	Popula-tion.	CAPITAL, and name of river on which it stands.	Popula-tion.	Dist'nce from London.
GREAT BRITAIN & IRELAND, kingd.....	122,550	29,000,000	{ London, on the Thames.....	2,500,000	.....
FRANCE, empire.....	207,222	36,500,000	{ Paris, on the Seine.....	1,100,000	218
RUSSIA IN EUROPE, empire.....	2,130,400	64,000,000	{ St. Petersburg, on the Neva.....	534,000	1,300
AUSTRIA, empire.....	249,532	36,600,000	{ Vienna, on the Danube { Berthe, on the Spree.....	580,000	770
PRUSSIA, kingdom.....	106,400	17,740,000		464,000	568

23. The Second-Rate Powers.

ITALY, kingdom.....	103,530	23,000,000	Turin, on the Po; Madrid, on the Tagus tributary.....	180,000	574
SPAIN, kingdom.....	194,723	16,500,000	{ Stockholm, on Lake Maler.....	302,000	800
NORWAY AND SWEDEN, kingdom.....	296,000	5,150,000	{ Copenhagen, on the Bosporus.....	101,500	884
TURKEY IN EUROPE, empire.....	203,000	18,700,000	{ Constantinople, on the Bosporus.....	580,000	1,300
PORTUGAL, kingdom.....	3,000	600,000	{ Rome, on the Tiber.....	180,500	800

24. The Third-Rate Powers.

HOLLAND, OF NETHERLANDS, kingdom.....	12,618	3,545,000	{ Amsterdam, on the Amstel.....	200,100	100
BELGIUM, kingdom.....	11,312	4,622,000	{ Brussels, on the Seine, a trib. of the Scheldt.....	260,700	194
PORTUGAL, kingdom.....	35,270	3,870,000	{ Lisbon, on the Tagus.....	280,000	1,000
HANOVER, kingdom.....	14,850	1,850,000	{ Hanover, on the Leine, a tributary of the Weser.....	56,000	420
WURTEMBERG, kingdom.....	7,600	1,790,000	{ Stuttgart, near the Neckar, a Rhine tributary.....	51,700	445
BAVARIA, kingdom.....	29,310	4,630,000	{ Munich, on the Isar, tributary of the Danube.....	187,000	580
DENMARK, kingdom.....	21,856	2,480,000	{ Copenhagen, on the Sound.....	148,600	567
SAKONY, kingdom.....	5,777	2,122,200	{ Dresden, on the Elbe.....	118,000	470
SWITZERLAND, republic.....	15,261	2,500,000	{ Bern, on the Aar, a Rhine trib.....	84,000	400
GREECE, kingdom.....	15,237	1,160,000	{ Athens, between the Cephissus and the Ilissus.....	38,500	1,470
DUCHIES and lesser States.....	74,600	4,100,000	Various.....	Various.	Various.

* These States, though small in extent, occupy this rank by virtue of the great ecclesiastical authority exercised by the Pope as the supreme Head of the Roman-Catholic Church throughout the World.

QUESTIONS.—5. Point out on the map the seas, gulfs, channels, straits, islands, &c. on the north coast of Europe; 6. on the north-west; 7. west; and 8. south coasts. 9. Point out the position of the mountains, rivers, and lakes of the interior. 10. Point out and describe the Ural Mountains; 11. Scandinavian Mountains; 12. Carpathian Mountains; 13. Alps; 14. Pyrenees; 15. the Volga, and 16. Danube Rivers. 17. What is said of the climate? 18. products? 19. population? 20. religion? 21. political div.? 22-24. Point out on the map and give the particulars of each country of Europe in the three tables.



THE PRINCIPAL ANIMALS ON THE CONTINENT OF EUROPE. (For names of the Animals in this engraving, see section 25.)

25. List of Animals.—All the useful animals are found in Europe; such as the horse, the cow, the sheep, the goat, the ass, and the reindeer. Nearly all the wild animals have disappeared. Those left are the deer, the chamois, the ibex, the wild-boar, the wolverine, the wolf, and the hedgehog. There are also the rat and the mouse. Singing-birds are numerous, especially the nightingale, the thrush, and the lark. Of other birds there are the swan, the bittern, the duck, the pheasant, and the owl.

THE KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

I. The British Empire embraces the British Isles; and the following Colonial possessions and dependencies of the Crown,—to visit which in succession, we may start from London, the great capital of the empire, and, with a glance at

HEL-I-GO-LAND, near the mouth of the Elbe, proceed down the Channel and across the Bay of Biscay. Thence rounding Spain, we touch first at **GIBRALTAR**, an impregnable fortress. Entering the Strait of Gibraltar, we pass along the shores of the Mediterranean, and land at **MALTA**, celebrated for St. Paul's visit; and thence we reach the

IONIAN ISLES (Cor-fu, Zan-te, &c.). Retracing our course to the Atlantic, and sailing along the western coast of Africa, we touch at the

GAMBIA-RIVER SETTLEMENTS and at **SIERRA LE-O-N-E**, on the African coast. From this we proceed south-eastward to **CAPE-COAST CASTLE**, in Upper Guinea; and thence southward to

ASCENSION ISLE, a lonely rock in the Atlantic. Leaving it, we come to

ST. HEL-E-N-A (once the first Napoleon's place of exile).

Southward, we come to the **CAPE OF GOOD HOPE** and other Colonies in S. Africa. Doubling the Cape northwards, we call at

MAU-RI-TI-US (the key to India) and the **SAYCHELLES** (say-she-lé) Islands. Nearing the entrance to the Red Sea, we touch at the Peninsula of **A-DEN**, and at the **ISLE OF PERIM** (Red-Sea entrance). Crossing the Arabian Sea, we reach **INDIA**; and, doubling Cape Comorin, touch at the island of

CEY-LON. Sailing northwards across the Bay of Ben-gal, we touch at **AR-A-CAN**. Passing

WELLESLEY and **MALACCA**, on the Malaysian Peninsula, and **PRINCE OF WALES ISLAND** (or **PE-NANG**), we land at the island-city of **SING-GA-POOR**. We then pass northwards through the Chinese Sea to **HONG-KONG ISLAND**, near Can-ton; and thence to the

BO-NIN ISLES. Retracing our steps, we come to **LA-BU-AN ISLE**, off the Island of Borneo, which lies under the Equator.

We now sail southwards to Queensland and the other Colonies in **AUSTRALIA**. Skirting its western shores, towards the south we come to **TASMANIA** (or **VAN DYKEN'S LAND**). Proceeding eastward, we visit **NEW ZEALAND**; leaving which, we sail, still eastward, a long course across the great Pacific Ocean, till, doubling Cape Horn, we soon come to **THE FALKLAND ISLANDS**. Again northwards along the eastern and northern shores of South America, we cross the Equator, and land in **BRITISH GUIANA**. Thence north-westward through the

BRITISH WEST-INDIA ISLANDS. Then south-west, past Cuba, we touch at **BALIZE**. Here crossing Central America, we proceed up the Pacific coast to **VANCOUVER ISLAND** and **BRITISH COLUMBIA**; from which, via the **HUDSON-BAY TERRITORY** and the **RED-RIVER COUNTRY**, we reach

CANADA, **NEW BRUNSWICK**, **PRINCE-EDWARD ISLAND**, **NOVA SCOTIA**, and the Island of **NEWFOUNDLAND**. From it we steer southward to the **BERMUDA ISLES**. Thence crossing the Atlantic, we again reach the British Isles; after a voyage of about 35,000 miles.

II. These Colonies, together with the British Isles, constitute the British Empire. Their united area amounts to about 8,504,000 square miles, or equal to a square of nearly 2,850 miles. United population, about 200,000,000.

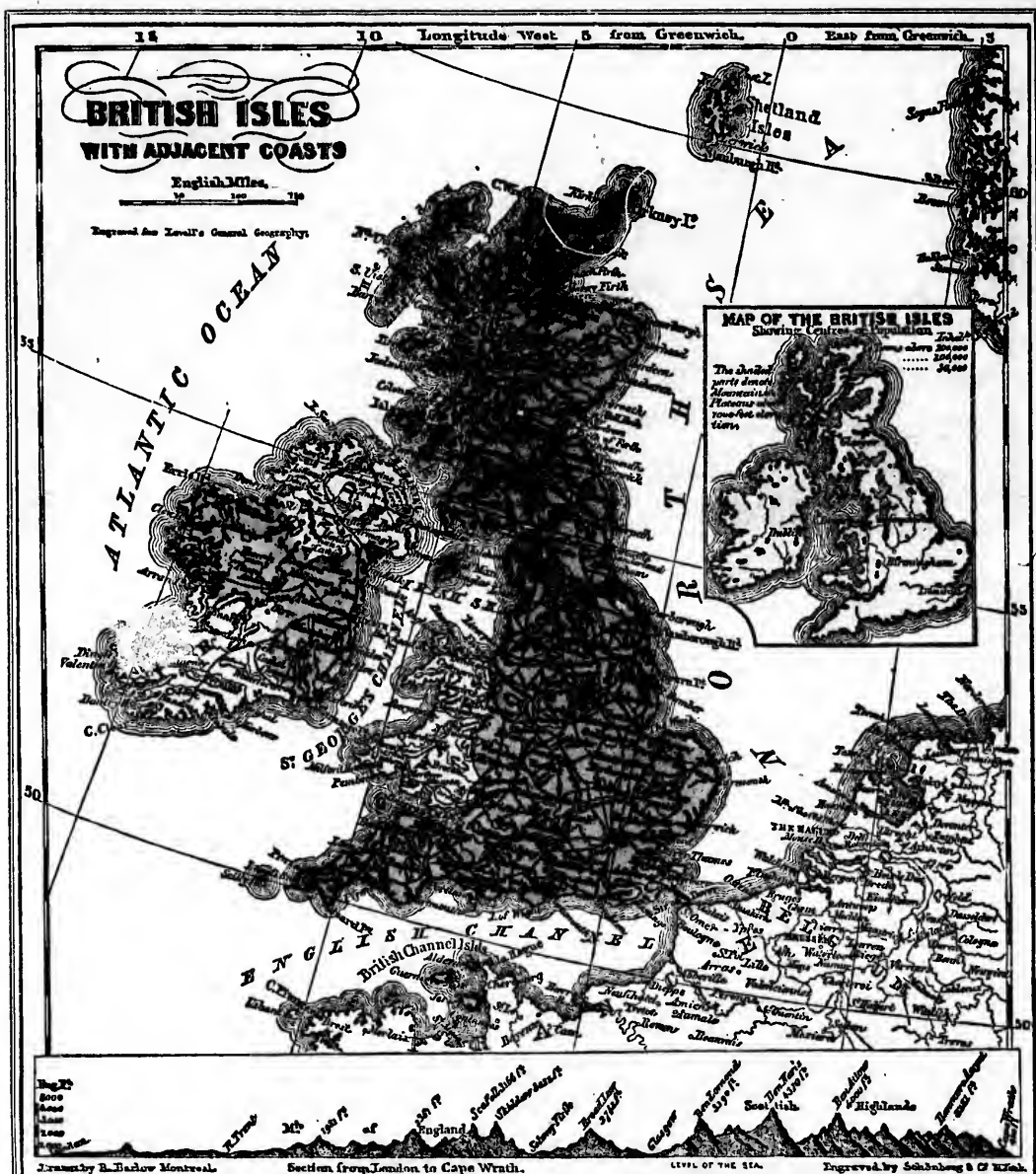
III. The British Isles include England, Wales, and Scotland, (called Great Britain,) Ireland, and the Channel Islands, united under one sovereign and legislature. Great Britain is the largest island in Europe, and the most important in the World. Dover, at the S. E., is only 26 miles from Calais in France.



(1) BANK OF ENGLAND, (2) ROYAL EXCHANGE, AND (3) MANSION-HOUSE, LONDON.

QUESTIONS.—25. Name and point out the different animals enumerated in the list and shown in the engraving. **I.** What is the extent of the British Empire? Point out on a map of the World (starting from London) the position of each of the British possessions, and name them in succession. **II.** Together, what are their size and population? **III.** What do the British Isles include? What channel, strait, and sea separate them from the Continent?

IV. The monarchy, Legislature, House of Commons, V. Her personage in but her status
QUESTIONS
Point out the



IV. The British Form of Government is an hereditary, limited monarchy. The power of making laws is vested in three branches of the Legislature, as follows: I. the Queen or King; II. in the House of Lords (consisting of Bishops and Peers of the United Kingdom); and III. in the House of Commons (consisting of 658 members, elected by the various counties, boroughs, and towns in England, Ireland, and Scotland).

V. Her Majesty the Queen, as the head of the Executive, is the chief personage in the realm. Her Court at London is held in St. James's Palace; but her state-residence is at Buckingham Palace. Osborne, in the Isle of

Wight, and Bal-mo'ral, in Scotland, are private residences. Windsor Castle, on the Thames, is her usual place of residence in England.

VI. Statistics.—Annual imports about £150,000,000 stg. (or \$750,000,000); exports £110,000,000 (\$550,000,000); revenue £75,000,000 (\$375,000,000); national debt, £500,000,000 (\$4,000,000,000); merchant-ships 30,000; royal navy, 900 ships, 100,000 men; army 250,000 men; 10,000 miles of railway, constructed at a cost of £135,000,000; passengers annually conveyed over the railways 141,000,000; 30,000 miles of telegraph; letters annually transmitted by post 530,000,000, newspapers 71,500,000, book-packets 7,500,000.

QUESTIONS.—Point out each country on the map; also the ocean, seas, channels, straits, islands, and capes. What chief cities are connected by railway? Point out the centres of population, and the highest mountain-peaks. IV. What is said of the British Government? V. of the Queen? VI. of Statistics?

touch at
nd-city of
e Sea to
e Equator.
ies in
e come to
we visit
ourse across
ome to
rn and north-
d in
e, we touch at
ific coast to
with the
e reach
BRUNSWICK,
D ISLAND,
d the Island
ND. From it
rd to the
ence cross-
we again
les; after a
5,000 miles.
ies, together
es, constitute
Their united
out 8,564,000
al to a square
00,000.
itish Isles
Wales, and
Great Brit-
the Channel
under one
legislature.
the largest
e, and the
n the World.
is only 26
in France.
of the British
ssion. II. To
e Continent?



ENGLAND AND WALES.

(England, from the Saxon *Engle*, or *Angles*, (a Saxon tribe), and *land*, Wales, from the Saxon *Wales*, "foreigners"; or from the Celtic *Gael*, "the West.")

Size of England and Wales, about the same as Newfoundland and Prince-Edward Island combined, or equal to a square of 240 miles.

1. Noted For.—ENGLAND is noted for her intelligence and Christian civilization, her great political freedom, her numerous colonies, and her pre-eminence in commerce and manufactures.

2. Boundaries and Extent.—England and Wales are bounded on the north by Scotland, on the south by the English Channel, on the east by the German Ocean, and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea. Their greatest length is 420 miles, and their greatest breadth 320.

3. Physical Features.—The surface of England is chiefly undulating, or consists of mountain and plain. The three mountain-districts in England and Wales, are: (1) The Pennine Range, in the north. (2) The

QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the seas, capes, channels, rivers, and mountains on the map. What chief cities do the railways connect? Name the counties at the north, east, middle, and south of England. Name those in Wales. Give the derivation of England, and of Wales. Give the size of England and Wales. 1. For what is England noted? 2. Give the boundaries and extent of England and Wales. 3. Describe their physical features.

C
O
H
Pa
Ca
Ill
D
C
D
8.
long
bridg
(rail
13.
Win
10
agree
temp
11.
high
veget
iron,
tile;
12.
ants
Angels
differ
land th
13.
Eng
perso
14.
and im
They i
enware
of the

LONDON, (6) e

QUEST
south, 8. W
&c. ? 16. so

Cambrian Mountains, in the west. (3) The Devonian range, in the south-west. Wales is mountainous, and the scenery is highly picturesque.

4. The Coast-Line of England and Wales is about 2,000 miles.

5. Physical Features of the East Coast.

MOUNTAINS.	RIVERS.	CAPES OR HEADS.	INLETS.	ISLANDS.
CHRY-1-OT & PEN- Tons in part (turning south- ward).	Tyno. — Great Ouse. — Trent. — Little Ouse. — Thames (Lower).	Flamborough- Spurn. — The Naze. — North Foreland. — South Foreland.	Tynemouth. — Tees. — Humber. — The Wash. — Thames.	Holy. — Shuppy. — Thao-et.

6. Physical Features of the West Coast.

PENNINE. — CAMBRIAN (in Wales). Highest 5,571 ft.	Severn. — Wye. — Don. — Mersey. — Humber. — Great Ouse. — St. Helens.	Hartland. — Worms. — St. David's. — Holyhead. — Great Orme's. — St. Helens.	Bristol Chan. — Cardigan. — Carnarvon. — Mersey. — Morecambe. — Solway.	Angle-sea. — Man.
---	---	--	--	----------------------

7. Physical Features of the South Coast.

DEVONIAN (in Cornwall and Devon).	Exe. — Stour. — Lower Avon.	Dun-ge-1-oes'. — Beachy. — Portland. — Lizard. — Land's End.	Southampton. — Portland. — Plymouth. — Falmouth. — Mount's Bay.	Selly. — Wight. — Channel.
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--	---	----------------------------------

8. Menai (men-i) Strait, a chann'l of North Wales, is about 14 miles long, and from 200 yards to 2 miles wide. It is crossed by a suspension-bridge (beneath which ships of the largest class may sail); and by an iron (railway) tubular bridge, at an elevation of 90 feet above high-water.

9. The Lakes of England are Don-vent-Water (or *Reswick Lake*), Windermere, and Ullswater, all in Cumberlandshire.

10. The Climate of England and Wales, though variable, is healthy and agreeable. The country being insular, the climate is more temperate than that of other parts of Europe in same latitude.

11. Soil, &c.—The soil of England is fertile, and is highly cultivated. Chief products: wheat, barley, oats, hops, vegetables, and fruits. Principal mineral productions: coal, iron, copper, lead, and tin. In Wales the soil is less fertile; but coal, iron, and other minerals are abundant.

12. Inhabitants.—The English people are the descendants of the Ancient Britons; and of the Angles (from *Angeln* in Denmark), Saxons, Danes, and Normans who at different times invaded and conquered the country. In England the Anglo-Saxon element prevails; in Wales the Celtic.

13. Religion.—The Protestant-Episcopal Church of England is the established religion. For all other religious persuasions, however, there is complete toleration.

14. The Manufactures of England are more extensive and important than those of any other country in the World. They include cotton, woolen, silk, leather, metal, and earthenware, and are exported in large quantities to every part of the Globe. The Welsh manufactures are woollens, &c.

15. The Chief Industrial Centres, near the coal-mines, are as follows:

CHIEF INDUSTRIAL CENTRES.	SITUATED IN THE	PRINCIPAL MANUFACTURING TOWNS.	NATURE OF MANUFACTURES, &c.
Newcastle. —	North-East.	Newcastle and Darlington.	Machinery, Chemicals and Cloth.
Lancashire & Yorkshire. —	North-West.	Manchester, Leeds, and Sheffield.	Cotton and Woollen Goods, and Cutlery.
Staffordshire. —	Middle.	Birmingham and Burslem.	Hardware and Pottery.
South Wales. —	South-West.	Swansea and Merthyr-Tydvil.	Smelting Copper and Casting Iron.

16. Seats of Commerce.—LONDON and HULL, on the east; LIVERPOOL and BIRISTOL, on the west; and SOUTHAMPTON, on the south coast.

17. Civil Divisions.—There are 40 counties in England, viz., 6 northern, lying north of the Mersey and Humber Rivers; 5 eastern, on the coast between the Trent and Thames; 10 midland, between the Mersey and Thames Rivers and Wales; and 10 southern, south of the Lower Avon and Thames.

18. The Travelling Facilities are abundant. The common roads are excellent, and, in addition to the canals there are numerous railways. Electric-telegraph lines extend from London to all parts of the United Kingdom, and to the European Continent. (See page 55.)

19. London, the capital of England, and the metropolis of the British Empire, is situated on both banks of the Thames, about 40 miles from its mouth. The river is crossed by seven bridges, and by the Thames Tunnel (a passage-way built under the bed of the river). The city contains many fine edifices, such as the Bank of England, Royal Exchange, Mansion-House (Lord Mayor's residence) (page 54), Houses of Parliament, Westminster Abbey, St. Paul's Cathedral, the Mint, National Gallery, British Museum, and St. James's and Buckingham Palaces. It has also numerous spacious and elegant parks. LONDON is the largest and wealthiest, as well as the greatest, commercial city in the World. It has a circumference of 36 miles; 830 churches, and 564 hospitals, almshouses, and other charities. Population 2,000,000. Near London is the Sydenham Crystal Palace; and GREENWICH, which contains the National Astronomical Observatory (from the meridian of which degrees of longitude are reckoned (p. 61)), and a celebrated naval hospital for disabled seamen. CHICHESTER, with a similar military hospital, is situated on the Thames four and a half miles above London.

20. On the North-East.—NEWCASTLE-UPON-TYNE, and SUNDERLAND on the coast, have extensive manufactures and coal-trade. York is noted for having been the residence of several Roman Emperors. Its cathedral, or "Minster," is the best specimen of Gothic architecture in England. HULL, on the Humber estuary, is one of the chief English seaports.

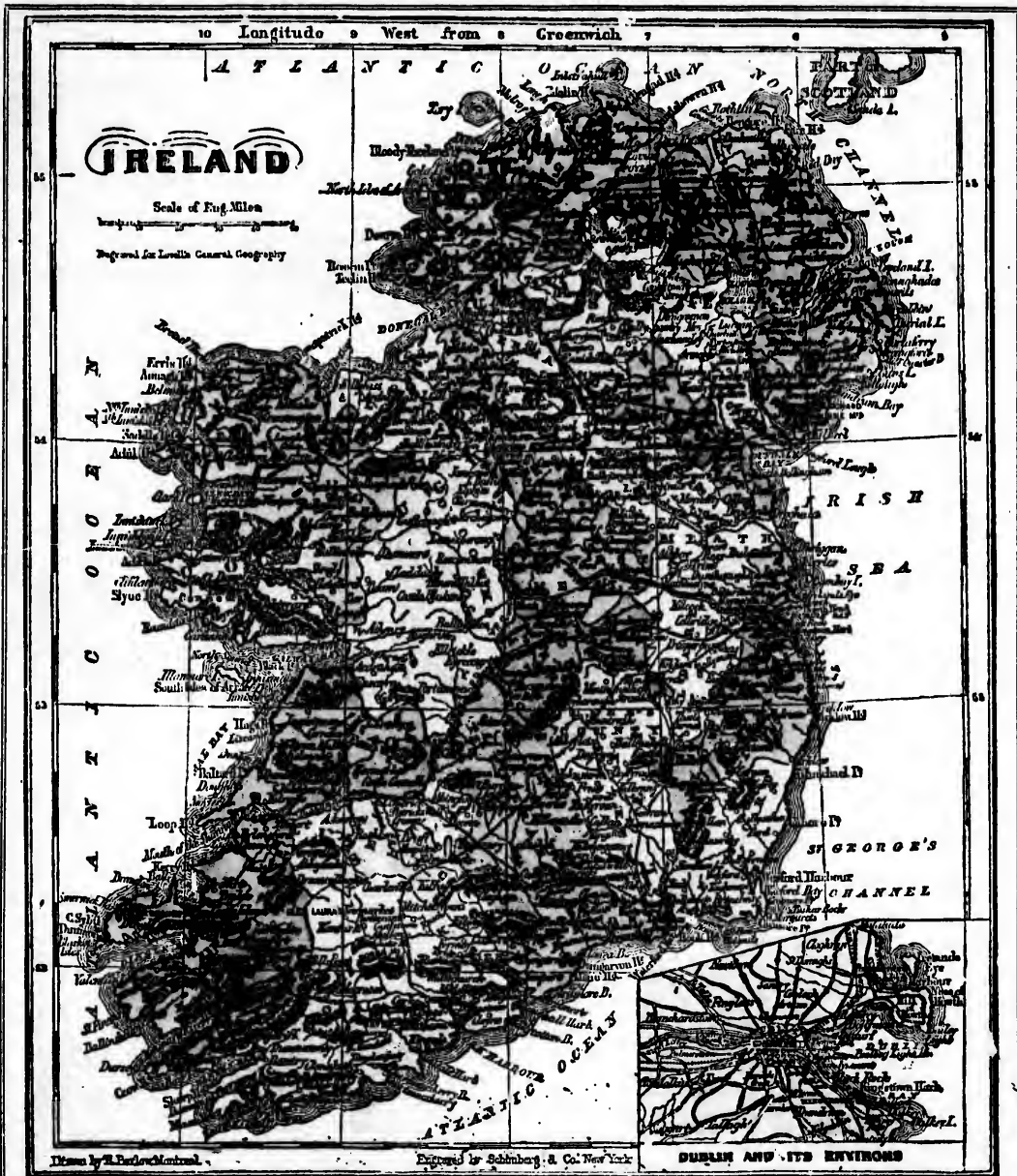
21. On the Norfolk Peninsula.—NORWICH, on the Wensum, is noted for its manufactures, and beautiful cathedral.

22. CAMBRIDGE [name], on the Cam [kam], and OXFORD, on the Cherwell and Isis (or Thames), are celebrated for their universities. Oxford University was founded by Alfred the Great, and is the most richly-endowed university in the World. It has 24 colleges and halls, and the Bodleian Library and a new Museum. Cambridge University has 21 colleges and halls, and a library and museum.



LONDON, SHOWING (1) ST. JAMES'S PARK, (2) DURE OF YORK'S COLUMN, (3) NATIONAL GALLERY AND NELSON MONUMENT, (4) HORSE GUARDS AND ADMIRALTY, (5) ST. JAMES'S PALACE, (6) WESTMINSTER ABBEY, (7) ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL, (8) NEW HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, (9) TOWER, (10) SURREY SIDE OF LONDON.

QUESTIONS.—1. Point out on the map the coast-line of England and Wales; 2. the mountains, rivers, &c. of the east coast; 3. of the west; 4. of the south. 8. What is said of the Menai Strait? 9. lakes? 10. climate? 11. soil, &c. 12. inhabitants? 13. religion? 14. manufactures? 15. industrial centres, &c. 16. seats of commerce? 17. civil divisions? 18. trav. facilities? 19. London? 20. Towns on N. E. P. 21. Norfolk Peninsula? 22. Cambridge and Oxford?



23. *Kent and Sussex Peninsula*.—MARGATE and BRIGHTON, places of resort for sea-side recreations. DOVER, 21 miles from France, a port of embarkation for Continental Europe. CANTERBURY, the ecclesiastical capital.

24. *Southern Coast*.—PORTSMOUTH and PLYMOUTH are important naval stations. SOUTHAMPTON is the chief southern port for ocean steam-packets. OSBORNE, in the Isle of Wight, contains a Royal Palace.

25. *Severn and Avon Basin*.—BRISTOL, on the Lower Avon, is the third

chief seaport-city in the kingdom. STAFFORD, on the Upper Avon, is famous for being the birth and burial place of Shakespeare, the great dramatic poet of England. BATH and CHELTENHAM (shelt'-nam) are noted for their medicinal mineral-springs. KIDDERMINSTER is noted for carpets; and WELLINGTON, for giving a title to the great Duke of Wellington.

26. *Manufacturing Districts*.—MANCHESTER, on the Irwell, is noted for its cotton-manufactures; MACCLES-FIELD, for its silks; LEEDS, for woollens,

QUESTIONS.—23. What is said of the English towns on the Kent and Sussex Peninsula? 24. on the southern coast? 25. on the Severn and Avon Basin? 26. in the manufacturing districts? Give from the map the boundaries of Ireland. Point out and name the four provinces, the sea, sea-channels, bays, harbours, capes, islands, lakes, rivers, and mountains. What chief commercial cities are connected by railways? What places are near Dublin?

N 272

SHEFFIELD, for cutlery; NOTTINGHAM and LEICESTER (lower), for hosiery and lace; BIRMINGHAM for hardware; and BUBBLEM, &c. for earthenware.

27. LIVERPOOL, situated on the east bank of the River Mersey, about 200 miles from London, carries on an immense trade with all parts of the world. About 25,000 ships enter the port annually. It has 6 miles of docks, and ranks next to London in commercial importance. It contains many fine buildings; especially St. George's Hall, which includes the town-hall, music-hall, and law-courts. Near it are Brown's Free Library and Museum.

28. Chief Welsh Cities.—BANGOR, on Menai Strait, is a watering-place. Other towns, MERTHYR-TYDFIL and SWANSEA.



(1) ST. GEORGE'S HALL, WITH (2) LIME-STREET RAILWAY-STATION, LIVERPOOL.

that it is less warm in summer, but milder in winter.

11. Soil and Products.—The soil generally is very fertile. The quantity of rain, which falls makes the grass grow abundantly; its greenness has given to Ireland the name of the *Green Isle*. Dairy-husbandry and cattle-rearing are extensively followed. Flax is much cultivated. Chief minerals: coal, copper, iron, and marble. The chief manufactures are linen and poplin goods; which, with muslin-sewing and lace-making, give employment to great numbers.

12. Population.—The inhabitants are chiefly of Celtic origin; but people of Anglo-Saxon descent have settled all over the island. In some parts of Ulster, the people are descendants of Scottish colonists introduced by

IRELAND.

(From the Greek *Ier-se* (Lat. name *Hibernia*). Also called *F-u-n*, the "Sacred Isle.") Size, nearly one fifth larger than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 181 miles.

1. Noted For.—IRELAND is noted for its beautiful scenery, its fertility, and the greenness of its verdure.

2. Boundaries and Extent.—Ireland is bounded on the east by the North Channel, the Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel; and on the south, west, and north by the Atlantic Ocean. Its greatest length is 306 miles, and its greatest breadth 180.

3. Physical Features.—The surface is chiefly undulating. The coast-line, of about 2,200 miles, is very irregular, and encloses many beautiful bays. The mountains are generally near the coast, and are most numerous in the north and the west. The highest summit in Ireland, 3,404 feet, is Carn na nGall, in Maighilicuddy Reeks, County Kerry. Near Bengore Head, County Antrim, is the Giant's Causeway; a basaltic promontory, composed of many thousand prismatic pillars, closely united together with beautiful regularity. In the central part of the island are immense tracts of country called bogs, producing little else than heath and bog-myrtle. The landscape of Ireland is beautiful; and the scenery of the Lakes of Killarney, of the Western Coast, of the County Wicklow, and of the Southern Coast, is highly picturesque.

4. Physical Features of the North Coast.

MOUNTAINS.	RIVERS.	CAVES OR HEADS.	BAYS OR INLETS.	ISLANDS.
DOON-RO-OAIG. CAR-TO-GHIRE. ANTRIM, in part.	Ferlin. N. Blackwater. Bann, 40 miles.	Malin. Bengore. Fairhead.	Sheshaven. Swilly. Foyle.	Tory. Islalinn.

5. Physical Features of the East Coast.

ANTRIM. MOUNTS, 2,798 ft.	La-san, 33 m. Boyne, 80 m. Liffey, 50 m. Slu-nev, 70 m.	Howth [ho'dth]. Wicklow. Carnsore.	Belfast. Stranford. Dundalk. Dublin. Wexford.	Lambay. Ireland's Eye.
------------------------------	--	--	--	---------------------------

6. Physical Features of the South Coast.

GALTNE [gaul'-teen]. DOWN. KNOCKMILL-ROGLE.	Barrow, 114 m. Suir, 100 m. Eoo, 35 m. Blackwater, 100.	Hook. Minc. Kinsale. Clear.	Waterford. Dungarvan. Cork. Kinsale.	Cape Clear.
---	--	--------------------------------------	---	-------------

7. Physical Features of the West Coast.

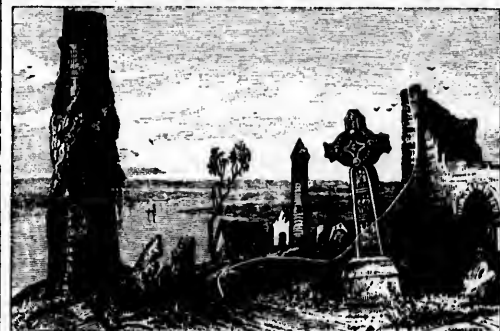
MACGILLICUDDY REEKS. Highest 3,404 ft.	Malnea. Shannon, 221 m. Boyle.	Bo-lus. Dunmore. Loop. Slieve. Ae-hil. Erris. Rossa.	Hantry. Keonmare. Uingie. Shannon. Clow. Galway. Sligo. Donegal.	Valentia. South Arran. Clare. Achill. North Arran.
---	--------------------------------------	---	---	--

8. The Shannon is the largest river in Ireland. It flows 164 miles southwards through the centre of the country to Limerick; it thence flows 60 miles westwards, into the Atlantic Ocean. CLON-MAC-NOISE [-noiz'], on its banks, in King's County, contains two of the many celebrated Round-Towers of Ireland (the origin of which is still unknown), and some of the beautiful ancient Tombstone-Crosses (see engraving).

9. The Lakes or Loughs are numerous. The principal are Swilly, Foyle, Neagh (Lough), Belfast, Stranford, Carrigford, at the north-east; Ree in the centre; Mask, and Corrib, at the west; and the picturesque Lakes of Killarney, at the south-west.

10. The Climate is similar to that of England; with the difference

James I. Irish Gaelic is the native language, now chiefly confined to the west.



ANCIENT ROUND-TOWERS AND CROSS AT CLONMACNOISE.

13. Religion.—Protestant Episcopacy is the established form of religion; but throughout the island the people are chiefly Roman Catholics, except in Ulster, where the majority are I. sbyterians.

14. Travelling Facilities.—The common roads are very good, and there are several canals for internal trade. Excellent railways also connect Dublin with Belfast, Cork, Limerick, Galway, &c. (see map).

15. Manufactures and Exports.—Woolen is the chief and most valuable manufacture. Cotton goods are extensively manufactured around Belfast, and Irish poplin (a fabric of silk and worsted) in Dublin. These, with dairy and agricultural produce, cattle, &c., form the chief articles of export.

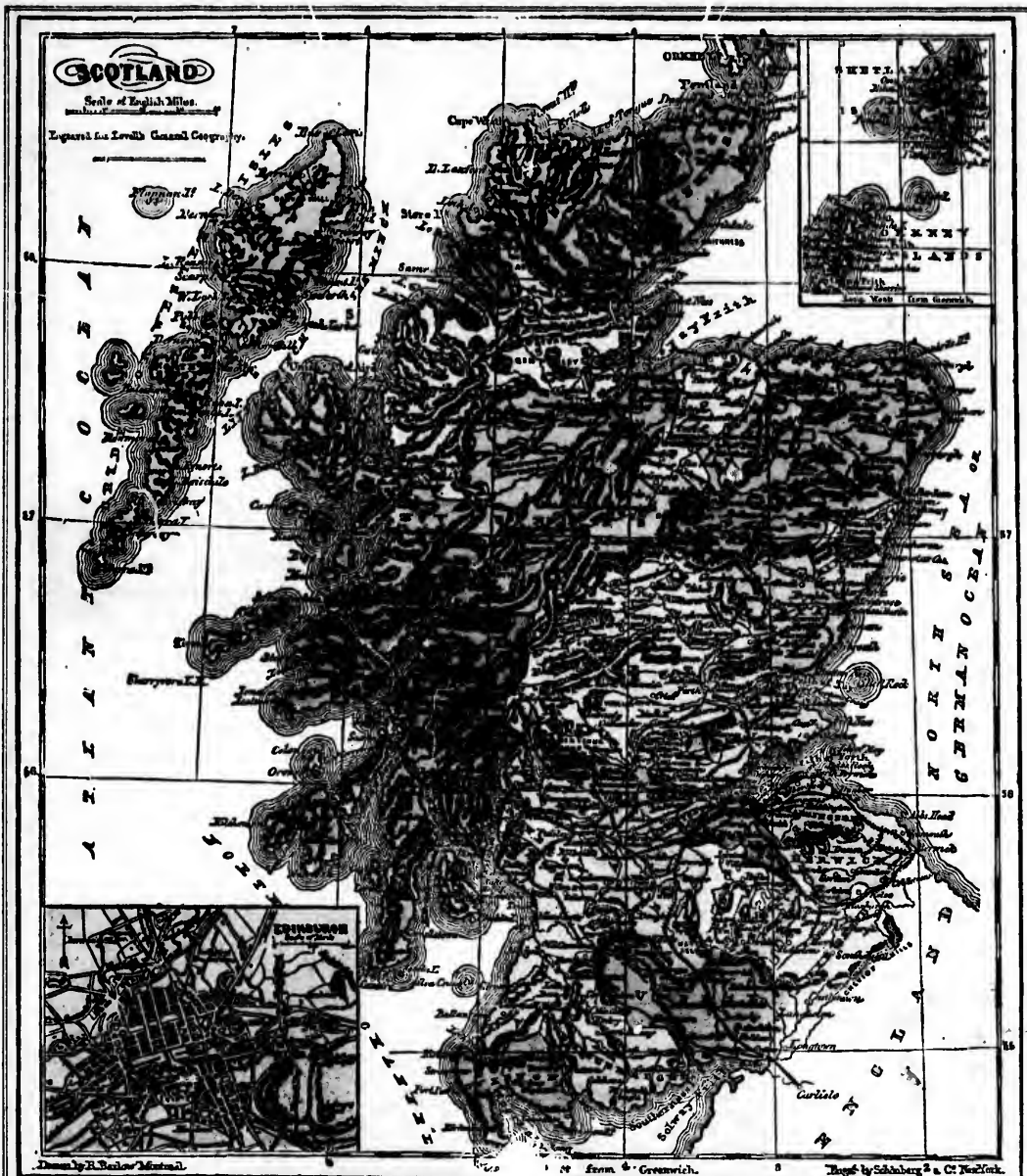


SACKVILLE STREET, WITH THE POST-OFFICE AND NELSON'S PILLAR, DUBLIN.

QUESTIONS.—27. Describe Liverpool. 28. Name the chief Welsh cities. Give the derivation and size of Ireland. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its boundaries and extent. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. Point out the mountains, rivers, coves, heads, bays, inlets, and islands on the north coast; 5. on the east coast; 6. on the south coast; 7. on the west coast. 8. What is said of the River Shannon, and of the ancient round-towers of Ireland? 9. lakes or loughs? 10. climate? 11. soil and products? 12. population? 13. religion? 14. travelling facilities? 15. manufactures and exports? Describe the illustrations.

per Avon, is the great drain) are noted for carpets; Kingston. is noted for woollens, and Avon sea-channels, Dublin?

223 N



16. Civil Divisions.—Ireland is divided into four provinces (comprising 32 counties); namely, ULSTER, containing (as shown on the map) 9 counties, chief seaport Belfast; LEINSTER, containing 12 counties, chief seaport Dublin; MUNSTER, containing 6 counties, chief seaport Cork; CONNAUGHT, containing 5 counties, chief seaport Galway. (See map.)

17. On the East Coast.—DUBLIN, the metropolis of Ireland, situated on both sides of the Liffey, is one of the finest cities in Europe, and is distinguished for the number and elegance of its public buildings. It contains the University of Dublin (Trinity College), founded by Queen Elizabeth in 1592, the Queen's University (the Colleges of which are at Belfast, Cork, and Galway), and a Roman-Catholic University. The Phoenix Park, which includes within its area the Vice-Regal Lodge, the General Hospital, the Hibernian School, the Zoological Gardens, and the Wellington Monument, is a favourite place of resort for the citizens. Sackville Street (a prolongation of the Strand) is the principal thoroughfare.

QUESTIONS.—16. Point out on the map the civil divisions of Ireland. 17. Describe the cities and towns on the east coast. What is said of Dublin? Give the boundaries of Scotland from the map. Point out on the map and name the seas, channels, bays, harbours, capes, lakes, rivers, and mountains. Point out on the map and name the principal islands. What chief cities are connected by railway? Name the chief places near Edinburgh.

gation of (Grafton and Westmoreland Streets) is the principal thoroughfare. It is a wide and handsome street. KINROSWAY, a seaport, eight miles east of the city, is the mail-packet station for Dublin. It is a favourite watering-place. BELFAST, at the head of Belfast Lough, is noted for its linen-manufactures, and its foreign and domestic trade. It is the seat of one of the Queen's Colleges. LONDO, DERRY, a flourishing town, on the north-west coast, is a port of call for the Canadian mail-steamer.

18. *On the South Coast.*—WATERFORD, on the E. Ir. [shire], is noted for its fine quay and harbour, and as being a place of great trade for a large extent of country. CORK, in size and population the second city in Ireland, is situated on the Lee, about twelve miles above Queenstown. It is the chief commercial city of the south of Ireland, and largely exports grain and provisions. It has manufactures of leather, iron, gloves, and glass, and is the seat of one of the Queen's Colleges. QUENESTOWN is a naval depot, and has one of the finest natural harbours in the world. The principal fortifications are on Spike Island, a convict establishment. The entrance to the harbour is defended by Camden and Carlisle forts. Queenstown is a place of call for the mail-steamer running between England and America.

19. *At the West.*—LIMERICK is beautifully situated on the Shannon, the largest river in Ireland. This city is remarkable for its fine bridges, its extensive manufacture of lace, and its commercial enterprise. It is the principal seaport on the west coast. GALWAY, the seat of one of the Queen's Colleges, has steam communication with America.

SCOTLAND.

(From the Scots, an Ancient Celtic tribe. Formerly called *Albion, Caledonia, &c.*) Size, about one seventh larger than New Brunawick, or equal to a square of 177 m.

1. **Noted For.**—SCOTLAND is noted for its picturesque scenery, its numerous friths, and its extensive manufactures.

2. **Boundaries and Extent.**—Scotland is bounded on the east by the German Ocean, on the north and the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the south by England and the Irish Sea. Its extreme length is 237 miles. Its breadth varies from 24 to 217 miles.

3. **Physical Features.**—Scotland is a picturesque and mountainous country, particularly toward the north-west. The Lowland districts, which lie chiefly toward the east, are rich and fertile. The principal mountain-ranges are the Northern Highlands, and the Lowther, Grampian, and Cheviot Hills. These all run in a south-western direction; and the plains or valleys between them are so deeply indented by rivers and friths, that few parts of Scotland are inaccessible from the sea. The coast-line measures 2,500 miles. As the slope is chiefly toward the east, all the principal rivers (except the Clyde) flow in that direction. Staffa, a small island north of Iona, is remarkable for its basaltic columns and caverns; the principal of which is Fingal's Cave, one of the greatest natural curiosities in the World. The central part of Scotland is rich in minerals.

4. Physical Features of the East Coast.

MOUNTAINS.	RIVERS.	CAVES OR HEADS.	FRITHS AND LOCHS.	ISLANDS.
NORTH HIGHLANDS, 3,720 ft. Dec. 90 m.	Spey, 100 m. Tay, 140 m. Tweed, 100 m.	Duncanst. Kinnauld's. Fife-New. St. Abil's.	Dornoch. Mor-ay. St. Andrew's B. Forth.	Shetland. Orkney (at the North).

5. Physical Features of the West Coast.

MOUNTAINS.	RIVERS.	CAVES OR HEADS.	FRITHS AND LOCHS.	ISLANDS.
NORTH HIGHLANDS, 3,720 ft. Dec. 90 m.	Clyde, 100 m. Esk, Flow. Annan, Inver. Nith, South.	Wrath. Ard-na-mur-ellan (Karr). Mull of Cantire. Corall. Mull of Galloway.	Broom. Inver-ohn. Fife. Clyde. Long. Solway.	Heb-ri-des. Skye. Mull. Islay. Jura. Arran.

6. **Lakes, or Lochs,** are numerous in the middle and northern parts of the country. The principal are Lochs Lomond and Katrine.

7. **The Climate** of the Lowlands resembles that of England, though it is more moist. In the Highlands it is much colder.

8. **Soil and Products.**—In the Lowlands the soil is good and well cultivated. The Highlands are better adapted for the rearing of sheep and cattle. Barley, wheat, &c. are the staple products. The principal minerals are coal, iron, lead, stone, and slate. The coast-fisheries of Scotland are very valuable.

9. **The Inhabitants** are made up from two distinct races: viz., the Highlanders, who are of the Celtic race; and the Lowlanders, who are a mixed people.

QUESTIONS.—18. Describe the cities and towns on the S. coast of Ireland; 19. at the West. Give derivation and size of Scotland. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its boundaries and extent. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. Point out the mountains, &c. on the E. coast; 5. on the W.; 6. its lakes. 7. What is said of its climate? 8. soil and products? 9. inhabitants? 10. religion? 11. trav. facil. 12. industrial centres? 13. physical features, &c. of its divisions. 14. Describe the cities, &c. on the E. coast; 15. at the South. 16. Describe Glasgow, &c. 1-3. What is said of the position, physical features, &c. of the Ionian Islands?

10. **The Established Religion** is Presbyterian, but all others are free.

11. **Travelling Facilities.**—Excellent roads extend throughout the country, and canals and railways are numerous. Two lines of railway enter Scotland on the east and west coasts. Other lines proceed northward from the Frith of Forth, as far as Inverury. They will extend to Inverness, the capital of the Highlands.

12. **Industrial Centres.**—These may be considered as three-fold; including (1) the coast and river fisheries, (2) agriculture and grazing in the Lowlands and Highlands, and (3) manufactures. This last (by far the most important) centres in the coal-district, which stretches from Fife to Ayrshire. The manufactures include those in iron, linen, and cotton.

13. **Civil Divisions.**—Scotland contains 33 counties. (See map.)

14. *On the East Coast.*—EDINBURGH [ed'-en-bur-á], the metropolis of Scotland, is situated near the Frith of Forth. It is a picturesque city, and is noted for its Castle, for the ancient Royal Palace of Holyrood House, and for its University, public institutions, and schools. The other principal buildings are the Churches, Law-Courts, Royal Institute, National Gallery, &c. Prince's Street, which divides the Old and New Towns, is a handsome thoroughfare, and contains a beautiful monument to Sir Walter Scott. The New Town (to the right in the engraving below) is beautifully laid out. ABERDEEN (New), situated on the north bank of the Dee, is a large and handsome city, and carries on an extensive export-trade in agricultural products. It contains a university. BALMORAL, 45 miles inland, on the Upper Dee, is the Highland residence of Her Majesty the Queen. MONTROSE, a seaport on the peninsula between Montrose Basin and the North Sea. DUNDEE, an important seaport on the north bank of the Tay, is noted for its extensive exports of linen and hempen goods. ST. ANDREWS, once the ecclesiastical capital, contains the oldest university in Scotland, founded in 1411.



BALMORAL CASTLE, THE QUEEN'S HIGHLAND RESIDENCE, ABERDEENSHIRE.

15. *At the South.*—DUMFRIES [-freee'], on the east bank of the Nith, is the great mart for the agricultural produce of Southern Scotland. The poet Burns is buried here.

16. *At the West.*—GLASGOW [-ko] (43 miles from Edinburgh), on the Clyde, and the principal seat of Scottish manufactures and commerce, is now the second city in Great Britain for population. It has a fine cathedral and a university founded in 1450. The engine-making and steamship-building of the Clyde are famous. STILLING, whose castle is so historically interesting, was formerly the residence of the Scottish kings. Near it is the field of BANNOCKBURN, where, in 1314, Bruce defeated Edward II.

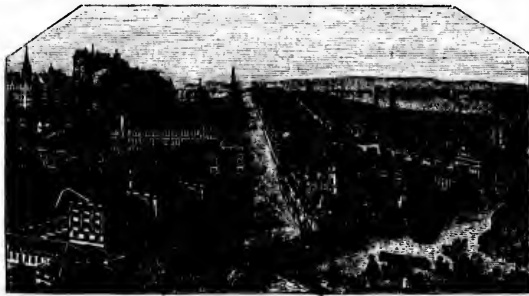
BRITISH DEPENDENCIES IN EUROPE.

I. THE IONIAN ISLANDS.

1. **Position, &c.**—This group lies off the west coast of Greece, opposite the Gulf of Le-pan'-to, and includes CORFU, CEPHALONIA, ZAN-TE, SANTA MAU-RA, TRU-A'-KI (or ITH'-A-CA), PAX-O, and CER-I-GO. United area, 1,092 square miles, or equal to a square of 33 miles. Population 230,500. (See page 78.)

2. **Physical Features, &c.**—The surface of these islands is mountainous, diversified with some fertile plains. The products are wheat and other grains, wine, olives, currants, &c. Chief towns, CORFU, ZANTE, &c.

3. **Government.**—By the treaty of Paris in 1814, the Ionian Islands were declared a free republic, under the protection of Great Britain. The government of the republic is in the hands of the islanders, subject to the approval of the British Lord High Commissioner.



PRINCE'S STREET, FROM CALTON HILL, EDINBURGH.

II. THE ISLANDS OF MALTA, GOZO, AND CUMINO.

4. Position, &c.—This group lies in the Mediterranean between the Island of Sicily and the Continent of Africa. Area 138 sq. m. Pop. 141,000.

5. Physical Features, &c.—MALTA is the principal island. It is 17 miles long by 6 wide. Except at the south side, the coast is deeply indented. The surface is rocky, and has little depth of soil. Cotton is the staple product. The vine, figs, oranges, and olives are abundant. Being central in the Mediterranean, it is a great commercial depot. VALLETTA is the capital. It has fine docks, and is well fortified. Population abt 32,000. Go-zo, nine miles long by four and a half wide, is more fertile. Its (Giant's) Tower is a chief object of interest. CUMINO [ku-mee-no] is a very small island. Populr 3,100.



TOWN OF VALLETTA, THE CAPITAL OF MALTA.

6. History.—Malta is said to be the Mel-ta on which St. Paul was shipwrecked. Pooped by the Phoenicians and held by them, it passed successively under the dominion of the Carthaginians, Romans, Saracens, and Sicilians; and in 1022 was granted by Charles V. to the Knights of the Order of St. John of Jerusalem. It was taken by Napoleon I. in 1798; by England in 1800, and finally ceded to her in 1814.

III. GIBRALTAR, AND IV. HELIGOLAND.

7. Gibraltar (Djev-el-Tarik, i.e. Mountain of Tarik, the Moor or Saracen who landed here in 711) is a high rock at the south of Andalusia, in Spain, and forms the key to the Mediterranean. Its fortress, of 1,000 guns, is the most celebrated in the world. Caverns and galleries, for communication and defence, have been cut in the solid rock. Pop. 18,000.



ROCK AND TOWN OF GIBRALTAR, FROM THE SEUTRAL GROUND.

8. The Town, situated on the western declivity, is a single, spacious street, paved and lighted. Gibraltar is a free port, and the chief centre of British commerce with the adjoining countries. It was founded by Tarik a Moor, in 711; ceded to Sp. in the 15th century; and captured by the English in 1704. It is only 30 miles from Tangier [tan-jeer], the commercial capital of Morocco, in Northern Africa.

9. Heligoland, or Holy Land, is a rocky island, 200 feet high, 46 miles north-west from the mouth of the Elbe and Weser, and contains a village and a light-house. It was taken from Denmark in 1807, and is now a watering-place. It was held in high veneration in the Middle Ages.

V. THE ISLE OF MAN, AND THE CHANNEL ISLANDS.

10. The Isle of Man is practically part of Great Britain itself. It lies between England and Ireland. From the 10th to the 13th century it was under the dominion of Norway. In 1266 it was ceded to Alexander III. King of Scotland. It descended to the Duke of Athol, who, in 1765, ceded it to the British Crown for £72,000 sterling. CASTLETOWN is the capital.

11. The Channel Islands lie chiefly off the French coast. They are JERSEY, GUERNSEY, ALDERNEY, and SEREQ (or SARK). They formed part of the Dukedom of Normandy, and were retained by England when the Duchy was relinquished. In 1108 they were formally annexed by Henry I. to the British Crown. (See map of the British Isles, on page 55.)

QUESTIONS.—4. Give the position, &c. of the Malta group of islands. 5. What is said of their physical features, &c.? 6. Give their history. 7. What is said of Gibraltar? 8. Describe the town. 9. What is said of Heligoland? 10. What is said of the Isle of Man? 11. What is said of the Channel Islands? Give the derivation and size of Norway and Sweden. 1. For what are they noted? 2. Mention their extent; 3-8. principal islands, bays, capes, &c.; 9. colony; 10. exports. 11. Point out the boundaries of Norway. 12. Describe its physical features; 13. its climate; 14. products; 15. travelling facil.



THE KINGDOM OF NORWAY AND SWEDEN.

(Norway is derived from more "north," and rige or rike a "Kingdom"; and Sweden from *Sverige*, "Kingdom of the Swia," or *Suth-land*, "Burnt Country.")

Size, more than a third larger than Lower Canada, or equal to 5 square of 841 miles.

1. **Noted For.**—NORWAY AND SWEDEN, the ancient SCANDINAVIA, are noted for having been the seat of the ancient Goths, who, in the early centuries of the Christian era, overran Europe.
2. **Extent.**—Norway and Sweden extend from the Arctic Ocean to Denmark, and are about 1,190 miles in length; their breadth varying from 230 to 490 miles. (For LAPLAND, see p. 63.)
3. **Principal Islands.**—Lof-foden Isles, Mag-er-oe, Goth-land, Oe-land.
4. **Principal Bays.**—Christiania, Drontheim [dron-tim], West Fi-ord'.
5. **Principal Capes.**—North Cape, Lin-dee-naes' or the Naes.
6. **Principal Mountains.**—Do-vre-feld', Lang-e-feld', Ki-o-jen.
7. **Principal Lakes.**—Malar, Storsjon, Siljan, Wen-er, Wetter.
8. **Principal Rivers.**—Mu-on-no, Tor-ne-a, Kalix, Lu-le-a, Pij-o-a, Skel-lef-te-a, Windel, U-me-a, Dahl, Go-the, Klar, Glommen, Lou-gen.
9. **Colonial Possession.**—St. Bartholomew Island, West Indies.
10. **Yearly Exports** \$20,000,000; revenue \$4,650,000; debt \$1,500,000. (NOTE.—In these names, a final s pronounced like o in stone.)

NORWAY.

11. **Boundaries, &c.**—NORWAY is bounded on the north and the west by the Northern Ocean, on the south by the Skag'er Rack, and on the east by Sweden. It contains 121,807 square miles.
12. **Physical Features.**—The surface is mountainous, and abounds in romantic scenery. The coast is deeply indented by numerous fiords, or salt-water inlets. The River Glommen is the largest in the kingdom.
13. **Climate.**—At the north the climate is severe, but in the southern parts it is milder. Nearly three months of protracted daylight occur in the extreme north, while in the south the longest day is eighteen hours.
14. **Products.**—Rye, barley, oats, and potatoes are the chief agricultural products. The rivers, seas, and lakes of the entire peninsula abound with fish. The Nor-we-gian [-jan] horses, a small but hardy breed, are extensively exported to Sweden and Great Britain. The principal sources of wealth are the mines of iron and copper, the forests, and the fisheries.
15. **Travelling Facilities.**—There are no canals in Norway; and but

on
ste
do
co
E
ore
cor
1
Ch
wit
G
the
sieg
stat
by
mill
nor
2
west
tain
east
abou
23
eight
forest
are
the
24
and
the
month
25
dant
compo
26
tered.
compo
the ele
27
admitt
lent
hotta
Lake W
the riv
28
live. T
Lobster
29
C
buildi
at the
is the ch
extensive
is the n
in Denm
merco.
Gotlia, h
QUE
den Isl
27. trav
2. What
habitants

one short railway, at Christiania. To facilitate communication, post-horse stations have been established at distances of from seven to ten miles.

16. Manufactures and Exports.—The manufactures are chiefly for domestic and agricultural purposes. The leading exports are iron, silver, copper, fish, timber, cod-liver oil, turpentine, and horses.

17. Inhabitants.—Norway is the most thinly-peopled country in Europe. The inhabitants are industrious, brave, and hospitable.

18. Government.—The executive government is vested in the Sovereign; but all legislative power belongs to the Storthing (the "great court"), or representative assembly. Lutheranism is the State religion.

19. Norway is divided into six stifts, or provinces. (See map.)

20. Chief Towns.—CHRISTIANIA, the capital, situated at the head of Christiania Bay, is the chief seat of foreign trade. The fiord, or bay, is dotted with numerous wooded islands, which present a beautiful appearance. Bergen exports large quantities of dried fish. DRONNINGMUNDE was formerly the capital of Norway. FREDERICKSIALE is a fortified town; at the siege of which, in 1716, Charles XII. of Sweden was killed.

21. The Lofoten Isles, off the north-west coast, form the chief fishing-station. Near the mouth of the Malstrom ("mill-stream"), a whirlpool formed by opposite tides, which give it a whirling motion like a turning mill-stone. HELLAND, on the island of Quälo-en, is the most northerly town in Europe.

SWEDEN.

22. Boundaries, &c.—SWEDEN is bounded on the north and west by Norway, from which it is separated by a chain of mountains; on the south by the Cattegat and the Baltic; and on the east by the Baltic, the Gulf of Bothnia, and Russia. It contains about 170,100 square miles.

23. Physical Features.—The surface is generally level. Nearly one eighth of it is covered with lakes and rivers, and one fourth with forests. There are several falls in the rivers; the most noted of which are the Falls of Troll-hæt-ta, on the river Gotha, near Gottenburg.

24. Soil, &c.—The soil is not very fertile, and only a part of the middle and the south is under cultivation. The winter continues for about seven months. The mode of travelling is in horse or reindeer sledges.

25. The Products are like those of Norway, but iron and copper are more abundant. The interior of the country possesses valuable quantities of iron and copper; both of which articles are largely exported.

26. Inhabitants and Government.—The inhabitants are thinly scattered. The government is a limited monarchy. The Diet or Parliament is composed of representatives from four distinct classes; viz. the nobility, the clergy, the citizens, and the peasants. Lutheranism is the State religion.

27. The Travelling Facilities are equal to those of Norway, with the addition of canals. The main routes near Stockholm are generally excellent. The Gotha Canal connects Lakes Vener and Wetter, and the Troll-hæt-ta Canal overcomes the obstructions in the navigation of the outlet of Lake Vener. Steamboats ply on the principal lakes, and on such parts of the rivers as are navigable. A railway connects Stockholm and Gottenburg.

28. Manufactures and Exports.—The manufactures are not extensive. The exports are chiefly timber, grain, and the produce of the mine. Lobsters are exported in large numbers to England.



THE ROYAL PALACE, STOCKHOLM, CAPITAL OF SWEDEN.

29. Cities and Towns.—STOCKHOLM, with its fine palace and public buildings, is the capital of the kingdom. It is built on some small islands at the entrance of Lake Malär, and its situation is extremely imposing. It is the chief commercial emporium of Sweden. FALUN is noted for the extensive copper-mines in its vicinity. CARLSKRONA, off the south coast, is the naval arsenal of Sweden. MALMÖ, nearly opposite Copenhagen in Denmark, is a strongly-fortified town, and carries on considerable commerce. GOTTENBURG, or GÖTTENBERG, at the mouth of the Göta, or Gotha, has an extensive trade. UPSALA is celebrated for its university.

QUESTIONS.—16. What is said of the manufactures, &c. of Norway? 17. its inhabitants? 18. government? 19. provinces? 20. chief towns? 21. Lofoten Isles? 22. Point out on the map the boundaries of Sweden; 23. its physical features. 24. Describe its soil, &c.; 25. products; 26. inhabitants, &c.; 27. travelling facilities; 28. manufactures, &c.; 29. cities, &c. 30. Describe Lapland and size of Russia; 1. For what is it noted? 2. What is the extent? 3. Point out the boundaries of Russia in Europe; 4. its physical features. 5. What is said of its climate? 6. chief products? 7. inhabitants? 8. trav. facil. 9. manufactures, &c.? 10. government? 11. civil div. 12. Mention the chief towns in the Baltic Basin; 13. in the Dnieper Basin.

LAPLAND.

30. Lapland lies to the north-east of Sweden. It belongs to Sweden and Russia; but, being a cold and barren country, the inhabitants are not subject to much control. Their individual herds of reindeer vary from 50 and 100 to 1,000. The Laplanders live chiefly in tents, and are migratory in their habits, though some engage in agriculture.

THE EMPIRE OF RUSSIA.

(From *Recht*, "strangers" or "foreigners," a Slavonic tribe.)

Size, a little less than that of the British Empire, or equal to a square of 2,500 miles.

1. Noted For.—RUSSIA is noted for its compactness, and its unbroken continuity in Europe, Asia, and America; its mineral wealth; and the extension of its boundaries in Europe and Asia.

2. Extent, &c.—This empire reaches more than half-way round the Globe, and embraces one half of Europe, a third of Asia, and a portion of North America. Area 8,015,000 sq. m.; pop. 90,000,000.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

3. Boundaries.—RUSSIA in Europe is bounded on the north by the Northern Ocean; on the east by the Ural or Ural Mountains, the Ural River (*ural*, "belt," "boundary," &c.), and the Caspian Sea; on the south by the Black Sea, Turkey, and Austria; and on the west by Austria, Prussia, the Baltic Sea, and Sweden. (See map of Europe, p. 52.)

4. Physical Features.—Russia is chiefly a plain. Its only mountains in Europe are the Ural and Cau'-ca-sus ranges, dividing it from Asia. The Steppes or plains, in the south-east, are barren, but the centre is generally fertile. From the Val-dai Hills the country is divided into four great basins, which are drained by the following rivers: the Petch'-o-ra and the Dw'-na, flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the Ne'-va, the Du'-na, and the Ni'-men, flowing into the Baltic Sea; the Dnieper [*nee-per*], the Bug, the Dnieper [*nee-per*], and the Don, flowing into the Black and A'-sov Seas; the Volga, with its tributaries, and the Ural, flowing into the Caspian Sea. The slope of these rivers is very gradual. The largest lakes are La'-do'-ga, On'-o'-ga, and Pelipous [*pay'-pooce*]. The islands in the Baltic are A'-land, Da'-go, and Oesel [*see-ell*]; and in the Northern Ocean, No'-va Zem'-bia and Spita'-berg'-en.

5. Climate.—In the northern part of the empire there are scarcely more than two seasons, summer and winter; the heat of summer being soon followed by the frost and snow of winter. In the more temperate south, the seasons are longer and more varied.

6. Chief Products.—The extensive forests furnish timber, pitch, potash, and turpentine, in abundance. Fur-bearing animals are numerous along the Arctic Ocean. Corn, rye, and barley are among the principal products. Flax and hemp are grown in the west, and wheat and fruits in the centre and the south. Russia is rich in minerals. Iron is abundant, but the coal-areas are very limited. The west side of the Ural Mountains yields copper; and the east side, gold, silver, and platinum.

7. The Inhabitants are chiefly of the Slavonic race (who were the ancient inhabitants of Russia), but the Tartars inhabit the south-eastern part. Serfdom, which long existed in Russia, has lately been abolished. Agriculture and commerce are the chief pursuits.

8. Travelling Facilities.—By means of canals, the seas, lakes, and rivers of the empire are united into a complete system of internal navigation. A railway, 400 miles long, connects St. Petersburg and Moscow.

9. Manufactures and Exports.—The most important manufactures are leather, hempen fabrics, glass, and metal-wares. The exports are tallow, hides, corn, iron, hemp, furs, and timber; their annual value is \$150,000,000.

10. The Government is an absolute monarchy. The Greek is the established Church, and to it five sixths of the population belong. The Czar (derived from "Caesar," or Emperor, is the Head of both Church and State.)

11. Civil Divisions.—Russia in Europe contains 61 provinces. The principal divisions are: 1. The Baltic; 2. Principality of Finland; 3. Russian Poland; 4. Great Russia, or Moscow; in the centre of the empire; 5. West Russia, south of the Baltic; 6. Little Russia, in the middle basin of the Dnieper; 7. Southern Russia, including the Crimea; 8. Eastern Russia, or As-tra-khan; 9. Ka-zan, north of Astrakhan; and 10. The Islands.

12. Chief Towns.—In the Baltic Basin.—ST. PETERSBURG, the new capital of Russia, was named after Peter the Great, who founded it in 1703. It is situated on the left bank of the Neva, and on the adjoining islands. Its buildings and its manufactures and commerce are extensive. ARCHANGEL, on the White Sea, is the oldest seaport of Russia. CRONSTADT, on a small island 22 miles from St. Petersburg, is well fortified, and commands the sea-approach to the capital. HELSINGFORS, the capital of Finland, is defended by the fortifications of Sveaborg [*svay'-a-borg*]. REV-EL and RIG-A are also well-fortified seaports, and have an extensive grain-trade. WILNA, a Jewish city, has much trade.

13. In the Basin of the Dnieper.—SMO-LENSK, famous in the war with France in 1812. It is an early capital, noted for its ancient Christian church. NI-CO-LAI'-EV, since Sebastopol was destroyed, is the principal Black-Sea naval station. ODESSA is the southern emporium of commerce.



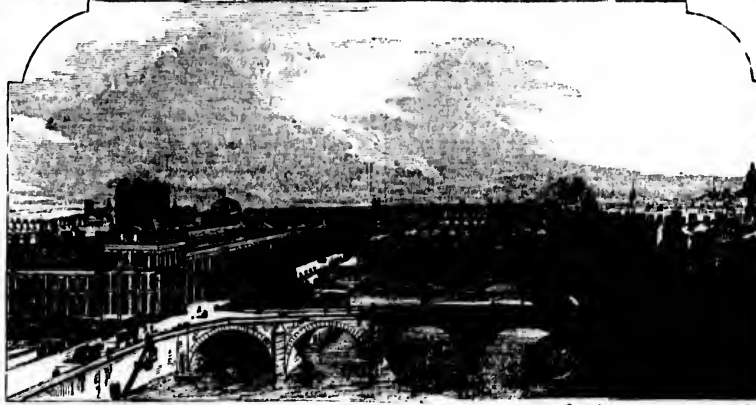
ST. ISAAC'S (CHURCH) SQUARE, AND THE SENATE-HOUSE, ST. PETERSBURG.

14. In the Crimea.—SE-BAN'-TO-POL, or SEV-AN'-TO-POL, was a strongly-fortified naval station. It was taken, in 1855, by the French and English, after a prolonged resistance. SIM-FER-O'-POL is the present Tartar capital. EU-PA-TO-RI-A and BAL-A-KLA-VA, on the west coast, and KAFFA and KERTCH, on the east coast, have become memorable since the late Russian war.



15. In the Don Basin.—TAD-AN-NOG, noted for its grain-trade; NO-VO-TCHER-KASK', the Cosack capital; KHARKOV, in the U'kraine. 16. In the Oka Basin.—O'-REL is a place of much trade. KA-LU'-GA and TU-LA have large manufactures. DON-O'-BI'-NO, famous for a French victory. MOSCOW, the former capital, a semi-oriental city, is noted for having been set on fire, in 1812, by the Russians, to prevent its becoming the winter head-quarters of the French army. It has been well rebuilt, and has extensive trade and manufactures. The Kremlin ("royal fortress"), a collection of palaces and churches, is a famous group of buildings.

17. On the Volga.—TWER, between Moscow and St. Petersburg, is a central place for trade. The annual fair of NISH-NE-I or NIZNI [nizh'-ne] NOV-GO-ROD' is attended by multitudes of people from Europe and Asia. KA-ZAN, a university town, is a central place of trade for Siberia and Tartary. SA-A-TOV is noted for its trade. ASTRA-KHAN' has extensive fisheries, and manufactures of leather. Its principal trade is with Asia.



PARIS, SHOWING (1) THE TUILERIES, (2) THE LOUVRE, (3) NOTRE DAME, (4) BRANCA-PALACE, AND (5) THE FANTHSON.

QUESTIONS.—14. Describe the Russian towns in the Crimea; 15. Don B.; 16. Oka B.; 17. on Volga. 18. Describe Circassia. Give deriv. of Poland. 19-21. position, &c. Give deriv. and size of France. 1. For what is it noted? 2. What is said of its extent? 3. phys. feat.? 4. climate, &c.? 5. inhabitants?

CIRCASSIA.

18. Circassia, lying between Europe and Asia, occupies the northern slope of the Caucasian Mountains. Russia has, after a long struggle, conquered this country. (See Russia in Asia, page 81.)

POLAND.

(From the word *poiska*, which signifies a "plain.")

19. Position.—POLAND lies between Russia and Prussia. It was once an independent kingdom; but, about the close of the last century, it was conquered, and divided between Russia, Prussia, and Austria.

20. Physical Features.—Poland is a very level country. The principal river is the Vistula. The climate is cold; but the soil is very fertile, and well adapted to the growth of grain, of which large quantities are exported.

21. Chief Towns.—WARSAW, on the Vistula, was the capital of the former Polish kingdom, but it is now a Russian garrison. At PUL-TUSK, near Warsaw, a battle was fought in 1806 between France and Russia.

THE EMPIRE OF FRANCE.

(From Franks, "free people," German tribes who conquered France in 5th century.)

Size, about the same as Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 458 miles.

1. Noted For.—FRANCE is noted for the military character, the gaiety, and the politeness of its people; its compact shape; and its extensive manufacture of silks and fancy articles.

2. Extent.—This empire extends from the English Channel to the Mediterranean Sea, and from the western frontiers of Germany, Switzerland, and Italy, to the Atlantic Ocean. SA-VOY' and NICE [necco], ceded by Sardinia, were added in 1860.

3. Physical Features.—It is mountainous in the south-eastern and southern portions, and undulating in the north and the north-west. The celebrated Pyr-en-ees Mountains separate France from Spain, the Alps divide it from Italy, and the Ju-ra from Switzerland. West of the Ju-ra lies the Plain of Burgundy, from which the Vosges [vozh] range extends north-east, and the Cévennes [say-ven'] south-west. To the north-west of the Middle Cévennes lies the Central Plain, with the Forez [fo-ray'] and Auvergne [o-vern'] Mountains. The surface is divided into four river-basins. (1) The first or north-east basin is drained by the Rhine, Moselle [mo-sel'], Meuse [muze], and Scheldt [skelt], and their tributaries. (2) The north-west or Channel basin is drained by the Somme and the Seine [sehn], with their tributaries. (3) The south-west or Atlantic basin is drained by the Loire [lwar], the Charente [shar-ent'], the Gironde, and the Adour [a-door'], with their tributaries. (4) The south-east or Mediterranean basin is drained by the Rhone.



THE GRATE-VINE.

4. Climate & Products.—

France is a land of corn, wine, and oil. Wheat, flax, sugar-beet, and other hardy plants flourish at the north; the more tender grape-vine, in central France; and the oil-olive, mulberry, & other tropical plants, at the south. Bees and silk-worms are extensively reared in the south. The chief minerals are iron, coal, and salt.

5. The Inhabitants are a mixed race of Celts, Goths, and Franks, in which the Celtic preponderates. Near the Rhine the people are chiefly of Germanic stock. Brittany de-

rived its

Eastern

3. Tra

Railways

the Engli

1859, 5,000

7. Ma

manufac

her silk-f

her expo

and her

8. M

centre of

and vari

9. Civi

nces, was

ments (no

mountain

10. Ch

shed town

f-titled to

vik-lont-s

bishop Fé

QUEST

8. Point o



rivered its name from fugitives from Great Britain. The inhabitants of the Eastern Pyrenees are still Spanish.

6. Travelling Facilities.—The public roads are generally good. Railways connect the interior and Paris with the most important towns on the English Channel, and with those on the Belgian frontier: total length in 1859, 5,000 miles. There are about 83 canals, their united length being 3,520 m.

7. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—In the extent and variety of her manufactures, France ranks next to Great Britain; but in the beauty of her silk-fabrics, she holds the first place in the world. The annual value of her exports amounts to about \$400,000,000; her revenue to \$350,000,000; and her national debt to \$1,230,000,000.

8. Manufacturing Centres.—LYONS, at the south-east, is the great centre of silk-manufacture; PARIS, of jewellery, gloves, and fancy articles; and various towns farther north, of linen, cotton, and lace.

9. Civil Divisions.—France, formerly divided into thirty-four provinces, was, at the Revolution in 1789, subdivided into eighty-six departments (not including Savoy and Nice), deriving their names from rivers, mountains, or other natural features of the district.

10. Chief Towns.—In the North-East Basin.—STRASBOURG, a fortified town on the Rhine, is noted for its cathedral. METZ, a strongly fortified town on the Moselle, has cloth-manufactures. VALENCIENNES (vâ-lont-sen-en) (famous for its laces), CAMBRAI (once the See of Archbishop Fénelon), LILLE, or LISLE, [leel], and ANRAN, on the Scheldt and

tributaries, have important cloth-manufactures. DUNKIRK, a seaport at the extreme north of France, was formerly owned by England.

11. In the English-Channel Basin.—CALAIS (kal-iz), on the coast, was once owned by England; BOURGNE (boo-lone) has important fisheries; DREPPÉ (de-op), a watering-place; ST. MALO, once owned by England, whence Jacques Cartier, the discoverer of Canada, sailed, in 1534; CHERBOURG (sher-boor), a strongly-fortified naval station. On the Somme, ABBEVILLE (ab-veel), and AMIENS. Near Abbeville is CRECY (kres-se), noted for Edward III.'s victory in 1346; and AGEN-COURT for Henry V.'s victory in 1415. On the Seine, HAVRE (hav-or), one of the principal commercial ports; ROUEN (rou-eh), where William the Conqueror died and Richard Cœur de Lion was buried, has an extensive cotton-trade. PARIS, the capital of France, 111 miles from the mouth of the Seine, is the second city in Europe for extent and importance. Its principal manufactures are fancy articles and jewellery. It is celebrated for the number and elegance of its public buildings, and for its scientific and literary institutions. Pop. 1,180,000. Near Paris are ST. DENIS (den-ne), where the French kings are buried; SEVRES (sev-er), noted for its porcelain; and VERSAILLES (ver-sayl) for its fountains and gardens, and for its palace, built by Louis XIV, but now converted into a beautiful museum of paintings. North-east of Paris is RHEIMS (ranze) with cloth-manufactures; and a fine Gothic cathedral, where the French kings are crowned and consecrated.

12. On the Atlantic Coast.—BREST, L'ORIENT (l-or-eh-on), ROCHERFORT

QUESTIONS.—Point out on the map the boundaries, mountains, and river-basins of France. 6. What is said of travelling facilities? 7. manufactures, &c. P 8. Point out the manufacturing centres; 9. civil divisions; 10. chief towns in the N.-E. Basin; 11. in English-Channel Basin; 12. on the Atlantic coast.

the north-
long struggle,

ussia. It was
the last century,
and Austria.

The principal
very fertile, and
es are exported.
e capital of the
At Prussia,
and Russia.

oe in 8th century.)
of 658 miles.

tary character,
oact shape; and

nglish Channel
ontiers of Ger-
ean. SA-VOY'
in 1860.

outh-eastern and
north-west. The
Spain, the Alps
West of the Jura



OR GRAPE-VINE.

or Mediterranean

4. Climate &
Products.—

France is a land
of corn, wine, and
oil. Wheat, flax,
sugar-beet, and
other hardy plants
flourish at the
north; the more
tender grape-vine,
in central France;
and the olive,
mulberry, & other
tropical plants, at
the south. Bees
and silk-worms are
extensively reared
in the south. The
chief minerals are
iron, coal, and salt.

5. The Inhab-
itants are a
mixed race of
Celts, Goths, and
Franks, in which
the Celtic prepon-
derates. Near the
Rhine the people
are chiefly of Ger-
manic stock.
Brittany do-

to deriv. of Poland,
e. P. 5. inhabitants?

[rosh'-fort], and ROCHELLE [ro-shell], are naval stations and dock-yards. On the Loire [lwa'r], NANTES, with extensive ship-building and foreign trade, celebrated for an edict in favour of the Protestants, issued by Henri IV. in 1598, and revoked by Louis XIV. in 1685; OR-LÉANS, noted for its cloth-manufactures, and for its siege, in 1428, by the English, which was raised by Joan of Arc; ST. ETIENNE [st'-yan'], with coal-mines, a manufacturing centre. Near the V.-en's, POITIERS [pwá-te-ay'], where, in 1565, the Black Prince took King John of France prisoner; and LIMOGES [le-moah'], with manufactures of iron and porcelain. On the G.-ron's, BORDAUX [bor-do'], the second seaport of France, held by England for 300 years, is noted for its export of wine; TOULOUSE [too-loor'] has a large transit-trade. On the Adour, BA-YONNE, where the bayonet was invented; and PAU [po], the birth-place, in 1553, of the celebrated Henri IV. of France, and, in 1765, of Bernadotte, afterwards King of Sweden.

13. On the Mediterranean Coast.—TOULON [too-lon'] is the naval station for the French Mediterranean fleet; and MARSEILLE [mar-sayl'], the greatest seaport in France. West of the Mouth of the Rhone are MONTPELLIER [mou-pel-yay']; and NIMES [neem], with many Roman remains. On the Rhone, ARLES, with great commerce; AVIGNON [a-veen-yon'], for seventy years the residence of the Popes; LYONS, a populous city, with extensive manufactures,—the birth-place of Marshal Villars, Jus-sieu [yoo'] the botanist, and Jacquard the inventor of the loom which bears his name. DIJON [de-ahon'] is the centre of the Burgundy wine-trade; BESANCON [beh-sar-son'], on the Doubs [doobs], noted for its clocks and watches; GRENOBLE, on the Isère [e-sayr'], contains a statue of the Che-valier [-yay] Bayard'. The province of NICE has a fine climate for invalids. In SAVOY are CHAMBERY [sham-bá-ree'], the capital, and CHAMMONT [shá-moo-neé'], near Mont Blanc. CORSIKA, an island in the Mediterranean, chief town AJACCIO [á-yat'-teho], belongs to France.

14. Colonies.—ALGERIA, in the north of Africa (page 95); SENEGAL' and other settlements on the west; BOURBON [boor-bon'] and other islands on the east coast of Africa (page 97). PONDICHERAY and CHAN-DAR-NAGOR', on the east coast of Hindostan'; MAHÉ [má-hay'] and other stations on the west coast (page 85). MARTINIQUE, GUADELOUPE, and other islands in the West Indies (page 47); FRENCH GUIANA, in the north of South America (page 50); ST. PIERRE, MIQUELON, and LABELAY, fishing-stations of Newfoundland (page 17). In Oceania, the MARQUESSAS [mar-kay'-sah] Islands, settlements in New CALLEDONIA and adjacent isles, and the protectorate of TAHITI [tá-hee-tai], and other islands (page 83). The united area of these French colonies is nearly 256,000 square miles, containing 3½ millions of people.

—THE KINGDOM OF SPAIN.

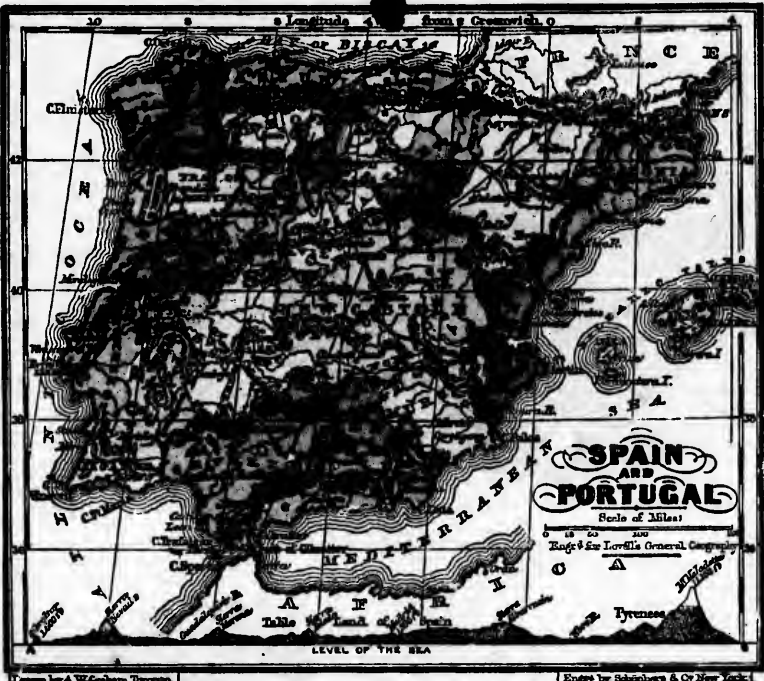
(*Hispánia* Latin), from the Phœnician *saphas*, a "rabbit"; also *Ibèria* (Greek), from the name of a powerful tribe, *Ibèri*, or that of the river *Ibèrus*, now Ebro.) Site, about the same as that of Upper Canada, or equal to a square of 485 miles.

1. Noted For.—SPAIN is noted for her former commercial greatness, and extensive efforts at colonization. She is now chiefly noted for her wine, raw silk, and merino-wool.

2. Position, &c.—This kingdom occupies the westerly part of the great southern peninsula of Europe. It contains 49 provinces.

3. Physical Features.—The interior is diversified, and consists of high table-lands, separated by mountain-ranges and drained by several rivers. The principal ranges are the Pyrenees at the north, the mountains of Castile [cas-teel'], and the Sierras (or saw-shaped ranges) To-le-do, Mo-re-na, and Ne-va-da, in the interior.

4. Rivers.—The principal are the Dou-ro, Ta-gus, and Gwa-dia'ná,



flowing through Portugal into the Atlantic; the Gwa-dal-quiv'-ir, flowing southwards; and the E-bro, flowing into the Mediterranean.

5. Capes.—The most noted are OR-to-gal, Fin-is-terre ("land's end"); Trafalgar, famous for Nelson's victory in 1805; TARIJA [tá-ree-fá] (from which we derive our word "tariff"), the southernmost part of Europe; Ga-ta, Falos [pah'-loce], Nun [noon], and Creuse.

6. The Bays are those of Co-run-na, Ca-diz, and Valencia. 7. Soil and Products.—The soil is generally fertile. In the north, where the climate is temperate, the apple flourishes, the hills are covered with oak and chestnut, and the valleys yield rich harvests of grain; but the high plateau of the centre are destitute of trees, and the climate is dry. In the south, where the climate is warm, the fig, the olive, the vine, the cactus-plant for the cochineal-insect, the orange, and the sugar-cane flourish. Fruits are abundant; also coal, lead, iron, and quicksilver.

8. Inhabitants, &c.—The Spaniards are a mixture of the Celtic, Gothic, Roman, and Arabic races. The population, almost entirely Roman Catholic, is about 16,500,000, of which about 50,000 are Gypsies. Agriculture, the cultivation of the grape, and the rearing of merino-sheep, form the leading pursuits. The theatre and bull-fights afford the chief popular amusements.

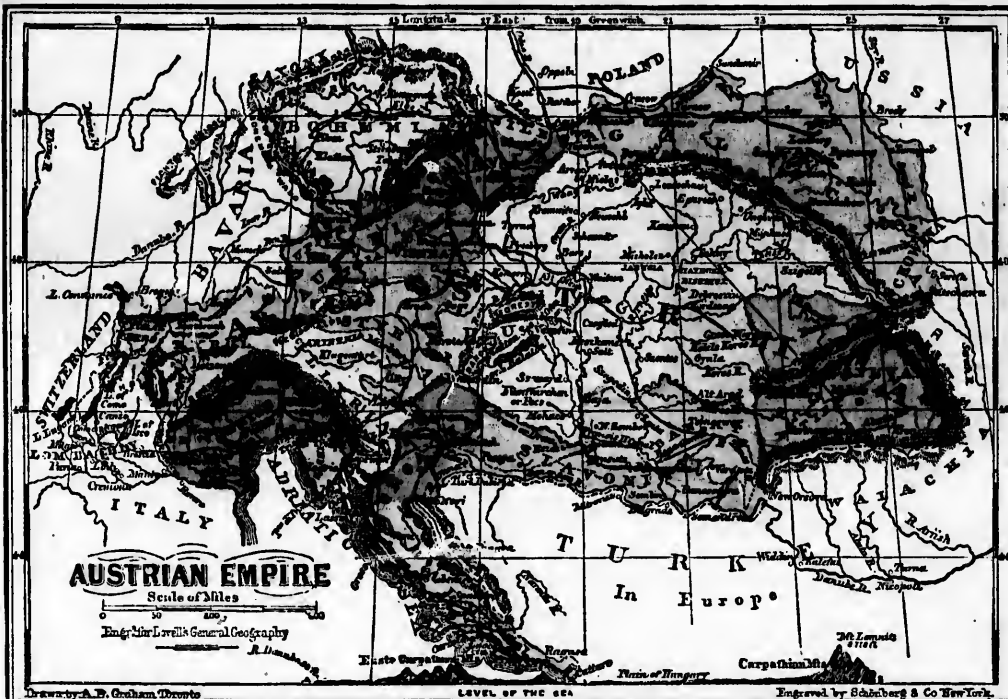
9. The Travelling Facilities are not numerous; and mules furnish the chief means of internal transport. There were four railways in 1868; total length 250 miles. The rivers have few bridges, and have generally to be for-ded. The canals are not well constructed.

10. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—The principal manufactures are silks, leather, saltpetre, &c. The chief exports are wines, oils, fruits, &c., annual value \$48,500,000; revenue \$120,000,000; national debt \$300,000,000. 11. Provinces.—Previous to 1833, Spain was divided into sixteen provinces; but it is now divided into forty-nine, including the Ba-le-ar'-ic Isles and the Canary Islands. (See map above.)

12. Chief Towns.—On the North Coast.—ST. SE-BAST'-IAN [-yan], taken by the British from the French in 1813; BIL'-BA-O and SAN-TAN'-DER, seaports; FERROL, a naval arsenal; and CORUNNA (noted for its herring-fisheries and cigars), whence the Spanish Armada, designed for the conquest of England, sailed in 1588, and where Sir John Moore fell in battle in 1809. South of Corunna, is SANTIAGO, famous for its cathedral.

13. In the Douro Basin.—VAL-PA-DO'-LID, where Columbus died in 1506 (see p. 47) and BURGOS [boor'-goos], are noted for their cathedrals, and for having been capitals of the kingdom. SE-go'-VIA has an aqueduct built by

QUESTIONS.—13. Point out on the map of France the chief towns on the Mediterranean coast. 14. Where are the French colonial possessions? Give the derivation and site of Spain. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position and boundaries on the map. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. Trace its rivers. 5. Point out its capes; and 6. bays. 7. Describe its soil and products. 8. What is said of its inhabitants? 9. Travelling facilities; 10. manufactures, exports, &c. 11. Point out its provinces. 12. Point out its chief towns on the north coast. 13. Point out those in the Douro Basin.



8. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—The manufactures are silk, wool, and cotton, Bohemian glass, flax, and paper; but agricultural pursuits and mining are the chief occupations. The annual value of exports is \$120,000,000; revenue \$160,000,000; debt \$1,200,000,000.



the capital of Bohemia. It has a large trade, and a university founded in 1348. BRUNN, the capital of Moravia, is noted for its manufactures. Near it is AUSTERLITZ, famous for Napoleon I's defeat, in 1805, of the Austrians and Russians. OLMUTZ and TROPAU contain fortresses. VIENNA, the capital of Austria and the centre of its trade, is a very handsome city. LINTZ, on the Danube; and SALZBURG, on the Sala. In the Tyrol are INNSBRUCK, the capital, on the river Inn; and TRENT, on the Adige, with a large transit-trade between Germany and Italy. GRAZ, on the Mur [moor], the capital of Styria, has a university; LOY-BACH, on the Save [sahv], is the capital of Illyria; and TRIESTE, on the Adriatic, is the chief seaport of Austria.

11. The Hungarian Provinces include (1) the kingdom of HUNGARY; (2) TRANSYLVANIA, south-east of Hungary; (3) the kingdom of SLAVONIA and (4) CROATIA, along the south of Hungary; (5) the kingdom of DARMATIA; and (6) the Military Frontier along the borders of Turkey. Hungary is a beautifully-diversified table-land enclosed by mountains, and is noted for its wine, tobacco, and salt-mines; and also for its horses, hogs, and black cattle. Transylvania is a mountainous region; and rock-salt is its chief mineral product.

12. Chief Cities.—On the Danube.—PRESHBURG, the legislative capital; KO'MORN, defended in 1849 by the Hungarians against the Austrians; BU-DA and PESTH, divided by the river, form one city, the commercial capital of Hungary; NEUSATZ [noi-sate] is opposite the fortress of PETERWAR-DEIN (named from Peter the Hermit). On the Theiss [tice].—TO-KAY, with celebrated wines, and SZEG-E-DIN. Another large city is DE-BREC-ZIN, 115 miles east of Pesth. KLAUSENBURG [klow-sen-boorg], HER-MANSTADT, and KRONSTADT are chief towns of Transylvania. A-GRAM is the capital of Slavonia and Croatia. In Dalmatia the chief towns are ZA-RA, the capital; SPA-LA-THO, mostly built out of the ruins of the Roman emperor Di-o-cle-tian's [-shan's] palace; and RA-GU-SA, formerly the capital of a republic.

13. The Polish Provinces include the kingdom of GALICIA, taken from Poland in 1772, and CRA'COV, taken in 1846; and the duchy of BUCK-O-WI-NA, taken from Turkey in 1777. Cattle and grain are the chief products. (For POLAND, see page 64.)

14. Chief Cities.—LIMBERG, the capital of Galicia, has a large fur-trade; and BRO-DY, one in grain and cattle. CRACOV, on the Vistula,

10. Chief Cities.—PRAGUE [prays] is

QUESTIONS.—8. Mention the Austrian manufactures, &c. 9. Point out and describe the German Provinces; 10. their chief cities; 11. The Hungarian Provinces; 12. their chief cities; 13. The Polish Provinces, &c.; 14. their chief cities. Trace on the map the boundaries of Austria; its mountains, &c.



QUESTIONS.—Give the name, and point out on the map the position, of each State in the Germanic Confederation. What seas are at the north and the south? Point out the coast-lines. Trace out the mountain-ranges, and show the course of the rivers. What chief cities do the railways connect?

the
ki
hi
us
at
wh
ned

gon-
buidi
churo
tary s

(From
count
1. E
of Cen
and V
Seas a
2. T
manic
mark,
Bavaria
electora
duchies
their ov
the inte
is Presi
244,642
State is

Size
3. N
Saxon
4. P
and Ho
5. Ph
extensiv
Ocean.
Harz Mo
6. Ch
Here the
on the L
name, I

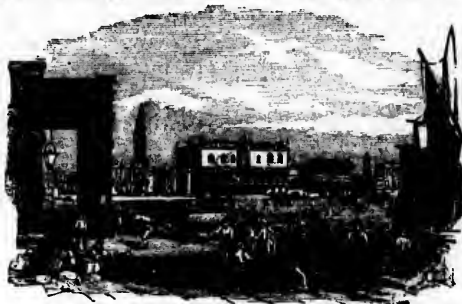
(Saxon
Size, more
7. N
German
8. Po

QUES
manic Co
tion and
of Bavari
temberg.

the former capital of Poland, is noted for its cathedral, in which the Polish kings were crowned and buried. Near Craoow is a large mound 120 feet high, of earth from Polish battle-fields, raised to the memory of Kosciuszko, a Polish hero.

15. **The Italian Province of Venetia**, in the Po valley, is situated at the head of the Adriatic Sea. It is rich and fertile.

16. **Chief Cities.**—**MAN-TU-A**, a fortified city. **VENICE**, the capital, was long the head of a celebrated republic. It stands on 82 islets, connected by 360 bridges. There are 150 canals, which are traversed by light



GRAND CANAL AND DOGE'S PALACE, VENICE.

gondolas. The Grand Canal divides the city into two. The principal buildings of Venice are the palace of the Doge [dōj] (i. e. duke), and the church of St. Mark. **PAD-U-A** has a university; **VE-RO-NA** is a noted military station; **TRE-VI-SO** and **U-DI-NE** are manufacturing towns.

GERMANY, OR CENTRAL EUROPE.

(From the Celtic *ger*, "war" and *man*, "man"; or from the Persian *er*, "man", a country beyond the Oxus River, whence the Germans are supposed to have come.)

1. **Position.**—**GERMANY**, geographically, embraces the whole of Central Europe lying east and west between the Rivers Rhine and Vistula, and north and south between the German and Baltic Seas and the Rhine, Lake Constance, and the River Inn.

2. **The Germanic Confederation.**—Under the head of the Germanic Confederation, Germany includes parts of Austria, Prussia, Denmark, and Holland, the whole of the kingdoms of Hanover, Saxony, Bavaria, and Wurtemberg, and twenty-seven other states, as follows: one electorate, one landgraviate, four free cities, six grand-duchies, eight duchies, and seven principalities; in all, thirty-five states, governed by their own laws, but united in one Diet or Legislature so as to secure the integrity and independence of each state. The Emperor of Austria is President of the Diet. The united area of this Confederation is 244,642 square miles. Population in 1859 about 50,000,000. Each State is described separately, as follows:

THE KINGDOM OF HANOVER.

Size, about half that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 122 miles.

3. **Noted For.**—**HANOVER** (once the theatre of Roman and Saxon contests) is noted for its former connection with England.

4. **Position.**—This kingdom lies between Denmark, Prussia, and Holland. It is intersected by Olden-burg and Brunswick.

5. **Physical Features.**—The chief rivers of Hanover, which is an extensive plain, are the We-ser and the Ems, flowing into the German Ocean. The River Elbe separates it from Denmark. The mines in the Harz Mountains, at the south, are a source of wealth to the kingdom.

6. **Chief Cities.**—**HANOVER**, on the Leine [ly'-neh], is the capital. Here the astronomer Sir John Herschel was born. **GOTTING-EN**, also on the Leine, has a university. **OSNABRUCK** is noted for its linen of that name. **EMDEN**, at the outlet of the Ems, is the chief seaport.

THE KINGDOM OF SAXONY.

(*Saxon*, "a short-swordsmen," the name of a celebrated early German tribe.) Size, more than twice that of Prince-Edward Island, or equal to a square of 76 miles.

7. **Noted For.**—**SAXONY**, the centre of the book-trade of Germany, is noted for being the smallest kingdom in Europe.

8. **Position.**—It lies between Prussia, Austria, and Bavaria.

QUESTIONS.—15. Point out and describe Venetia, and 16. its cities. Give the derivation of Germany. 1. Point out its position. 2. Describe the Germanic Confederation. Give the size of Hanover. 3. For what is it noted? 4. Describe its position; 5. physical features; 6. cities. Give the derivation and size of Saxony. 7. For what is it noted? 8. Describe its position; 9. physical features; 10. products; 11. cities. Give the derivation and size of Bavaria. 12. For what is it noted? 13. Describe its position; 14. physical features; 15. products; 16. cities. Give the derivation and size of Wurtemberg. 17. For what is it noted? 18. Describe its position; 19. physical features; 20. products; 21. cities. Point out these countries on the map.

9. **Physical Features.**—From the Bohemian Erz-gebirge [erts-ge-beer'-ga] ("Ore Mountains") at the south, the surface of Saxony slopes northwards to the great plain. It is rich in minerals, and its scenery is highly picturesque. The River Elbe and its tributaries flow through it.

10. **Products.**—Orchards, vineyards, and pasture-lands abound. On the latter, the sheep which furnish the fine Saxony-wool are reared. This wool, and the products of numerous mines, are the chief exports.

11. **Chief Cities.**—**DRESDEN**, the capital, situated on the Elbe, is noted for its public buildings, museum, and gallery of paintings; also for its china and porcelain. **FREIBERG** [fry'-boerg] is in the centre of the mining-district. **LEIPZIG** [līpe'-tsig], the German book-mart, has a university.

THE KINGDOM OF BAVARIA.

(Originally called *Boi-aria*, from the ancient *Boi-i*, who settled here 600 B. C.)

Size, a little larger than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 173 miles.

12. **Noted For.**—**BAVARIA** is noted for its transit-trade between Austria, Italy, and Northern Germany.

13. **Position.**—Next to Prussia, this is the most important State in Germany. The chief part lies between Bohemia and Wurtemberg; and the remainder on the Rhine, east of Baden.

14. **Physical Features.**—Mountains nearly enclose Bavaria at the south and the east; forming an extensive river-basin for the Danube and the Main (a tributary of the Rhine), which here take their rise. Rhenish Bavaria is traversed by mountains dividing it into two parts.

15. **The Products** are grain, flax, timber, and fruits. The grape flourishes in the south. Timber, grain, beer, and wines are the chief exports.



THE ROYAL PALACE, MUNICH.

16. **Chief Cities.**—**MUNICH** [mīk], the capital, on the I-ser, is famous for its galleries of painting and sculpture, its library and university. Excepting that of Madrid, its site is more elevated than that of any other city in Europe. **AUGSBURG**, on the Lech [lek], where the Protestant Confession of Faith was presented to the Emperor Charles V. in 1530; **RATISBON**, the seat of the German Diet from 1662 until 1806; **ELEN-BERG**, the scene, in 1704, of one of Marlborough's victories; **NU-REM-BERG**, on the Rhine, where watches were invented, is still noted for clocks and toys; **SPE-YER**, or **SPIERS**, on the Rhine, where the name "Protestant" was first given, in 1529, to those who protested against the decrees of the Emperor.

THE KINGDOM OF WURTEMBERG.

(Named from a leading Count of that title in the 11th century.)

Size, a fourth that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 88 miles.

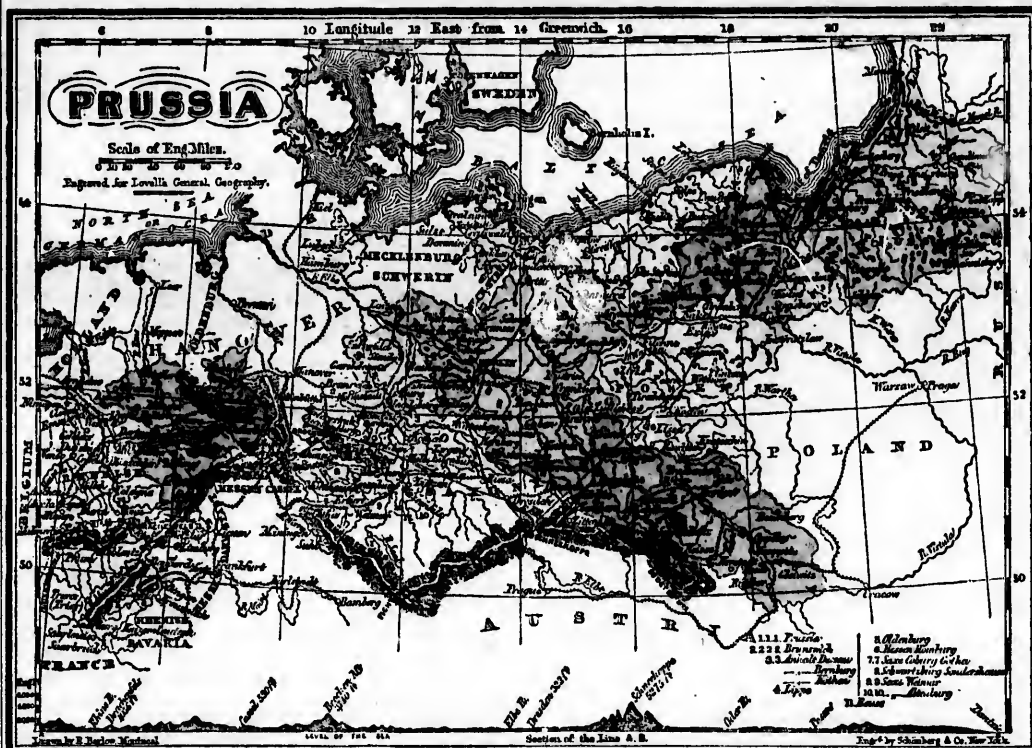
17. **Noted For.**—**WURTEMBERG** is noted for having been the chief theatre of war during the French Revolution of 1789-99.

18. **Position.**—This kingdom (formed by Napoleon I. in 1805) lies between Bavaria Proper and the Grand-Duchy of Baden.

19. **Physical Features.**—Wurtemberg is traversed by the Raube [robe] Alps; among which the Neckar, a Rhine tributary, takes its rise.

20. **Products.**—The soil being highly fertile, grain and fruits are abundant. Mines, and mineral springs, are numerous.

21. **Chief Cities.**—**STUTGARD**, the capital, near the Neckar, is noted for its book-trade, its palace, and its library; **ULM** is at the head of navigation on the Danube; **TU-BING-GEN**, on the Neckar, has a university.



THE KINGDOM OF PRUSSIA.

(From *Prussia*, name of a Gothio tribe settled between the Vistula and Niemen.)
Size, about half that of Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 329 miles.

- 1. Noted For.**—PRUSSIA [prush-yä] is noted for its rapid growth, since 1701, to be one of the leading powers of Europe.
- 2. Position, &c.**—This kingdom is divided into East and West Prussia (which lie about forty miles apart) by the kingdom of Hanover, and the Electorates of Hesse-Cassel and Darmstadt.
- 3. Civil Divisions.**—EAST PRUSSIA is divided into six provinces; viz., PRUSSIA PROPER, PO-SÉN, SI-LE-SI-A, SAXONY, BRANDENBURG, and POMERANIA. WEST PRUSSIA is divided into two provinces; viz., WEST-FALIA and RHENISH PRUSSIA.
- 4. Physical Features.**—From the interior, the surface inclines to the north, as shown by the direction of the rivers. Along the Baltic, the coast is generally flat. Eastern Prussia is covered with forests, and dotted over with lakes. In the mountainous part of the south, the scenery is picturesque. Rhenish Prussia lies in the Rhine valley.
- 5. Rivers.**—The chief rivers which flow through Prussia to the north are the Vistula, the Oder, the Elbe, and the Rhine, with some of their tributaries. The Oder is almost entirely in Prussia.
- 6. Soil and Climate.**—Along the rivers the soil is fertile; in other parts it is sandy and not so productive. The wine-district is in the rich Rhine valley. The climate near the Baltic is changeable and foggy, but in the interior of the country it is warm and agreeable.
- 7. Products.**—The chief products are grain, hemp, flax, hops, tobacco, sugar-beet, and grapes. Sheep, hogs, and bees are extensively reared. Amber is abundant on the shores of the Baltic. Mines of copper, iron, and lead are worked in the mountainous parts of Eastern Prussia.
- 8. The Inhabitants.**—are chiefly Germans; but in parts of Eastern Prussia they are of Slavonic origin. Jews are numerous in the cities and

towns. Most of the inhabitants are engaged in agricultural pursuits. Education is generally diffused, and there are 7 universities in the kingdom.

9. Travelling Facilities.—There were, in 1858, 2,514 miles of railway, connecting Berlin, the capital, with the principal cities of Continental Europe. There are a few canals, but the rivers afford commercial facilities.

10. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—The leading manufactures in the mining-districts of Rhenish Prussia and Silesia are linen and woollen goods. Among the chief exports are grain, wine, timber, wool, and linen; the annual value of which is about \$150,000,000; revenue \$100,000,000; national debt \$190,000,000.

11. Chief Cities.—On the *Nie-men* [nee-].—MEM-EL, with an extensive grain and timber trade; and TILSIT, where, in 1807, the interview took place, and a treaty was formed, between Napoleon I. and Alexander I.



THE KING'S PALACE, BERLIN.

QUESTIONS.—What seas and countries are shown on the map? Point out the boundaries and extent of Prussia, and its mountain-ranges. What capitals & railways connect? Give the derivation and size of Prussia. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position? 3. civil divisions. 4. What is said of its physical features? 5. rivers? 6. soil, &c.? 7. products? 8. inhabitants? 9. travelling facilities? 10. manufactures, &c.? 11. cities on the Niemen?



LEANING TOWER OF SAN FELIPE, SARAGOSSA.

16. *In the Guadalquivir Basin.*—CA-DIZ, an old seaport in the Island of Leon; XEREZ [hay'-rez], whence are exported (Xeres) sherry wines; SEVILLA, once the Gothic and afterwards the Moorish capital; CORDOVA, a famous city under the Moors. *On the Xenil* [hay'-neel], GRA-NA-DA, the last stronghold of the Moors, contains the fortified palace of the Alhambra, a noble specimen of Saracenic architecture.

17. *On the South and East Coast.*—MADRID, the present capital, is situated near the Man-sa-na-res, a tributary of the Tagus. It is nearly eight miles in circuit, and surrounded by walls. The palace of the Es-cu-ri-al (built in honour of St. Lorenzo by Philip II.), 24 miles N. W. of the city, contains a splendid mausoleum for the Spanish sovereigns; also a fine collection of paintings, a large library, and a college.

15. *In the Guadiana Basin.*—BADAJOS [bad-a-hoce'], a fortified frontier-city; MERIDIAN, birth-place of Fernando Cortes, conqueror of Mexico; and TRUXILLO, of Pizarro, conqueror of Peru.

18. *In the Ebro Basin.*—SARAGOSSA, celebrated for its resistance to the French in 1808-9, and for its warrior-maiden, the heroine of the siege, contains a famous leaning-tower like that of Pisa in Italy. PAMPUNYA, a fortress; and VITTORIA, the scene of one of Wellington's victories.

19. *The Balearic Isles* lie east of Spain. They are IVIZA [e-vee'-ka], MAJORCA, and MINORCA. PALMA, in Majorca, is the capital. MAJORCA, in Minorca, has a fine harbour. The islands are healthy, and their soil is fertile.

20. *Colonies.*—Of the former numerous Spanish colonies, chiefly in South America, CUBA and PORTO RICO, in the West Indies, alone remain (page 47); CUBA [su'-ka], and five other small settlements in the north of Morocco (p. 95); and the CANARY ISLANDS, off the west coast of Africa (p. 97); and part of the PHILIPPINE ISLANDS and of the LA-DROONES, in the Pacific Ocean (pp. 89 and 93).

21. *Gibraltar.*—See British Dependencies in Europe, page 62.

22. *Andorra.*—This small republic, independent since 790, lies in three wild valleys in the Pyrenees. The people, about 18,000 in number, are chiefly engaged in moining and in rearing cattle.

THE KINGDOM OF PORTUGAL.

(From port-o, a "po," and Cal-is (now Ca-ya), a town at the mouth of the Douro.) Size, about one third larger than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 190 miles.

- 1. Noted For.**—PORTUGAL was formerly noted for her commercial greatness; but now for her wines and fruits.
- 2. Position.**—This kingdom is bounded on two sides by Spain, and on two by the Atlantic Ocean. (See map of Spain and Portugal, on the opposite page.)
- 3. Physical Features.**—Its surface is agreeably diversified, and gradually slopes from the north towards the Atlantic Ocean. Its rivers chiefly rise in Spain. The mountains are the Sierras Estrel-la, d'Ossa, and Monchique [mon-she'-ka]. The capes are Ro-ca and St.

QUESTIONS.—14. Mention the towns in the Tagus Basin; 15. in the Guadiana Basin; 16. in the Guadalquivir Basin; 17. on the S. and E. coasts; 18. in the Ebro Basin. 19. What is said of the Balearic Isles? 20. of the Colonies? 21. of Gibraltar? 22. of Andorra? Give the derivation and size of Portugal. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position on the map. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. What is said of its soil and products? 5-7. inhabitants, travelling facilities, and manufactures, &c.? 8. Point out the civil divisions; 9-12. chief cities. 13. Name the Colonies. Give derivation and size of Switzerland. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position.

the Roman emperor Trajan. SALAMANCA has a university. CIUDAD RODRIGO [the-oo'-dad-ro-dre'-go] is a fortified town.

14. *In the Tagus Basin.*—TOLEDO, another former capital, is famous for its sword-manufactures. MADRID, the present capital, is situated near the Man-sa-na-res, a tributary of the Tagus. It is nearly eight miles in circuit, and surrounded by walls. The palace of the Es-cu-ri-al (built in honour of St. Lorenzo by Philip II.), 24 miles N. W. of the city, contains a splendid mausoleum for the Spanish sovereigns; also a fine collection of paintings, a large library, and a college.

Vincent; the latter famous for the defeat of the Spanish fleet in 1797 by the British Admiral Jervis. The coast is high and rocky.

4. **Soil and Products.**—The soil is rich, and the climate mild and salubrious. The products are similar to those of Spain. The vine flourishes in the north; and the olive, the orange, and the citron in the south. Iron-ore, building-stones, and beautiful marbles are abundant.

5. **The Inhabitants** are the same as those of Spain, but their language is different. Agriculture is neglected, but the vine is much cultivated.

6. **The Travelling Facilities** are not good. There are no canals; and but one railway, which runs 75 miles from Lisbon to the interior. The navigation of the rivers is often interrupted by droughts.

7. **Manufactures, Exports, &c.**—Manufactures are not extensive. Annual value of exports \$12,000,000; revenue \$14,000,000; debt \$115,000,000.

8. **Civil Divisions.**—Portugal is divided into eight provinces. (See map.)

9. **Chief Cities.**—In the North.—BRAGA, and BRAGA. From O. later the Portuguese royal family takes its name.

10. *On the Douro.*—O-PO-RO has extensive trade in port-wine, from which it takes its name. It was the birth-place of Magellan the navigator; LA-ME-GO, where the Cortes (or Parliament) first met. *To the South-East.*—ALMEIDA [almay'-o-da]. *On the Mon-do-ya.*—CO-IM-BRA contains the only university in the kingdom. BU-SA-CO is north of Coimbra.

11. *On the Tagus.*—LISBON, capital of the kingdom, is well situated on the bank of the river, and has a fine wide harbour. It was nearly destroyed by the great earthquake of 1755, when about 60,000 people perished. North-west of Lisbon are CINTA, VIMRIRA [vim-may'-e-re], and TORRES VE-DRAS, famous in the campaigns of Wellington.

12. **The other Chief Cities** are SE-TT-BAL, with fisheries and salt manufacture; and EL-VAS, a frontier-fortress on the Guadiana. SI-RES is the birth-place of the navigator Vasco de Gama.

13. **Colonies.**—The Portuguese were the first to double the Cape of Good Hope on their way to India. They held Brazil till 1825. Their colonial possessions are now the AZORES [ayz'-ores] (from azor [K'-sore], a "hawk"), MADRISA [má-day'-ra] ("wood"), and the CAPE-VERD ISLANDS, in the Atlantic; BISSAO [be-sah'-one], and the Islands of St. THOMAS and PRINCE, on the Guinea coast (p. 97); AN-GO-LA and MO-ZAMBIQUE [buz'-ka], in Africa (p. 96); GO-A, the principal settlement in Hindostan (p. 85); MA-CA-O in China (p. 87); and FLO-ANS, SO-LOX, and part of TI-MOR, in Malaysia (p. 91).



CITY OF OPORTO, NEAR THE MOUTH OF THE DOURO RIVER.

THE REPUBLIC OF SWITZERLAND.

(From Schwyts, near Lake Zurich; Helvetia, from Helvetii, a nation of Gaul.) Size, one fifth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 124 miles.

- 1. Noted For.**—SWITZERLAND is noted for being the most mountainous country in Europe; and for its picturesque scenery.
- 2. Position.**—This republic lies entirely inland. Its boundaries touch France and Sardinia; the Tyrol, a province of Austria; and Wurtemberg and Baden, States of Germany.
- 3. Its Physical Features** are remarkable. They embrace mountains, valleys, waterfalls, streams, lakes, and glaciers. The scenery is highly picturesque. From the centre, MOUNT ST. GOTTHARD, the LEPONTINE and PENNINE ALPS, extend south-west, the BER-NESSE ALPS west, the CENTRAL SWISS ALPS north, and the RHODANIAN ALPS east. The glaciers of ice, formed along the snow-line of the mountains, and the avalanches of snow, sometimes prove very destructive.
- 4. The Chief Rivers**, all rising near Mount St. Gotthard, are the Rhone, the Ticino [te-chee-no], the Rhine, the Aar, and the Inn.
- 5. Lakes.**—The largest are Constance or Boden See, Ge-ne-va or Le-man, Brienz [bre-on's], Thun [toon], Lu-cern's, Zug, Zu-ric's, Neuchâtel [nu-shê-tel], Bi-cône's or Biel [beel], and Morat [mo-rat].

QUESTIONS.—14. Mention the towns in the Tagus Basin; 15. in the Guadiana Basin; 16. in the Guadalquivir Basin; 17. on the S. and E. coasts; 18. in the Ebro Basin. 19. What is said of the Balearic Isles? 20. of the Colonies? 21. of Gibraltar? 22. of Andorra? Give the derivation and size of Portugal. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position on the map. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. What is said of its soil and products? 5-7. inhabitants, travelling facilities, and manufactures, &c.? 8. Point out the civil divisions; 9-12. chief cities. 13. Name the Colonies. Give derivation and size of Switzerland. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position.



tural pursuits. in the kingdom. miles of railway, of Continental ercial facilities. factories in the woolen goods, and linen; the 0,000; national with an extensive interview took Alexander I.

anges. What s. 4. What is e Niemen?

6. Soil and Climate.—In the valleys the soil is excellent. The climate varies with the elevation: it is cold on the mountains, temperate on the plains, and hot in the valleys.

7. Products, &c.—Flax and hemp are extensively grown in Switzerland, but it is best adapted for pasturage. Fruit, grain, and the vine grow in the valleys. The ibex (or rook-goat) and the chamois are numerous. Of domestic animals, the Alpine spaniel (or St. Bernard dog) is much celebrated. Mineral-springs are numerous.

8. Natural Curiosities.—The Falls of Schaffhausen (shaff-how'-zen), in the Rhine, and the Cataract of Staubbach, near Berns, are celebrated.

9. Civil Divisions.—There are 22 cantons—

—of which are each divided into two, making 25 separate republics, united for general purposes. Their Legislature, consisting of deputies from the cantons, is called a Diet.

10. Inhabitants, &c.—The inhabitants are chiefly Teutonic and Celtic origin. They are industrious and patriotic. According to their geographical position, they speak the French, the German, or the Italian language. Three fifths of the population are Protestant, and the remainder Roman Catholic. Education is generally diffused.

11. The Travelling Facilities are good. Roads have been made across the mountains. 310 miles of railway had been constructed in 1856; and steamboats ply on the principal lakes.

12. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—The manufactures of watches, musical-boxes, and jewellery forms a chief part of Swiss industry. These, with cattle, cheese, butter, silk-stuffs, and ribbons, are the principal exports. Annual revenue \$3,200,000; national debt \$3,000,000.

13. Chief Cities.—On the Aar.—HAPSBURG, near its mouth, once the family-seat of the House of Austria. BERNE, the capital, where the Diet meets, is the seat of a university. Its academies and fountains are numerous. NYONNAY, LUGERN, SEM-PACH, BURENEN, the birth-place of William Tell, and ALT-ORB, where he shot the apple off his son's head; ZU-RICH, at the foot of a beautiful lake, is noted for its schools.

14. In the Rhine Basin.—BASEL (bahl) is noted for its university, its ribbon-manufacture, and for its extensive trade with France, Germany, &c. The learned Erasmus is buried here. ST. GALL, or GALLEN, has manufactures.

15. In the Rhone Basin.—GENEVA, on the Rhone, at the foot of the Lake of Geneva, is the most populous city in Switzerland. It is noted for watch-making. The theologian Calvin and Bess resided here. At LAUSANNE (lo-san') Edward Gibbon, the English historian, wrote his celebrated history of the "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."

THE ITALIAN PENINSULA

(From *It-a-lia*, a chief of the G-no-tri, called *Hesperia*, "Western," by the Greeks.)
Size, nearly five times that of Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 305 miles.

1. Noted For.—ITALY is noted for its ancient greatness; its paintings and statuary; and for its long being the residence of the Pope, or Head of the R.-Catholic Church throughout the World.

2. Boundaries.—Italy (a boot-shaped peninsula) is bounded on the north by France, Austria, and Switzerland; east by the Adriatic Sea; and south and west by the Mediterranean Sea.

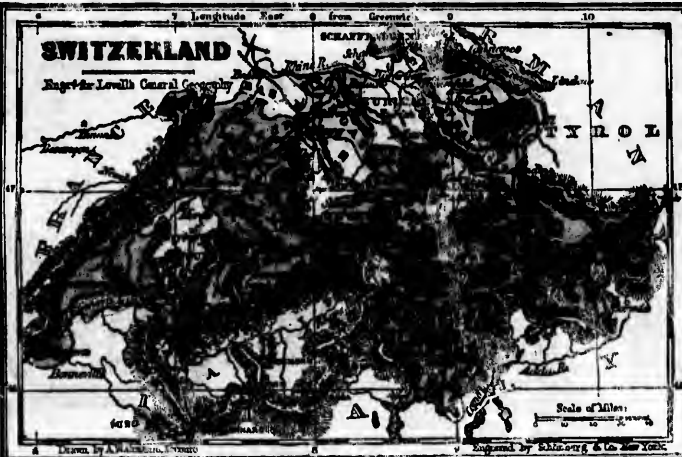
3. Physical Features.—The mountains of Italy are the Alps and the Apennines. The snow-capped Alps form a gigantic curve at the north. The Apennines, a chain running from north to south, form the water-shed of the peninsula, and naturally divide it into two parts. The third natural division is the plain lying south of the Alps.

4. The Principal Capes are Leu-ca, Nau or Colonna, Spartivento, Point Pal-i-zu-ro, and Point Li-co-sa.

5. The Principal Gulfs are Tri-est's, Venice [ven-is], Manfredonia, Taranto, Squil-la-ce, Policastro, Salerno, Naples, Ga-e-ta, and Gen'-o-a.

6. Natural Curiosities.—The volcano of Mount Vesuvius near Naples, and that of Mount Etna in Sicily, have long been famous.

QUESTIONS.—6. What is said of the soil and climate of Switzerland? 7. products, &c.? 8. natural curiosities? 9. civil divisions? 10. inhabitants, &c.? 11. travelling facilities? 12. manufactures, exports, &c.? 13. Name the chief cities on the Aar; 14. in the Rhine Basin; 15. in the Rhone Basin. Give derivation and size of Italy. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its boundaries; and 3. physical features. 4. Name the capes; 5. gulfs; 6. natural curiosities; 7. rivers and lakes. 8. What is said of the climate? 9. soil and products? 10. inhabitants? 11. travelling facilities? 12. manufactures and exports? 13. Name, and point out (see map on next page), the Italian Islands. 14. What is said of Sicily? 15. of its chief cities? 16. of the Lipari Islands?



7. Rivers and Lakes.—The rivers of the northern plain are the Ad'-ige and the Po, with the lakes Maggioro [mad-jo'-ro], Lugano, Co-mo, Le'-o, and Garda; and those of the west slope of the Apennines are the Arno, the Ti-ber, and the Volturno, with the lake Perugia.

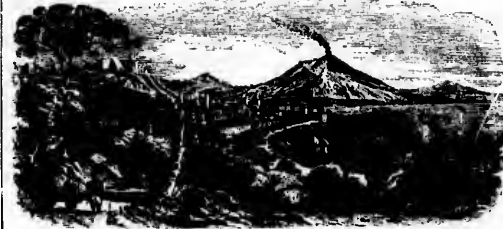
8. Climate.—The clear sky and salubrious climate of Italy are justly celebrated; the exceptions are at the north, where it is cold, and changes are sudden. A malaria prevails at the north-west coast, and a sirocco-wind from Africa at the south.

9. Soil and Products.—The fertile soil produces a great variety of fruits, as well as wheat, rice, cotton, olives, grapes, &c. In the south the sugar-cane, the orange, the fig, and the mulberry are cultivated. Lead, iron, alabaster, lava, and marble abound. Sponges and corals are found on the coasts of Sicily, and sulphur in the interior.

10. Inhabitants.—The Italians are a mixed race, made up of Greeks, Germans, Gauls, and Goths, who intruded on the original inhabitants.

11. Travelling Facilities.—In Northern Italy, and in Tuscany, the roads are good; but not so in Central Italy and Southern Italy. Mules are used for the purpose of transport over the mountain-passes; but the principal cities in the north are connected by railroads.

12. Manufactures and Exports.—Silk is the great staple; also straw-hats, artificial flowers, and musical instruments. The chief exports include these, and kid and lamb skins, olive-oil, fruits, coral, and perfumery.



CITY AND BAY OF NAPLES, WITH MOUNT VESUVIUS. (See page 70.)

THE ITALIAN ISLANDS

Size, one sixth smaller than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 133 miles.

13. These Islands are SICILY, the LIP-ARI ISLANDS, SARDINIA, CORSICA, and ELBA. They lie to the south and west of Italy.

14. Sicily is the largest island in the Mediterranean Sea. It is separated from Italy by the Strait of Mess'ina. On the east side of the island is Mount Etna, a celebrated volcano, 10,874 feet high. The upper part is covered with scor'ie and snow; the middle, with forests of pine, oak, &c.; and the lower or lava region, with towns and vineyards.

15. Chief Cities.—PALERMO, the capital of the island, has a university. It was taken by the Normans in 1072. MESSINA is a commercial city. CANTANIA has silk-manufacture. SYRACUSE (sir'-i-kuze), founded by the Corinthians, 736 B.C., was once famous. GIB-GEN'-TI has a sulphur-trade. MAB-SA'-LA is noted for its wines. TRA'-PA-NI is a seaport.

16. The Lipari Islands, north of Sicily, are volcanic. The volcano of Strom'-bo-li, in the island of that name, is called "the light-house of the Mediterranean." LIPARI supplies large quantities of pumice-stone.



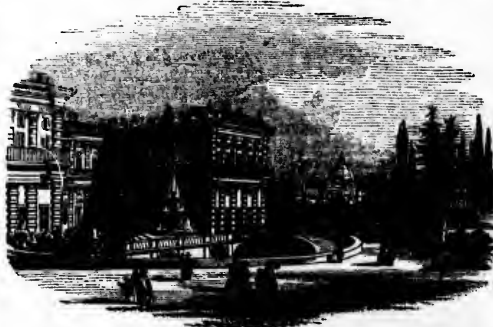
CHURCH OF SANTO GIOVANNI (ST. JOHN), TURIN.

the Austrians in 1800. On the coast is the seaport of GEN'OA, the birth-place of Columbus, and formerly the capital of a republic. Its silks and velvets are celebrated. MILAN, in the Plain of Lombardy, is a place of great trade. Its cathedral of white marble is celebrated. MONZA, capital of the Lon-go-bard kings; Como, on Lake Como; and BER'GA-MO, with large fairs. At PA-VI-A, Francis I. of France was defeated, in 1525, by Charles V. of Spain. LO-DI is memorable for the terrible passage of its bridge, in 1796, by Napoleon I.; BRESCIA ('bresh'-e-ä), with manufactures of fire-arms; CRE-MO-NA, with silk-trade. MONTABELLO, MA-GEN'-TA, and SOL-FER-I'NO, noted for battles, in 1859, between the allied French and Sardinians against the Austrians.

23. Parma and Mod'-ena, formerly separate duchies, lie to the south of Lombardy. PARMA is the capital of one, and MODENA of the other. CARSA'NA, famous for its beautiful marble, is in Modena.

24. Tuscany, formerly a Grand-Duchy, lies south of Modena. The Arno, flowing through a beautiful valley, is the principal river. The chief exports are silks, tuscan straw-hats, and olive-oil.

25. Chief Cities.—FLO-R'ENCE, or FI-O-R'EN'-ZA, ("the flowery,") was, in the Middle Ages, the head of a flourishing republic. Under its after-rulers, the Medici [me-dee-che], it became celebrated for its painters and



THE PITTI-PALACE MUSEUM AT FLORENCE, THE CAPITAL OF TUSCANY.

17. Sardinia is 159 miles long, by 66 broad. The coasts are bold and rocky, and the interior mountainous. The plains are noted for their beauty and fertility; but there are several stony, sterile districts. The Tiro is the principal river. CAOLIANI (kal-yah'-re) (the capital), and SAS-SA'-ni, the chief towns, have each a university.

18. Corsica belongs to France (see sec. 13, page 66). It is 110 miles long to Cape Corso, and 53 miles wide. The west coast has numerous bays, while the east coast is almost unbroken. A mountain-chain, rich in minerals, runs through the centre of the island. AJACCIO, the capital, is noted as the birth-place, in 1769, of Napoleon I.

19. Elba lies off the coast of Tuscany. It is noted for the first Napoleon's retirement there in 1814. The island is entirely mountainous.

20. Italy Proper consists (1) of the Kingdom of ITALY, including the whole of the Peninsula except (2) the Austrian Province of VENICE or VE-NE-TIA [-shä], at the north-east, and (3) the PONTIFICAL STATES.

THE KINGDOM OF ITALY.

Area, about twice that of Newfoundland, or equal to a square of 340 miles.

21. Position, &c.—This kingdom includes the Islands of SARDINIA and SICILY, and the whole of the ITALIAN PENINSULA, except VENETIA and the PONTIFICAL TERRITORY. The government is a free constitutional monarchy. The town in the Principality of MON'-A-CO, near Nice, is under the protection of Italy; the remainder of the Principality was purchased by France in 1861.

22. Chief Cities.—TU-RIN', in Piedmont, has extensive silk-manufactures. Near ALESSANDRIA is MA-REN-GO, where Napoleon defeated

QUESTIONS.—17-20. What is said of Sardinia, Corsica, Elba, and Italy Proper? Point out the seas, islands, gulfs, capes, countries, mountains, rivers, and railways on the map. What is the size of the kingdom of Italy? 21. Point out its position on the map. 22. Point out and describe its chief cities. 23. What is said of Parma and Modena, and their chief towns? 24. What is said of Tuscany? and 25. of its chief cities?



THE CATHEDRAL, AND A STREET, MILAN.

seaport; **UR-BI-NO**, birth-place of *Raf-fa-èlle*; **RAVENNA**, the last capital of the Roman Empire; and **FA-EN'-ZA**, the birth-place of Torricelli, the inventor of the barometer.

27. San Ma-ri'-no, south of Ravenna, is a small republic thirteen miles in circuit. It consists chiefly of a craggy mountain 2,200 feet in height; on which is the town, accessible by one road, and surrounded by walls. The republic was founded by *Ma-ri'-nus*, a native of Dalmatia, in 441.

28. Naples (formerly, with the Island of Sicily, the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies) occupies the whole of Southern Italy. On the Adriatic side the coast is generally low; but on the Mediterranean it is bold and rocky, and indented by many beautiful bays. The rivers are numerous but unimportant. The climate is delightful, and the soil rich and fertile.



LEANING-TOWER, AND PART OF CATHEDRAL, PISA.

THE PONTIFICAL OR ROMAN STATES.

Size, nearly twice that of Prince-Edward Island, or equal to a square of 63 miles.

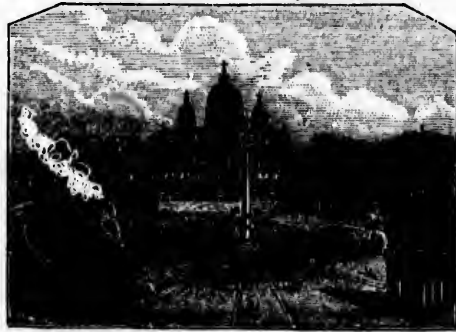
30. Position, &c.—The PONTIFICAL TERRITORY occupies the central part of Italy, on the Mediterranean Sea. The principal

QUESTIONS.—26. What cities are near the Adriatic coast? 27. Point out and describe San Marino. 28. Point out and describe Naples, and 29. its chief cities. Give the size of the Pontifical States, and 30. their position. 31. What is said of Rome, St. Peter's, &c.? Give the derivation and size of Austria. 1. For what is it noted? 2. What is said of its extent? 3. physical features? 4. soil and climate? 5. products? 6. inhabitants? 7. travelling facilities?

poets. Its galleries of painting and sculpture are still famous in Europe. It was the birth-place of *Dan-te* the poet; *Cimabue* [*chem-à-boo'-à*] the founder of modern painting; and *Americus Vesputius*, after whom America was named. *Pisa* [*pee-sà*] birth-place of *Gal-il'-è-o*, is noted for its leaning-tower; **LEO-HORN** is an important seaport; **AREZZO** [*à-ree'-zò*] was the birth-place of *Pe-truch* the poet, and near it of *Michael An-gelo* the painter, and architect of St. Peter's.

26. Near the Adriatic Coast are **BO-LOG'-NA**, a large city, with a celebrated university, founded in 1119; **FERRA'-NA**, with numerous fine buildings; **LO-RET'-TO**, famous for its shrine; **AN-CO-NA**, the chief eastern

river is the celebrated *Ti-ber*, which receives the *To-ve-ro-no* and the *No-ra*, both celebrated for their scenery and cascades.



ST. PETER'S PONTIFICAL CATHEDRAL, AND THE VATICAN, ROME.

31. Chief Cities.—**ROME**, the capital, occupies both sides of the Tiber, about 16 miles above its mouth. It is the residence of the Pope; who is the Sovereign of the States, and the supreme Head of the Roman-Catholic Church throughout the world. It is noted for the architectural splendour of its churches; of which there are 365 (or one for every day in the year). St. Peter's Cathedral is the most magnificent ecclesiastical structure in the world. It covers nearly five acres, and was erected at a cost of \$75,000,000. Its three celebrated architects were *Bra-man-to*, *Raffaèlle*, and *Michael Angelo*. Adjacent to it is the *Vat-i-can Palace*, containing more than 4,000 apartments and a celebrated library and museum. There are several other palaces. The principal educational buildings are the University of Rome; the Jesuit Roman College; the Propaganda, the English, the Irish, and the Scottish Colleges; besides seventeen other colleges. There are also numerous handsome convents, hospitals, libraries, museums, &c. The Castle of St. Angelo is on the west bank of the Tiber. South of the city is the *Ca-pit'-o-line Hill*, with the ancient *For-um* (see engraving on page 99), the Arch of *Titus*, and the *Col-i-se-um*. **CIVITA VERUCIA** [*che-vec'-tá-vek'-ke-à*] is the chief Mediterranean seaport.

THE EMPIRE OF AUSTRIA.

(From the German *Os-ter-reich*, or eastern kingdom of Charlemagne's dominions.) Size, more than one sixth larger than Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 500 miles.

1. Noted For.—**AUSTRIA** is noted for its central position in Europe, its few seaports and river-outlets, and its minerals.

2. Extent.—Next to Russia, this is the largest empire in Europe. Originally a small archduchy, it now includes twenty provinces; but its only seaports are at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

3. Physical Features.—Its principal river is the *Dan-ube* and its tributaries, which are enclosed by the great mountain-ranges of the Alps at the west, the mountains of Bohemia at the north, and the Carpathians stretching from *Silesia* at the north to the western and southern boundary of *Transylvania*; thus forming a vast basin for the noble stream. The *Elbe*, the *Oder*, the *Vistula*, and the *Dnie-ster* [*nee-ster*] Rivers rise at the north of the empire, and the *Po* and the *Ad-ri-gi* flow from the southern side of the Alps into the Adriatic Sea. Hungary and Bohemia are both nearly enclosed by mountains, and form extensive plains or plateaus. *Transylvania* and the provinces north of the Adriatic are, however, very mountainous. (See next page.)

4. Soil and Climate.—In the great river-basins, the soil is highly fertile. The climate is three-fold; viz. cool and clear in the North, and moist and warm at the South, but in Central Austria it is more temperate or variable, according to the elevation of the mountains.

5. Chief Products.—Wine, oil, grain, flax, hemp, rice, olives, vines, hops, tobacco, and fruits are among the chief products. In mineral riches, Austria surpasses nearly all the other countries of Europe.

6. The Inhabitants are made up of several races. The principal are the Slavonic, German, Italian, and Hungarian (or Magyar [*mad'-yar*], an Asiatic race), and about 650,000 Jews and 80,000 Gypsies.

7. Travelling Facilities.—Good roads have been constructed across upwards of sixty mountain-passes of the empire. From *Pavia* in Italy a macadamized road, of more than 1,120 miles in length, extends across the empire to the eastern part of *Galicia* [*gá-lish'-e-à*]. There were, in 1850, 2,086 miles of railway, connecting the capital with the cities of Northern Germany, and with *Venice* and *Trieste* on the Adriatic; but the *Danube* and its navigable tributaries form the great commercial highway of the nation.

12. *On the Pregel*.—KONIGS-BERG ("king's town"), the former capital, built on piles; FAIRCHILD, scene of a French victory over the Russians.

13. *On the Vistula*.—DANZIG, or DANTIC, chief seat of foreign commerce; THORN, birth-place of the celebrated astronomer Copernicus.

14. *On the Oder*.—STETTIN [stet-teen'], an important grain-seaport; FRANKFORT, with cloth manufactures; BRES-LAU, with woollen and linen manufactures. *On the War-the*.—PO-SEN, the capital of ancient Poland.

15. *On the Elbe*.—MAGDEBURG is well fortified, and carries on an extensive trade in woollens and porcelain; WITTEMBERG, where Luther and Me-lancthon are buried. *On the Saale* [sah'-leh] and *tributaries*.—HALLE [haf'-leh], the birth-place of Handel the musical composer, is the seat of a university; EISELEBEN [ice'-lay-ben], birth-place of Luther; LUTZEN [oot-], where Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, fell in battle; and ESPERT, where Luther was once a monk.

16. *On the Havel and the Spree*.—BRANDENBURG, seat of the founders of the kingdom; FORSDAM, with the country-palace of the king. BERLIN is the capital of Prussia, and the chief seat of her literary and other institutions. It has also extensive manufactures. This handsome city is surrounded by a wall, and entered by sixteen gates. The principal street is divided into five avenues by four rows of trees, and on either side are the palaces and other public buildings. Berlin is noted for its royal library; and for its university, founded in 1609.

17. *In the Elbe Valley*.—DUSSLEBORG, the mart for cotton and silk manufactures; EISENBERG (famous for its dye of Turkey-red); COLOGNE [ko-lone'] (from "Colonia," Nero's mother, who was born here) is noted for its perfumed water, and for its fine Gothic cathedral. BONN, the birth-place of Beethoven the musical composer. COB-LENTZ, at the mouth of the Moselle, and the opposite castle of EHRENBREITSTEIN [ay-ren-brite'-stine], form a strong double-fortress. TREVES, the oldest city in Germany, has many Roman antiquities. AIX-LA-CHAPELLE [ay-lah-shah'-pel], noted for its hot-springs (aquæ), was the residence of the Emperor Charlemagne [shar-le-mang']. MUNSTER, and MINDEN.

GRAND-DUCHIES.

1. Baden [bad'-den] (from *bad*, German for "bath"), the principal Grand-Duchy in Germany, lies west of the Rhine, between Wurtemberg and France, and is highly fertile and picturesque. The chief cities are CONSTANCE, on Lake Constance; HEIDELBERG and FRIEDRICHSDORF, each with a university; BADEN-BADEN, a watering-place; CARLSRUHE [roo], the capital, with streets diverging from the palace; MAX-HEIM [-hime], a commercial city at the junction of the Neckar with the Rhine.

2. Hesse-Darmstadt [hes-darm'-stat] lies north of Baden. It is separated into two parts by the territory of the free city of Frankfort-on-the-Main. It is a populous agricultural country. DARMSTADT is the capital. WORMS, an ancient city, is situated on the River Rhone.



CATHEDRAL, AND PART OF THE MARKET-PLACE, WORMS.

3. Oldenburg, south of the German Ocean, nearly divides Hanover in two. Oldenburg, the capital, is situated on the river Hunte [hoo-neh], a tributary of the We-ser.

4. Mecklenburg, Schwerin, and Strelitz lie south of the Baltic Sea, between Prussia and Denmark. The surface is flat, but the soil is rich and fertile.

5. Saxe [sax], including Weimar [wy'-mar], &c., lies west of Saxony. WEIMAR, the capital, is distinguished for its literary and scientific institutions. The other towns are EISENACH [i'-sen-ach], the principal town in the Thuringian Forest; and JENA, noted for its universities.

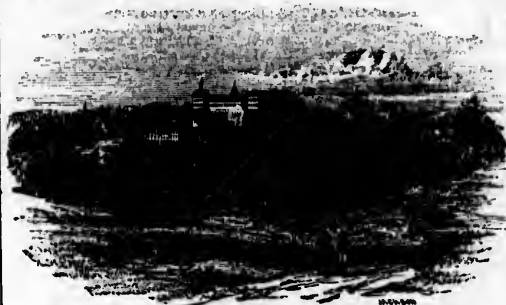
THE DUCHIES.

6. Nassau lies between the Hessian States and Rhenish Bavaria. WIESBADEN [wias-bad'-den], the capital, is a noted watering-place.

QUESTIONS.—12. Point out the Prussian cities on the Pregel; 13. Vistula; 14. Oder; 15. Elbe; 16. Havel, and Spree; 17. in Rhine Val. 1. Point out and describe the Gr.-Duchy of Baden and its cities; 2. Hesse-Darmstadt; 3. Oldenburg; 4. Mecklenburg, Schwerin, and Strelitz; 5. Saxe-Weimar; 6. Nassau; 7. Brunswick; 8. Saxon Duchies; 9. Anhalt Duchies; 10. The Principalities; 11. The Hesses; 12. Hamburg; 13. Lubec; 14. Bremen; 15. Frankfort; 16. Holstein, &c.; 17-19. Luxemburg, &c. Give the derivation and size of Denmark. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Point out its position; 3. civil divisions.

7. Brunswick consists of five isolated portions of territory lying south of Hanover. It is noted for forests. BRAUNSWIG is the capital.

8. The Saxon Duchies are those of the SAXES: ALTBURG, COBURG-GOTHA, MEI-NINGEN [my'-], and EISENACH. They lie between Prussian Saxony and Bavaria. RO-SENHAU [ro'-sen-hau] [now], near Coburg, in the Duchy of SAXE-COBURG-GOTHA, is the paternal home of Prince Albert of England.



THE DUCAL PALACE, GOTHA, (PATERNAL HOME OF PRINCE ALBERT).

9. The Anhalt Duchies—viz., DRESSAU, BERNBURG, and KO-THEN—are situated on the Elbe, and are almost surrounded by Prussian Saxony. They rank among the most fertile of the States of Germany, and are noted for their fine breeds of cattle and sheep.

THE PRINCIPALITIES.

10.—1. Lippe-De-mold and Schaumburg [shoum'-boorg] lie west of the city of Hanover. 2. Waldeck lies between the Hessian States and Westphalia. 3. Reuss [roos], The Elder and The Younger, lie near Saxony and Bavaria. 4. The Two Schwarz-burgs [-boorgs] lie 25 miles apart. SCHWARZBURG-RU'-DOL-STADT lies north of Saxe-Weimar. 5. Lichtenstein [lek'-ten-stine] lies east of Switzerland, and west of the earldom of Tyrol. Most of these principalities and smaller states of Germany belong to the Zoll-ver-ein [-ine'], or German Customs League. (See page 73.)

ELECTORATE AND LANDGRAVIATE.

11. The Two Hesse-s.—The Electorate of HESSE-CASSEL and the Landgraviate of HESSE-HOM-BURG [-boorg] form two of the three Hessian States lying north of Bavaria. They also belong to the Customs League.

THE FREE CITIES.

12. Ham-burg [-boorg], on the Elbe, is an important commercial city. It lies south of Denmark, and includes a territory of 151 square miles. 13. Lu-beck, on the Trave [trah], a few miles from the Baltic, has an extensive transit-trade. It has a territory of 142 square miles. 14. Brem-en, on the Weser, near the German Ocean, is next to Hamburg in commercial importance. It has a territory of 112 square miles. 15. Frankfort-on-the-Main is the capital of Germany, and the seat of the Diet of the Germanic Confederation. It is the centre of the inland trade, banking, and mercantile transactions of Central Europe. The poet Goethe was born here in 1749. Its territory embraces 90 square miles.

THE OTHER GERMAN STATES.

16. Hol'-stein [-stine] and Lau-en-burg [lou'-] duchies, in DENMARK (which see, below), belong to the Germanic Confederation. Also 17. Luxemburg, Grand-Duchy; for which see HOLLAND, next page. 18. Austrian States of Germany.—See AUSTRIA, page 71. 19. Prussian States of Germany.—See PRUSSIA, page 74.

THE KINGDOM OF DENMARK.

(So called from *dans*, "down" or "low," and *mark*, a "country.") Size, a little larger than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 146 miles.

1. Noted For.—DENMARK is noted for its peninsular form, and for its having been the seat of the ancient warlike Danes. 2. Position.—This kingdom lies to the north of Hanover, and between the German Ocean and the Baltic Sea. 3. Civil Divisions.—The kingdom of Denmark includes the Duchies of HOLSTEIN, LAUBENBURG, (both of which form part of Germany, as above,) and SCHLESWIG, the Peninsula of JUTLAND, and adjacent islands.

4. Physical Features.—The surface to the north is low and flat, and half of it is covered with sand and small lakes. Like Holland, the western coast is protected from the sea by embankments. Towards the south the surface is more diversified, and the indentations of the coast are more numerous. The Elber [I-der], flowing W. from near Kiel [keel], is the chief river.

5. The Principal Islands are Funen, Zeeland, and Looe-land.

6. The Principal Straits are the Sound, the Great Belt, and the Little Belt. The Cat-te-gat and Skag-or Rack (the "crooked strait of Skager," or the Skaws) are a prolonged arm of the sea stretching from the German Ocean to Zealand and Funen.

7. Soil and Products.—Except at the north, the soil is fertile. The climate is humid. Pasturage is good, and is the chief source of wealth. Water-birds are numerous, and furnish feathers for export. Game and fish are also abundant. Coal is found on one of the islands, and peat is plentiful, but there is little timber.

8. Travelling Facilities.—The ferds (or inlets) make almost every part of Denmark accessible to the sea. Canals and railways intersect the southern part. The common roads are good.

9. Exports, &c.—Annual value of exports \$12,500,000; revenue \$12,000,000; national debt \$1,450,000.

10. Inhabitants.—Jutland, or the northern part of Denmark, was the land of the Jutes, or Goths; Holstein (German *Aole*, "a wood"), at the south, was the home of the Saxons, or "Saxons wood." The people now are Teutonic, or German.

11. Chief Cities.—COPENHAGEN, the capital, is on the islands of Zealand and A-ma-ger. It is noted for its university, its palace, and its public buildings. It was taken by Nelson in 1801, and again bombarded in 1807. ER-SIN-GER, at the entrance to the Sound. ROES-KIL-DE, in Zealand, was the former capital. ODENSE, in Funen, was founded by King Odin. AL-TO-NA, on the Elbe, near Hamburg, is noted for its ship-building, and for its astronomical observatory. KIEL [keel], SCHLES-WIG, and FLENS-BORG are seaports on the south-east coast. From the district of An-geln, in Schleswig, the names *Angles* and *England* are derived.

12. The Colonial Possessions of Denmark are IOLAND (p. 17); the FA-ROE ISLES, between Iceland and Norway; some settlements on the coast of GREENLAND (p. 16); and the islands of SANTA CRUZ, ST. THOMAS, and ST. JOHN, in the W. Indies (p. 47).

THE KINGDOM OF HOLLAND.

(Holland, or "hollow land"; also called *Netherlands*, and *Low Countries*.)
Size, about half that of New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 117 miles.

1. Noted For.—HOLLAND, or the NETHERLANDS, is noted for its sea-embankments and canals.

2. Position.—This kingdom lies between Belgium and Hanover. It is divided into twelve provinces or counties.

3. Physical Features.—The surface is nearly flat, and is intersected by numerous canals. It is below the level of high tides; but it is protected by natural sandbanks, and by artificial dykes or embankments, constructed chiefly of earth and clay, with a facing of wicker-work (or interlaced twigs) in exposed places.

4. Rivers, &c.—The principal rivers are the Scheldt [skelt], the Meuse or Mass [maas], and the Rhine, which here form a delta. The chief inlets are the Zuider Zee [zy-der-see] ("Southern Sea"), and Dollart Bay (at the mouth of the River Ems), both enclosed by chains of islands.

5. Soil and Climate.—The soil at the south is fertile. The climate is humid, but the winters are generally severe. The east is dry and healthy.

6. The Products are chiefly agricultural. Dairy-husbandry is brought to great perfection. Numerous storks frequent the marshes.

7. The Inhabitants are chiefly Dutch, and belong to the German stock. Jews are numerous, especially in the commercial cities.

8. Travelling Facilities.—Canals are in Holland what common roads are elsewhere, and they form a net-work over the kingdom. In 1858 there were 182 miles of railway, connecting the chief cities with the capital.

9. Exports.—Linen, leather, delft, gin, butter, cheese, and cattle—annual value \$14,000,000; revenue \$31,000,000; national debt \$47,250,000.

10. Chief Cities.—AMSTERDAM (the capital), on the Amstel, south of the Zuider Zee, noted for its ship-building, commerce, and money-exchanges, is built upon piles, and is intersected by numerous canals, crossed by 250 bridges; HAGRELM, three miles from the North Sea, is famous for its botanical nurseries, and for the St. Bavon organ; SAERDAM, where Peter the Great was a ship-carpenter; and HOOEN, from which the navigator Schou-ten, a native of the town, named Cape Horn. From DELFT, near Rotterdam, we derive the word *delft*, a kind of earthenware.

11. On the Rhine.—LEV-DEN [ly'-den], noted for its noble defence in 1573, against the Spaniards, by the women, in honour of whom its university was founded; UTRECHT [oo-treht], with woollen manufactures and a university, noted for a treaty signed here, in 1713, between England and France.

12. On the Meuse.—BOIS-LE-DUC, a fortified town; DOWY; ROTTER-DAM, on the Rotte, with large commerce, is the birth-place of the learned Erasmus; THE HAGRE, where the word king resides, is the birth-place of William III. (Prince of Orange), and of Huygens the philosopher.

QUESTIONS.—4. Describe the physical features of Denmark; 5. islands; 6. straits; 7. soil, &c.; 8. travelling facilities; 9. exports, &c.; 10. inhabitants; 11. cities; 12. colonies. Point out on the map the divisions, islands, capes, &c. of Denmark. Give derivation and size of Holland. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its position; 3. physical features; 4. rivers; 5. soil, &c.; 6. products; 7. inhabitants; 8. travelling facilities; 9. exports; 10-14. chief cities; 15. colonies. Give derivation and size of Belgium. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its position, &c.; 3. physical features; 4. rivers; 5. soil, &c.; 6. products.



13. At the North are LERUWARDEN [loo'-war-den], which contains a king's palace; and GRON-ING-EN, a well-built town, with a university.

14. To the South.—MARETRICHT [mas-trikt], with celebrated caverns, has an extensive trade. LUXEMBURG, with immense fortifications, belongs to the Germanic Confederation.

15. The Colonial Possessions of Holland are JAVA, parts of SUMATRA, BORNEO, and CEL-LES, and other small islands in Oceania (pp. 89, 91); some ports on the coast of GUINEA in Africa (p. 97); a part of GUIANA in South America (p. 50); and several islands in the West Indies (p. 47).

THE KINGDOM OF BELGIUM.

(From *Belge*, an ancient tribe.)

Size, not quite as large as Holland, or equal to a square of 106 miles.

1. Noted For.—BELGIUM is noted as the country in which oil-painting originated; and for having been, owing to its geographical position, the chief battle-field of Europe.

2. Position, &c.—This small kingdom lies between France and Holland. It is divided into nine provinces; the principal of which are EAST FLANDERS, WEST FLANDERS, and SOUTH BRABANT.

3. Physical Features.—Its surface is nearly level; being part of the great plain which extends from North-Western France eastward to the Uralian Mountains. The hilly region of the Ar-den-nes, at the south-east, is well wooded and is rich in minerals. The coasts are low, requiring dykes, as in Denmark and Holland, to keep out the sea.

4. Rivers.—The principal are the Scheldt, the Meuse or Mass, &c.

5. Soil and Climate.—The soil, though not naturally fertile, has, by industry and skill, been rendered productive. The climate is cool and moist in the west and the south-east, but is drier inland.

6. The Products are grain, hemp, flax, hops, and tobacco. The



ties; **OU-DEN-AN-DE** [-deh] and **FONTS-NOY** are famous battle-fields; **TOUR-NAY**, noted for its Brussels carpets; **BERGEN** [ber'-ben] on the Meuse, and **MONS**, for coal and iron; and **COU-TRAI** [-tray'], for linen, &c.

12. *On the Seine*, **BRUSSELS**, the capital, noted for its lace, carriages, and book-publishing is near the famous battle-field of Waterloo and **BAN-ILLES**; **MUSLIN** (or, in French, **MUSLINS** [-leen]), on the **Deiner**, is a railway-centre, and is noted for its lace.

13. *On the Meuse*,—**LIMOR** [lee] and **NA-MUR** are noted for their metal manufactures; **VERVIENS** [ver-ve-ay'], for fine cloth; and **MO-RES-NET**, for zinc-mines.

KINGDOM OF GREECE.

(From *Gree-ci*, an ancient tribe of E-pu'-rus.)
Size, a fifth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 124 miles.

1. **Noted For**.—GREECE is noted for its ancient greatness.

2. **Position**.—This kingdom lies south of Turkey in Europe.

3. **Divisions**.—Greece is divided into 10 prefectures; but its natural divisions are **HELLAS**, north of the Gulf of Lo-pan'-to; the **MO-RE-A**, south of it; and the islands of the Archipelago.

4. **Its Physical Features** are beautiful, being diversified with hill and valley. The mountains, though not lofty, are celebrated. The coasts are everywhere indented with bays, and studded with islands. The rivers are noted only for their classical associations. Its mountains, of limestone formation, are almost destitute of metals, but furnish the finest marbles for building and sculpture.

5. **The Climate** is agreeable, the winter short, the sky generally clear, and the atmosphere dry.

6. **The Chief Products** are grain, rice, cotton, honey, currants, figs, dates, pome-gran'-ates, citrons, oranges, &c. Bees are abundant, as are also sheep and goats. Goat-skins are made into vessels for holding liquids.

7. **The Inhabitants** are the descendants of the ancient Greeks, and of various Slavonic nations. A large proportion are shepherds.

8. **The Travelling Facilities** are not numerous. There are few roads in the interior, and no navigable rivers in the kingdom.

Flomish* horses are famous. In the basin of the Sam'-bro [-ber] and the Meuse, coal, iron, and other minerals are abundant.

7. **Inhabitants, &c.**—The Belgian people are made up of two distinct stocks; viz. (1) the Flemings (natives of Flanders, a district lying between Holland, Belgium, and France), who are of German origin; and (2) Wal-loons, or mixed Celts, who are descendants of the ancient Belgæ.

8. **Travelling Facilities.**—Belgium has excellent roads, and numerous canals. There was also, in 1856, 813 miles of railway in the kingdom.

9. **Manufactures, Exports, &c.**—The manufactures are confined chiefly to the coal-districts. Laces, linens, and carpets are among the most important. The annual value of the exports is \$60,000,000; revenue \$28,500,000; national debt \$740,000,000.

10. **Chief Cities.**—**OS-ten'**—**OS-TEND'** is the principal seaport; **BRU-GES**, (from its "bridges"), an old commercial town, is now noted for its lace-manufactures; **YPER** [i-sper], after which diaper-linen is named.

11. *On the Scheldt*.—**ANTWERP**, famous for its cathedral and Flomish paintings, its fortifications, and for being the birth-place of the eminent painters Teniers and Vandyke; **GAENT**, built on twenty-six islands, birth-place of Charles V. and of John of Gaunt, is noted for its European trea-

* "Flomish," from the word "Flanders."



MONUMENTS ON THE BATTLE-FIELD OF WATERLOO.

QUESTIONS.—Point out on the map the divisions, mountains, &c. of Turkey in Europe, and Greece. 7-13. What is said of the inhabitants, trav. facil., manufactures, and cities of Belgium? Give deriv. and size of Greece. 1. For what is it noted? 2-4. Describe its position, divisions, &c.; 5-8. climate, &c.

9. Manufactures, Exports, &c.—The manufactures are chiefly domestic; the exports are grain, honey, drugs, and dried fruits. Annual revenue \$1,200,000; national debt \$1,200,000.

10. Chief Cities.—ATHENS, the capital, near the Gulf of Aegina, was one of the most famous of ancient cities. Though now chiefly modern, it contains numerous remains of antiquity, of which the most celebrated are the Acropolis or citadel; and the Parthenon, or Temple of Minerva, near which is the Aræopagus, or Mars' Hill, so noted from St. Paul's visit. Athens is the birth-place of many illustrious men, among whom were Socrates, Plato, and Demosthenes. The other towns—viz., LARINA, PATRAE, NAVARRIO, and NAUPLIA—are seaports. At METEORA Lord Byron died in 1824. (See ANCIENT GREECE, p. 96.)

11. The Principal Islands of the coast are NAGSOPONT, HYDRA, the CYCLES, and the IONIAN group. (See ANCIENT GREECE, pp. 96, 97.)

THE EMPIRE OF TURKEY (EUROPEAN).

(Founded from Asia Minor by a branch of the great Toor-kee family of Central Asia; also called Ottoman Empire, from *Ottoman*, a noted leader.)

Size, a little less than Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 460 miles.

1. Noted For.—EUROPEAN TURKEY is noted for its ancient history, chiefly as Macedonia and Thrace.

2. Position.—North and south, it lies between Austria and Greece; and east and west, between the Black and Adriatic Seas.

3. Divisions, &c.—The empire is naturally divided into three parts; viz., (1) Turkey in Europe, (2) Turkey in Asia (p. 81), and (3) Turkish Africa (pp. 95, 96). Together they form the OTTOMAN EMPIRE. The total area of the whole empire is about 1,332,500 square miles; its population 40,500,000.

4. Physical Features of European Turkey.—The Balkan and Carpathian Mountains, forming a semi-circle, enclose the eastern basin of the Danube from the "Iron Gate," in the Carpathians (Wallachia), where they converge. The Dinaric Alps and the Pindus Mountains run north and south. The other parts of Turkey are chiefly undulating. The Danube is the principal river; it is described on page 53, sec. 16.

5. The Soil is generally fertile, but is little cultivated; the rearing of cattle and sheep being the chief occupation of the people.

6. The Climate is cold and changeable at the north; but, being sheltered, it is more agreeable at the west and the south.

7. Products, &c.—Tobacco, flax, and hemp are cultivated at the north; rice, cotton, and barley, in the central districts; opium, rhubarb, grapes, figs, olives, oranges, and other fruits, in the south. South of the Balkan

range, roses are abundant; from these the celebrated attar (or otto) of roses is distilled. Fish abound in the rivers, and leeches in the marshes. Goats, bears, wolves, and jackals are very numerous.

8. The Inhabitants are Turks, Greeks, Armenians, and Jews.

9. Traveling Facilities.—Generally, the roads are not good, only for horses or mules. There are neither canals nor railways. The Danube is the great highway of commerce at the north, the Maritima, and the Vardar at the south, and the Narretia, Drin, and Vojuvan at the west.

10. The Manufactures and Exports of the empire are chiefly carpets, silks, leather, drugs, and fruit—annual value \$63,000,000; revenue \$35,000,000; national debt \$40,000,000.

11. Chief Cities.—CONSTANTINOPLE, the capital of the empire, stands like Rome, on seven hills, and on a tongue of land projecting into the Bosphorus, which forms an inlet known as the "Golden Horn." The city, studded with towers and minarets, appears exceedingly beautiful as seen from the water; but it consists of a number of narrow, winding, steep, and dirty streets. The houses are chiefly of wood, and are lighted from interior courts. The principal buildings are the Seraglio (or palace), or Imperial Palace, and a Mohammedan mosque (mosk) which was formerly the great church of St. Sophia. The city is named after Constantine the Great, who made it the capital of the Roman Empire. At the south-west are BOPRUS-TO and GALATIPOLI, fortified seaports. ADRIANOPLE, on the Maritima, was the former Turkish capital. In Macedonia is the seaport of SALONICA, the ancient Thessalonica; and SERRES, near the Strymon, and also the ruins of Philippi, where the Apostle Paul planted the first church in Europe. In Albania, JANINA and SCUTARI (skodra) are large towns. In Bosnia, BOSNI-SERAI, and BRIGORAD, WIDDIN, RUSCHUK, and other cities are fortified towns on the Danube. In Bulgaria are SOPHIA and SHUMLA. YARNA, a seaport on the Black Sea.

12. The Islands of Turkey are the beautiful CHIOS, RHODUS, famed for its mercantile law of "general average," and for its Colossus; SEIOS, for its beauty; PATMOS, whither St. John was banished; TRAFOS, &c.

TRIBUTARY PROVINCES.

13. Montenegro is a mountainous country north-west of Albania. It is peopled by wild mountaineers.

14. Servia lies south of the Danube and the Save. It has a population of about 1,000,000, who are employed in agriculture.

15. Bessarabia, a narrow strip 1300 miles square, east of the Pruth and north of the Danube, ceded by Russia in 1859. Chief town KUTAI.

16. Wallachia (Wallaheia), an extensive plain lying north of the Danube with a population of 2,500,000. BUCHAREST is the capital.

17. Moldavia lies between the River Pruth and the Carpathian Mountains, and has a population of 2,500,000. JASSY is the capital.

18. The invasion of Moldavia and Wallachia by Russia, led to the war of 1854-6 between Russia and the allied powers of Europe.

IV. THE CONTINENT OF ASIA.

(Said to be so called from the fabled nymph Asia, daughter of Oceanus and Tethys.)

Asia is about 5,000 miles from east to west, and 5,000 from north to south. It is six times the size of Europe, and nearly one sixth larger than North and South America, or equal to a square of 4,150 miles.

1. Extent.—ASIA, the largest division of the Globe, extends from the Ural Mountains to Behring Strait, and from the Mediterranean Sea to Japan. It touches Europe and Africa, and is only forty-five miles from America.

2. Noted For.—Asia is noted for being the first abode of man, the seat of his first empire, and the scene of most of the events recorded in Scripture. It contains nearly one half of the human race.

3. Boundaries.—It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the east by the Pacific, on the south by the Indian Ocean, and on the west by the Red Sea, the Mediterranean Sea, Black Sea, Caucasian Mountains, Caspian Sea, Ural River, and Ural Mountains. The Isthmus of Suez joins Asia to Africa, and the Caucasian and Ural Mountains connect it with Europe.

4. Physical Features of the North Coast.*

PRINCIPAL SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS AND STRAITS.	PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.	PRINCIPAL CAPES.	PRINCIPAL LAKES.
KARAKUMUK (Arctic Ocean)	O-be, or O-bi.	Behring.	Ko-tel-not' (New Siberia).	Se-vo-ro, East Cape.	Tchuk-tchi.

5. Physical Features of the East Coast.*

KAM-TCHAT'KA. (Tartary or Tungking.)	TAI-PAN (Tartary or Co-re-a.)	KU-RILE. (Japan.)	LO-PAT-KA. (To-sa-tok.)	KAM-TCHAT'KA. (Tartary or Tungking.)
TAI-PAN (Tartary or Tungking.)	TAI-PAN (Tartary or Co-re-a.)	KU-RILE. (Japan.)	LO-PAT-KA. (To-sa-tok.)	KAM-TCHAT'KA. (Tartary or Tungking.)
TAI-PAN (Tartary or Tungking.)	TAI-PAN (Tartary or Co-re-a.)	KU-RILE. (Japan.)	LO-PAT-KA. (To-sa-tok.)	KAM-TCHAT'KA. (Tartary or Tungking.)

* Not including Oceania. These physical features can be much better learned from a large school-room map. † In part only.

6. Physical Features of the South Coast.*

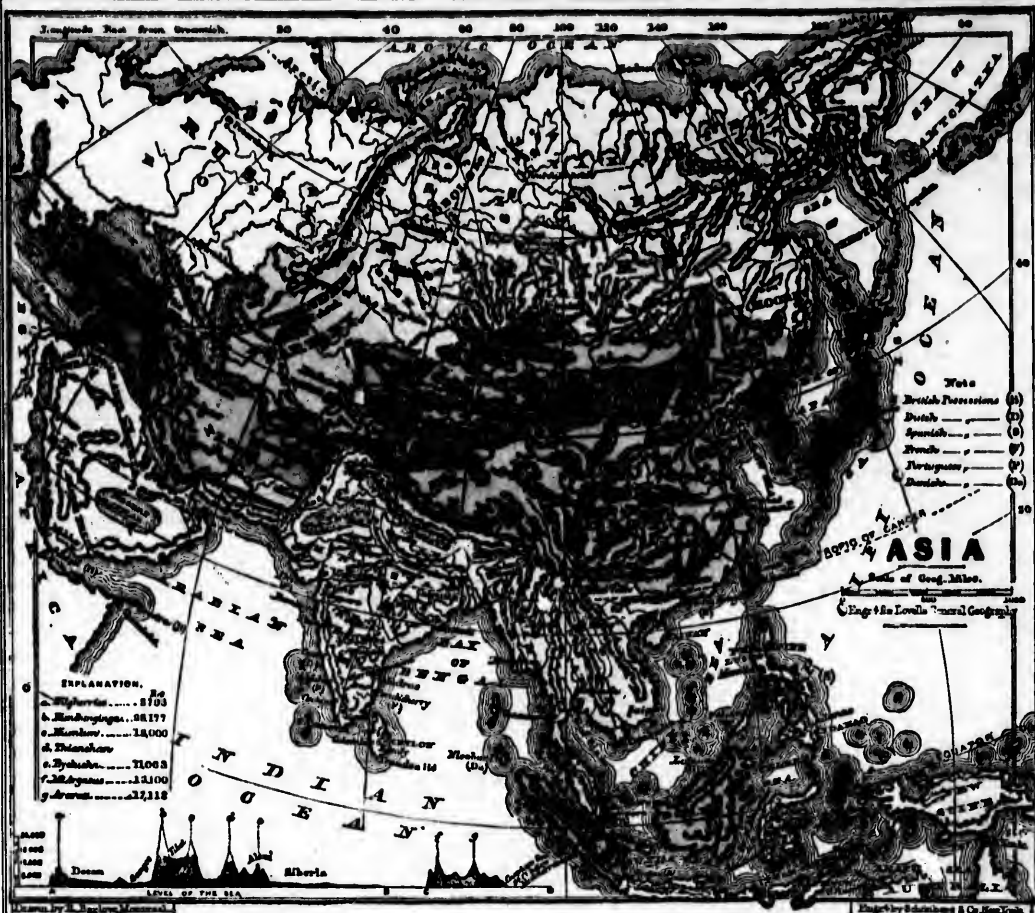
PRINCIPAL SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS AND STRAITS.	PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.	PRINCIPAL CAPES.	PRINCIPAL LAKES.
CHINESE (in part), ARABIAN, RED.	Siam, (in part), Java-bai, Bengal, Peralan, O-man.	Malacca, Falks (N. of Ceylon), Bab-el-mandeb, (Persia), Or-mus (N. of India).	Nio-o-bar, Ceylon, Malacca-dives (S. W. of India).	Cambodia (in part), Sio-se-por, Dundra Hd. Com-o-pin.	Malacca (in part), Hindoo, Arabi.

7. Physical Features of the Interior.*

MT. RANGES.	RIVERS FLOWING NORTH.	RIVERS FLOWING SOUTH.	RIVERS FLOWING EAST.	RIVERS FLOWING WEST.	LAKES.
URAL.	Obi, or Obi, 2,500 m.	Ural, 1,150 m.	To-bol, 500 m.		Caspian Sea.
AL-TAI and YA-NLO-KO'DI.	Obi, 2,580 m. Ir-tish, 1,700 m.		Amoor, 2,300 m.	Obi, 2,550 m. Ir-tish, 1,700 m. Lena, 2,400 m.	Bal-kei, Dnai-sang.
DA-U-RI-A. KHIN-GAN (S. of Mongolia), 11,800 ft.	Yen-I-sei, 2,000 m. Le-na, 2,400 m. Amoor, 2,300 m.				
YUNLING (enclosing China Proper).	Yaog-see-ki, 2,800 m. Ho-ang-ho, 2,800 m.	ang; Yang.	see-ki-ang, 2,800 m. Ho-ang-ho, 2,800 m.		Tong-Ting, Fo-yang.
HIM-A-LAYA. THIAN-SHAN. HINDOO.	20,000 ft. Sir-Dar-ri-a, 1,500 m. India, 1,500. Or-us, 1,500.	Brah-ma-poo, 1,500 m. India, 1,500. Kambur, 1,500 m. Irrawaddy.	Ir-ti; Brah-Ganges ("the river"), 1,600. Kambur, 1,500 m. Oxus, 1,500 m.	mapootra, 1,600. Indus, 1,600. Sir-Daria, 1,500. Oxus, 1,500 m.	1,500 m. Lot. Aral.
EL-BURS. CAI'CA-SUS. AN-A-SAT.	18,000 ft. 18,000 ft.	Ti-gris, 1,150 m. Eu-phra-tes, 1,700 m.	Kur, or Kour, 200 m.		Van.

QUESTIONS.—9. What is said of the manufactures, &c. of Greece? 10. cities? 11. islands? Give deriv. and size of Eur. Turkey. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe position; 3. divisions; 4. phys. feat.; 5. soil; 6. climate; 7-9. products, inhabitants, &c.; 10. manufactures, &c.; 11. cities; 12. islands; 13-18. trib. provinces. Give deriv., size, and extent of Asia. 2. For what is it noted? 3. Describe boundaries; 4-7. phys. feat. of N., E., and S. coasts, and interior.

8. T. mount among Globe. by the exhibit tent in Mos ascert. 9. T. nent. Talt-e. 10. north (3) t. sta-n. Penin. 11. phra's Gang. Q. table.



8. The Physical Features of Asia are all on a grand scale. In its mountains to be found some of the loftiest peaks in the World, and among its rivers are some of the largest and most important on the Globe. The extensive lowlands and broad table-lands are unequalled by those on any other continent; while the deserts and forest-jungles exhibit a sterile grandeur or magnificence of verdure peculiar to a continent which is so compact, and so vast in size. The highest point in Asia is Mount Everest (Ilimklayas), a peak in Nepal, whose height was first ascertained by Mr. Everest, a former Surveyor-General, to be 29,000 ft.

9. The Table-lands of Asia occupy two fifths of the whole continent. They are: (1) the Eastern Plateau, including the table-lands of Tibet and the desert of Gobi; and (2) the Western Plateau of Persia.

10. The Lowlands of Asia are: (1) the large *Siberian* lowland at the north; (2) the *Bucarian*, lying between the Aral and Caspian Seas; (3) the *Syrian* and *Arabian*, at the south-west; (4) the *Hindu-stan*, in the Indian Peninsula; (5) the *Indo-Chinese*, in the Malayan Peninsula; and (6) the *Chinese*, occupying the area of China Proper.

11. The Great River-Basins of Asia are: (1) the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*; (2) the *Indus* and its tributaries; (3) the *Brahmapootra* and *Ganges*; (4) the *Irrawaddy*, *Mar-ta-ban*, *Mei-nam*, and *Cambodia*; (5)

the *Hong-ki-ang'*, *Yang-tse-ki-ang'*, *Ho-ang-ho'*, and *A-moor'*; and (6) the *O-bi*, *Yen-tse-i*, and *Le-na*.

12. Countries.—Asia contains the following countries:—

COUNTRY.	Square Miles.	Popula-tion.	CAPITAL.	Popula-tion.	From Lon-ton. Miles.
RUSSIA IN ASIA	5,600,000	4,500,000	Tomsk, on the Tobol River	22,000	2,620
TURKEY IN ASIA	470,000	16,500,000	Stymra, Archipelago coast	150,000	1,900
AFGHANISTAN	1,100,000	5,000,000	Meca, near the Red Sea	60,000	5,000
PERSIA	527,000	13,000,000	Teheran, S. of the Caspian	100,000	3,700
TURKISTAN	710,000	2,000,000	Bokhara	100,000	5,100
AFGHANISTAN	527,000	6,000,000	Cabool, near Hindoo-Cooch.	60,000	2,800
BHOOCHISTAN	383,000	500,000	Kelat, in the interior	15,000	3,700
HINDOSTAN	1,600,000	184,000,000	Calcutta, on the Ganges	800,000	5,000
BIRMAH	303,000	7,000,000	Monchoo, 27 m. N. of Ava.	1,000	1,000
SIAM	180,000	4,500,000	Bangkok, on Meinam River	150,000	1,000
ANAM	150,000	6,000,000	Hue, on the coast	60,000	1,000
LAOS	130,000	2,000,000	Chang-mai, on the Meinam	25,000	1,000
MALACCA, &c.	30,000	500,000	Singapore, on an island	27,000	1,000
CHINESE EMP.	5,200,000	451,000,000	Pekin, near the Peiho River	1,000,000	5,000
JAPAN	261,500	30,000,000	Yeddo, Nippon Island	1,200,000	2,500

13. The Inhabitants of Asia, including *Malaya*, are the *Indo-European*, the *Mongolian*, and the *Semitic* groups. The most densely-peopled countries are *Hindostan* and *China*.

QUESTIONS.—8. What is said of the physical features of Asia? 9. Its table-lands? 10. lowlands? 11. great river-basins? 12. Give the particulars in the table. 13. What is said of its inhabitants? Point out on the map the countries, oceans, seas, islands, straits, capes, peninsula, mountains, rivers, and deserts.



QUESTION.—Name and point out the boundaries of the countries shown on the map, and their capitals; and the seas, gulfs, straits, peninsulas, and capes. Name and trace the direction of the mountains, and the course of the rivers. Point out the position of the lofty mountain-peaks in the profile.

14. lion, t
jer-bo
cock, r
as the
15. zone,
frigid
the mid
16. sago, s
bogs, o
abund
in the

Size, ne

1. J
and v

2. northe
tains

3. S
tains, (

O-bi, y
ing no
ing so
into tw

Weste
one v
of step

Ocean
and th

but it
abunde

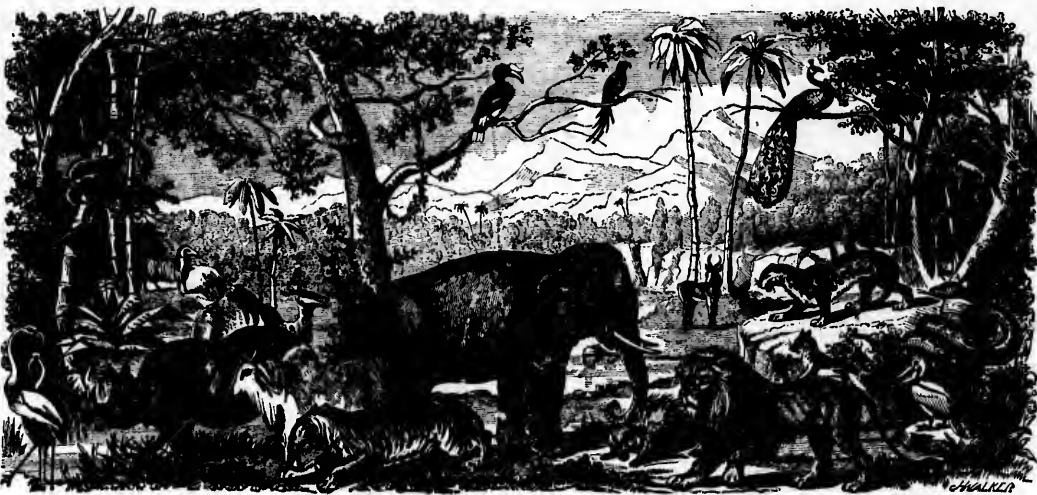
It has
lshmen
who ar

the mi
tal of

on the

4. T
vines
Mount
and Ca

Qu
Russia
size of



THE PRINCIPAL ANIMALS ON THE CONTINENT OF ASIA. (For names of the Animals in this engraving, see section 14.)

14. Animals.—The most important animals of Asia are the elephant, lion, tiger, leopard, rhinoceros, jackal, monkey, camel, Indian-ox, goat, ibex, jer-bo-a, crested porcupine, &c. Birds of varied plumage, such as the peacock, ma-caw, toucan, fla-min-go, pel-i-can, &c., and reptiles of various kinds, as the boa-constrictor, cobra di capello, &c., are abundant.

15. Climate.—Three fourths of Asia lie within the north temperate zone, about one eighth in the torrid zone, and the remainder in the north frigid zone; the climate varies accordingly. The periodical winds are called the monsoons, and their change is accompanied by violent storms.

16. The Chief Products are rice, tea, cotton, myrrh, cocoa-nuts, sago, ginger, oranges, pepper, sugar-cane, sandal-wood, teak, bamboo, gamboge, cinnamon, laurel, banyan, and elastic-gun trees. Minerals are very abundant. Coal is found in Asia Minor, India, China, and Siberia; gold in the Ural Mountains; iron in most States; and tin in the south-east.

RUSSIA IN ASIA.

Size, nearly twice that of British North America, or equal to a square of 2,325 miles.

1. Noted For.—RUSSIA IN ASIA is noted for its vast extent and varied climate, its mineral wealth, and its Siberian penal mines.

2. Position and Extent.—This territory occupies the whole northern part of the continent, and extends from the Ural Mountains to the Northern Pacific Ocean. It is divided into two parts; viz., (1) Siberia, and (2) the Trans-Caucasian Provinces.

3. Siberia lies in the great northern slope of Asia; the Al-tai' Mountains, at the south, forming the water-shed which separates the Rivers Ob-i, Yen-i-soi, and Le-na, flowing northwards, from those flowing southwards. It is divided into two parts; viz., EASTERN and WESTERN SIBERIA. Its surface is one vast plain or a succession of steppes, sloping to the Arctic Ocean. The climate is severe, and the soil generally barren; but its value consists in the abundance of its metals and furs. It has long been a place of banishment for Russian offenders, who are condemned to work in the mines. To-norsk' is the capital of Western, and YA-koursk', on the Lena, of Eastern Siberia.

4. The Trans-Caucasian Provinces lie south of the Caspian Mountains, and between the Black and Caspian Seas. The surface is

diversified, and the soil generally fertile. TIF-LIS, the capital, in Georgia, on the Kur, and EA-i-VAN', on the A-ras', are the chief towns.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

Size, more than three times that of Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 820 miles.

1. Noted For.—TURKEY IN ASIA is noted for having been the scene of nearly all the events recorded in the Holy Scriptures.

2. Position and Extent.—The Asiatic part of Turkey reaches from Constantinople to the Persian Gulf, and includes Asia Minor, Syria (including Palestine), Armenia, Kourdistan or Assyria, Mesopotamia, &c.

3. Asia Minor forms the peninsula lying between the Black and Mediterranean Seas. Its surface is mountainous. The chief peak is the celebrated one of Mount Ar'-arat. Tau-rus, at the south, is the principal chain. Kiz-il-Ir'-mak, the largest river, flows into the Black Sea. Along the sea-coast the valleys are fertile, but the interior is sterile. The island of Cy-prus lies off the southern coast. The chief products are fruits, grain, coffee, tobacco, &c.

4. Chief Cities.—SMYRNA (pop. 150,000) ranks next to Constantinople (the capital of the empire), and is the chief seat of commerce; SCUTARI [skoo-lá-re] (60,000) is opposite Constantinople; BRU-SA (60,000), an ancient capital; IENIC (Nicaea) (now a small village), near Brusa, is noted as the place where the Nicene Creed was adopted, the doctrine of the Trinity settled, and the time for observing Easter decided upon, at the first General Council, held A.D. 325; ANGO-RA (15,000), famous for its silky-haired wool; SIK'-O-PE (10,000) (the attack on which, in 1853, was the commencement of the Russian war), and KU-TA-YA (50,000), are all in *Anatolia*; TARRUS (7,000), in *Adana*, the birth-place of the apostle Paul; KONIKH (or Konieh) (30,000), in *Konia* (Konieh); and SIVAS (30,000), in *Roum*.

5. Syria lies south-east of Asia Minor, and includes the sacred land of *Palestine* (p. 99). The surface is mountainous; the chief ranges are Leb-a-non (Lib-a-nus) and Anti-Lebanon, which run southward towards *Palestine*. The rivers are the Or-on'-tes, the Le-on'-tes, and the Jordan. The soil is generally fertile. Grain and fruits are the chief products.



TIFLIS, CAPITAL OF RUSSIAN TRANS-CAUCASIA, FROM THE RIVER KUR.

QUESTIONS.—14. Name and point out the animals, birds, &c. in the engraving. 15. Describe the climate of Asia; 16. its products. Give the size of Russia in Asia. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its position and extent. 3. What is said of Siberia? 4. of the Trans-Caucasian Provinces? Give the size of Turkey in Asia. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Describe its position and extent. 3. What is said of Asia Minor? 4. of its cities? 5. of Syria?





BETHLEHEM-GATE, AND CASTLE OF DAVID, JERUSALEM.

6. Chief Cities.—A-LEP-PO (pop. 80,000), noted for its silk; ANTIQCH [an-'te-ohk] (10,000), where the name "Christians" originated, Acts xi. 26; DAMASCUS (100,000), the capital,—an ancient and famous city,—with its seaport, BRYROUT [bay-root'] (12,000); JERUSALEM (20,000), the holy city; ACBE (10,000), famous in history, and for its destruction by the British fleet in 1840; GAZA (15,000), and TYBE (5,000), noted in Scripture history. The ruins of BAALBEC, or BALBEC, and of PAL-MY'-RA, are still visible.

7. Armenia lies between Asia Minor and the Russian province of Georgia. The famous mountain of Ararat is on its eastern boundary;

near its base the east branch of the river Euphrates [u-fray-'tez] takes its rise. To the S. is Lake Van [vaun].

8. Chief Cities.—ERZ-ROUM [-'room'] (p. 10,000), the capital; KARS (12,000) [defended by Gen. Williams (the "hero of Kars") in 1855]; TEBE-I-ZON'D' (30,000), in a fertile district; VAN (40,000), a fortified place.

9. Kour-dis-tan' [from kourd, "robust" (robust tribe), and stan, a "country"], or Assyria, lies south of Armenia, including the eastern valley of the Tigris River.

10. Chief City.—MOSEL (pop. 40,000), the capital, opposite ruins of NINEVEH.

11. Mesopotamia (or Jez-i-ra) "between the rivers," is separated from Kourdis-tan by the Tigris River. The Euphrates is on its western boundary. It is a level country.

12. Chief Cities.—DI-YAR-BEKE, or DI-AR-BEK-IE, (pop. 13,000), the capital; and ORPAC (13,000) (Ur of the Chaldees), Abraham's birth-place.

13. Bagdad, extends to the Persian Gulf, and embraces ancient Babylonia. BAGDAD (pop. 65,000), the capital, HILLAR (10,000), on ruins of Babylon, and BAS-so'-RAR (60,000), on the Tigris, are the chief towns.

ARABIA.

(From Ar'-a-ba, a "level waste," or E-ber, a "wanderer.")

Size, about a third that of Br. North America, or equal to a square of 1,050 miles.

14. Noted For.—ARABIA is noted for its sandy deserts, and for having been the scene of Mohammed's career (see page 11).

15. Position.—It lies between the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf.

16. Physical Features, &c.—The interior is a mountainous desert-plain, with here and there an oasis. Between the coast-line and the

QUESTIONS.—6. What is said of the chief cities of Syria? 7. Armenia? 8. Kourdis-tan? 11. Mesopotamia? 13. Bagdad? Give deriv. and size of Arabia. 14. For what is it noted? 15. Describe position; 16. phys. feat.; 17. products; 18. cities. Give deriv. and size of Persia. 19. For what noted? 20. Describe position; 21, 22. phys. feat. &c.; 23. cities. Give deriv., &c. of Afghanistan. 24. For what is it noted? 25. Describe position; 26, 27. phys. feat., &c.; 1. position, &c. of India.

mountain-ranges are numerous fertile valleys. The celebrated Mounts Ho-rab and Si-nal are at the head of the Red Sea, between the Gulfs of Su-es and A'-ka-ha. There are no rivers of any importance. Hedjaz is nominally subject to Egypt; but the other parts are either governed by Imams, or by the Sheiks (or chiefs) of the Bedouin tribes.

17. The Chief Products are coffee, gums, spices, and fruits. The horses and camels of Arabia have long been famous.

18. The Chief Cities of Hedjaz are MECCA (pop. 60,000), the capital, and birth-place of Mohammed (page 11); ME-DI'-NA, containing Moham-



PALACE OF THE IMAM, OR FIRST-RULER, OF YEMEN, SANA.

med's tomb: SA-NA (40,000), capital of Yem-es, at the south; MO-CHA [-'ka] (40,000), noted for its coffee-exports, near which is A-DEN (40,000), a strongly-fortified British naval station; and MUS-CAT', capital of Oman, at the south-east, a fortified place.

PERSIA.

(From Pa-ars, Pa-ars, or Par-si, an ancient name signifying "clear, bright." Called Pa-ros in Scripture; Per-sia, by the Greeks; and Iran [ee-ran], by the inhabitants.)

Size, more than one third larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 723 miles.

19. Noted For.—PERSIA [per'-she-ä], or IRAN, is noted for its ancient greatness; and for its cutlery, silk-manufactures, and pearls.

20. Position.—The country of Persia is an extensive table-land lying between the Caspian Sea and the Persian Gulf.

21. Physical Features.—The interior consists of salt-deserts and marshy tracts. Urumiah, or Or-oo-mi-ah, to the north-west, is a large salt-lake, destitute of fish. Between the Elburz Mountains and the Caspian Sea, and along the tributaries of the Tigris, the soil is productive.

22. Exports.—The chief exports are silk, carpets, atar (or otto) of roses, turquoise [toonk'-wah], and pearls. Annual revenue \$10,000,000.

23. The Chief Cities are TE-HE-RAN' (pop. 100,000), the capital, and IS-PA-HAN' (165,000), the former capital, in Irak Afemi; BALFUSH, (60,000), in Masanderan; SENNA (25,000), in Persian Kourdis-tan; and BUSHIRE [-'sheer'], (20,000), a seaport on the Persian Gulf.

AFGHANISTAN AND BELOOCHISTAN.

(Stan in Persian means "land"; as Afghanistan, "Land of the Afghans.")

Size, less than half that of Persia, or equal to a square of 474 miles.

24. Noted For.—AF-GHAN-IS-TAN' and BEL-OO-CHIS-TAN' are noted for their mountain-passes, and their warlike inhabitants.

25. Position.—These two countries form the eastern part of Persia. The Hindoo-Coosh Mountains at the north, and the Sol-cy-man' range to the east, separate them from Tartary and India.

26. Physical Features.—From Afghanistan to India the outlet is through the Khy-ber Pass; and from Beloochistan, through the Bol-an' Pass. The chief rivers of Afghanistan are: the Cab-ool, a tributary of the Indus; and the Hel-mund', which falls into the salt-lake Hamoon', which is lost in the morass of Zurrh. Beloochistan has no rivers of any note. The valleys are fertile, and the climate is variable.

27. The Chief Cities of Afghanistan are CABOOL, the capital, JEL-AL-BAD', GHUZNI, CAN-DA-HAR', and HER-AT'; and of Beloochistan, KEL-AT', the capital. They are all famous in the history of British heroism.

THE EAST INDIES.

1. Position and Extent.—THE EAST INDIES, or INDIA, is the finest part of Asia, and stretches from the Indus River at the west to the Cambodia River (in Farther India) at the east; and from the Him-a-laya [-'li'] and Hindoo-Coosh Mountains at the north to the Indian Ocean at the south.



Men of Beihem. Sketch of Mount Lebanon. Women of Nusarath.

SYRIANS IN THEIR NATIVE COSTUME.

30
20
15
10
2.
Into
and M
Doper
(From
Size, u
3.
able
Q
penin
railwa
Indio



2. Political Divisions.—The East Indies are politically divided: I. Into the five British Presidencies of Ben-gal', Pun-jaub', Agra, Bom-bay', and Ma-dras', (each of which includes several minor provinces); II. Into Dependent States; and III. Into Independent and Foreign States.

I. HINDOSTAN, OR BRITISH INDIA.

(From the Persian *hindoo*, "black," (the natives being darker than the Persians), and *stan*, a "country"; or from the River *Indus* and *stan*.)

Size, nearly half that of British North America, or equal to a square of 1,180 miles.

3. Noted For.—HINDOSTAN' is noted for being the most valuable dependency of Britain, and for its rich commercial products.

4. Position and Extent.—It extends from the River Indus to Birmah, and from the Himalaya Mountains to the Indian Ocean.

5. The Physical Features of this vast peninsula are on a stupendous scale. The Himalaya Mountains are the highest range in the World; while the River Gaogee, with its numerous tributaries, is on a scale no less grand and noble. Besides the Himalaya and Hindoo-Coosh Mountains at the north, the Eastern and Western Ghauts [gawts], following the coast-lines, enclose the southern part of the peninsula of Hindostan; while another central range separates the waters of the Ganges and of other rivers flowing into the Bay of Bengal from those of the numerous other rivers flowing into the Indian Ocean.

QUESTIONS.—Name and point out the boundaries of the countries on the map, and their capitals; the sea, ocean, bays, gulfs, straits, islands, peninsulas, and capes. Name and trace the direction of the principal mountain-ranges and the course of the rivers. What chief places do the lines of railway connect? Point out the position of the chief mountain-peaks, as shown in the profiles A B and C D. 2. Name the political divisions of the East Indies. Give the derivation and size of Hindostan. 3. For what is it noted? 4. Point out its position and extent. 5. Describe its physical features.

celebrated Mounts
between the Gulfs of
Persian. *Hedjaz*
either governed
tribes.
and fruits. The
0000), the capital,
containing Moham-



AN, SAWA.
south; MO-CHA
A-DEN (40,000),
capital of Oman,

near, bright." Called
by the inhabitants.)
are of 723 miles.
is noted for its
sures, and pearls.
ensive table-land
lf.

salt-deserts and
west, is a large
ains and the Cas-
hill is productive.
(or otto) of roses,
000,000.
the capital, and
mi; BALFRUSH,
Kowrdistan; and
f.

TAN.
he Afghans;"
474 miles.

-CHIS-TAN' are
habitants.

astern part of
orth, and the
ary and India.

as the outlet is
ugh the Bo-lan'
of, a tributary
a salt-lake Ha-
chistan has no
ate is variable.
e capital, JY-
of Beloochistan,
British heroism.

OR INDIA, is
ndus River at
) at the east;
Mountains at

ize of Arabia.
cribe position;
on, &c. of India.

6. The Ganges issues by a double stream from a Himalayan glacier, near Gan-gou-tri, and within a few miles of the sources of the Indus, Sut-lege, and Brah-ma-poot-ra, on the Thibet side of the Himalayas. It flows in an easterly direction, and receives eleven large tributaries; the most important of which are the Jumna (680 miles long), and the Gop-ra (500 miles). The Brahmapootra (1,500 miles long), from Thibet, joins the Ganges near its mouth. The Delta, or Sunderbund, commences 200 miles inland. The chief entrance for ships is by the Hoogly. The Ganges is 1,680 miles long, and drains an area of 432,000 square miles. The word "Ganges" means "the river" flowing through *Gang*, "the Earth," to Heaven.

7. The Indus rises on the Thibet side of the Himalayas, near its Sntlege tributary. These two rivers flow chiefly in a south-westerly direction, and with the Jéh-lum, the Gho-nah, and the Ra-vee, tributaries of the Sutlege, form the Pun-jauh, or "five rivers." The Cabool, about 320 miles from its own source, and the Sutlege, 1,000 miles from its source, join the Indus. The Indus is 1,650 miles long, and enters the Indian Ocean by several mouths, which form an extensive delta. It drains an area of 200,000 square miles. The word "Indus" is derived from "Sindhoo," or "Sindhu," and means "the sea."

8. Physical Features.—The rivers and the mountain-ranges naturally divide India into four great areas, as follows: (1) the valley of the Ganges, sloping eastward along the base of the Himalayas; (2) the valley of the Indus, sloping southward from the Hindoo-Coosh Mountains, and forming the western boundary of India; (3) the central mountain-district, sloping south-westward from the centre, and drained by the Nerubudda and the Tap'tee; (4) the Deccan ("south"), including the valleys of the Go-da-vee-ry, the Kistnah, and the Cau-ve-ry [kaw], which all slope eastward, and are enclosed by the Ghauts ("mountain-passes"), on the east and west coasts.

9. Climate.—On the Himalaya slopes the climate is temperate and agreeable, but towards the south it becomes hot and oppressive. There are but two seasons, the wet and the dry, varied by the periodical monsoons.

10. Political Divisions.—The EAST INDIES, or INDIA, is politically divided as follows:

BRITISH PRESIDENCIES, &c.	Principal Divisions.	Square Miles.	Population.	Acquired.	CHIEF CITY.	Population.
(1) BENGAL (including the Aracan and Pegu).	Bengal, &c.	225,000	38,500,000	1783	CALCUTTA.	500,000
	Assam, &c.	30,000	1,800,000	1825	Gowhaty,	10,000
	Aracan and Pegu,	35,000	1,850,000	1820	Aracan,	25,000
	Tenasserim,	32,500	120,000	1830	Montinea,	15,000
S.-East Provin.	Malacca, &c.	1,600	205,000	1823	Singapore,	30,000
(2) PUNJAB.	Punjab, &c.	78,500	9,150,000	1849	LAHORE,	120,000
	Delhi,	6,500	1,500,000	1803	Delhi,	152,000
	Andhra,	23,500	2,375,000	1859	Lucknow,	300,000
(3) AGRA.	Agra, &c.	80,000	22,300,000	1803	AGRA,	125,000
	Sindh, &c.	58,000	1,250,000	1843	Hyderabad,	25,000
(4) BOMBAY.	Cocon,	12,250	1,100,000	1818	BOMBAY,	500,000
	Khandeish, &c.	40,500	8,700,000	1818	Surat,	135,000
	Rajpootana,	332,000	23,500,000	.....	Jeypor,	40,000
	Nizam's Domini,	95,000	11,000,000	.....	Hyderabad,	200,000
PRINCIPAL DEPENDENT NATIVE STS.	Mysore,	30,500	3,000,000	.....	Mysore,	55,000
	Travancore,	8,800	1,012,000	.....	Trivandrum,	12,000
	Cutch,	6,700	500,000	.....	Bhood,	30,000
INDEPENDENT.	Nepaul, Bhotan,	117,500	5,500,000	.....	Khatmandoo,	50,000
	Ceylon,	17,000	3,000,000	.....	Massalistan,	25,000
(5) MADRAS.	Malabar,	6,000	1,500,000	1702	Calicut,	25,000
	Carnatic, &c.	112,500	18,000,000	1801	MADRAS,	715,000
CEYLON	5 Provinces,	24,000	1,500,000	1816	Colombo,	33,000
PERCH.	Pondichery, &c.	104	215,000	1792	Pondichery,	30,000
PORTUGUES.	Goa, &c.	1,120	175,000	1498	Goa,	5,000

An official return in 1859 under-estimates the population of Hindostan at 186,000,000.

THE BRITISH PRESIDENCIES OF INDIA.

11. The Bengal Presidency occupies the rich valleys of the Lower Ganges and Brahmapootra Rivers, and includes ARACAN, PEGU, and TENASSERIM, in Farther India; and the MALACCA-STRAIT SETTLEMENTS, farther S. It has a more extensive coast-line than any of the other Presidencies.

12. The Chief Products and Exports are rice, sugar, tea, spices, indigo, tobacco, silk, cotton, flax, hemp, &c.

13. Chief Cities.—CALCUTTA, the capital of British India, and, next to Canton, the greatest emporium in the East, is situated on the Hoogly River, one of the outlets of the Ganges. The public buildings are handsome, and the literary and scien-



MOHAMMEDAN MOSQUE, LUCKNOW.

tific institutions numerous. A railway to AGRA, 1,220 miles, is partly constructed. The city is defended by Fort William, the largest fortress in India. PATNA (p. 281,000) has extensive trade; PROME (30,000), and RANGOON* (20,000), in Farther India; GEORGE TOWN (45,000) on Penang Island; and SINGAPORE* (30,000), in the Malayan Peninsula.

14. The Punjab Presidency, separated from Bengal in 1860-61, includes the extensive country watered by the River Indus and its tributaries.

15. The Products are similar to those of the other Presidencies.

16. Chief Cities.—LAHORE*, PESHAWUR [pesh-ow-er] (p. 60,000), at the Khyber Pass; and MOOL-TAN* (80,000), on the Chen-ab River.

17. Presidency of Agra.—This Presidency, also separated from Bengal in 1860-61, includes the extensive valley of the Upper Ganges. Since the mutinies, it is proposed to transfer the capital from Agra to Allahabad*.



MOHL MEDZAN MOSQUE, OAWNPORE.

18. The Products are similar to those of the other Presidencies.

19. Chief Cities.—AL-LA-HA-BAD* (p. 65,000), on the Ganges, is a sacred city of the Hindos; CAWN-POR* (60,000), the scene of a massacre of Europeans in 1858; BEN-A-RÉS (180,000), the Hindoo capital; AGRA, the former Mo-sul capital, and DELHI [del-ee] (152,000), the former Mohammedan capital, or the Jumna; LUCK-NOW (300,000), in Oude (ood), famous for its defence by Col. Inglis, and its relief by Gen. Havelock, in 1858.

20. The Bombay Presidency, at the west, includes the provinces of Seinde, lying in the southern valley of the Indus; and, farther south, parts of GUZ-ER-BAR* and KHANDEISH [kan'-daysh], BERAR, ARRINGOANAR*, BERJAVOOR*, and the District of CONCAN [kong'-kan].

21. The Chief Products are cotton, rice, cocoa-nuts, pepper, teak, indigo, wool, and silk.

* The terminations *a-bad*, *pa-tam*, *por* (or *poor*), all mean "place" or "city"; thus Allahabad, "Place of the god"; Singa-pore, "City of the lion." *Gunge* means a "market-place"; *gherr*, "mountain"; *aub* or *audy*, "river"; *ah*, "blue"; *mal*, "great."



THE GOVERNMENT-HOUSE, TREASURY, AND ESPLANADE, CALCUTTA.

QUESTIONS.—6. Trace and describe the Ganges and its tributaries; 7. Indus and tributaries; 8. the physical features of India; 9. its climate. 10. Give the particulars of each country in the table. 11-13. Point out and describe the Principal Presidencies, and chief cities; 14-22 the same of the Punjab, Agra, and Bombay Presidencies. What is said in the note of the terminations *abad*, *putam*, *por*, *gunge*, *gherr*, &c.? Describe the engravings.

22. Chief Cities.—**BOM-BAY** (Portuguese for "good harbour"), the capital, is on an island at the sea-coast, from which railways radiate to the north and the south. Its harbour is the finest in India, and its trade extensive. **POONAH** (pop. 75,000), east of the Ghats; **SEERAT** (134,000), on the Taptree; and **AIH-MED-A-BAD** (130,000), north of Cam-bay.

23. The Madras Presidency occupies the southern part of British India, and includes the provinces of Northern CUN-NARS, the CANNARIC, MALA-BAR, and CANA-SA. The climate is very hot, and the soil generally is not so productive as in other parts of India.

24. The Chief Products are sugar, silk, cotton, teak, iron, and salt.

25. Chief Cities.—**MADRAS**, the capital, on the Cor-o-man-del coast, has no harbour, and the surf being very great, the landing is effected from the roadstead in light boats. Fort St. George defends the city. A railway connects **AM-COT** (p. 59,000) with Madras. **TAN-JORE** (50,000), on the Cauvery, rivals Benares in its Hindoo temples; **TAICH-TH-OR-O-LY** (30,000) is on the same river. **CAL-I-CUT** (25,000), on the Malabar coast, was once famous for its calico, and from which that name was derived.

26. Exports, Revenue, &c.—The yearly value of exports from British India is about \$120,000,000; revenue \$195,000,000; public debt \$300,000,000.

27. Railways, &c.—Railways, about 3,000 miles; canals, 1,250 miles.

BRITISH ISLANDS OF INDIA.

28. Ceylon lies off the south-east coast of Madras. It is compact, and has few coast-indentations. The interior is mountainous; but there are many beautiful and fertile valleys. It is called **SIN-GHA-LA** by the natives. Budd-hism is the prevailing religion.



BUDDHIST PRIEST AND ATTENDANTS, CEYLON.

29. The Chief Products are rice, coffee, coconuts, and cinnamon. Its pearl-fishery, off the north-west coast, is very extensive.

30. Chief Cities.—**CO-LON-NO**, the capital; **POINT DE GALE**, a fortified packet station; **TRIN-CO-MA-LEE** (pop. 30,000); and **KANDY**.

31. The Maldives ("Thousand Isles"), a series of circular groups of coral-islands lie south of India. They are nominal dependencies of Ceylon. Chief exports: coconuts and cowrie-shells.

32. The Cha-gos Archipelago contains a number of low coral-reefs and islands, which lie south of the Maldives and of the Equator. They are dependencies of Mauritius (see p. 97). Products: coconuts, fruit, &c.

33. Other British Islands.—**THE LAC-CA-DIVE ISLANDS** lie off the Malabar coast; the **AN-DA-MAN**'s and the **NIC-O-BAR**' ISLANDS lie off the Malaysian Peninsula. The Andamans are a penal colony.

II. DEPENDENT STATES.

24. Names and Position.—The most important of these States are:

35. Cash-meré, a fertile valley north of the Punjab, noted for its rich shawls; **BHAWI-POOR**, south of the Punjab. The Dominion of **SCINDIA**, lies south of Agra; **GWAL-I-OR**, its capital, is one of the seven Hindoo sacred cities, and the first meridian of their geographers. (Cashmere and Scindia are only nominally dependent). **RAJ-POO-TA-NA**, small States east of Scinde, chiefly desert; **CYREN**, south of Scinde; **GUZ-SHAR**' (in part), south of Cutch; **IS-NOOR**, on the Nerbudda River; the **NE-ZA'S DOMINIONS**, in Central India, including the cities of **AD-RANG-A-BAD**, **HY-NEH-A-BAD**, and **GOLCONDA** (noted for its diamond-mines); **MY-SORE**, at the south, in the Madras Presidency, including the cities of **MY-SORE**, **SEN-ING-A-PA-TAM**, and **BAN-GA-LORE**; **CO-CHIN** and **TRAV-AN-CORE**, between Malabar and Cape Com-orin.

III. INDEPENDENT STATES, AND FARTHER INDIA.

36. Names and Position.—The most important of these States are: **37. Ne-paul** and **Bho-tan** are native States, both lying along the southern slope of the Himalaya Mountains. The surface of both is mountainous, but the valleys are fertile. **KHAT-MAN-DOO** is the capital of Nepaul, and **TAS-AI-SO-DOO** of Bho-tan. **PONDICHERRY** and **CHANDERNAGORE**, on the Coromandel coast, and **MAHE**, on the Malabar coast, are

French settlements; and **Goa**, **DAMAUR**, and **DIU** [dee-oo'], on the west-ern coast, are Portuguese settlements.

38. The Empire of Birmah occupies the northern basin of the Irrawaddy River. The surface is varied, but the soil is generally fertile. **MON-CHO-SO**, the capital, is near a large lake. **A-VA** (p. 30,000), the former capital, is on the Irrawaddy River, four hundred miles from its mouth; **BRA-MO**' (10,000), farther north, is the seat of trade with China.

39. The Kingdom of Si-am, including **WESTERN CAMBODIA** and **NORTHERN MALACCA**, lies east of Birmah, and occupies the plain watered by the **Meinam** [may-nam']. The surface is mountainous, with numerous fertile plains and valleys. The soil is highly productive, and minerals are abundant. **BANG-KOK**, the capital, on the Meinam, is a place of large trade. Many of the houses are built upon rafts in the river.

40. The Empire of A-nam lies on the eastern coast, and includes **TONQUIN** [ton-keen'], **COCHIN-CHINA**, **CHAM-PA**, and **EASTERN CAMBODIA**. It is fertile and well watered. **HUE** [hway], the capital, is well fortified; **KASH-O** (p. 100,000) is a seaport on the N.E.; **SAN-OON**' (180,000) is at the S.

41. The Laos [lah-ooe] Country lies north of the three countries last named. It is mountainous, and is rich in minerals and valuable timber. Its rivers are the **Me-kong** and the **Meinam**. Some of its tribes are subject to China and some to Birmah, but many of them are independent.

42. The Malaysian Peninsula is a long narrow country extending to the south. It is hilly and mountainous. The inhabitants are chiefly engaged in navigation. Some of the tribes are dependent on Siam, but many of them are under their own rajahs. The British have settlements on the peninsula at **MALACCA**, **WELLELEBY**, **SINGAPORE**, and **PE-NANG**.



BANGKOK (ON THE MEINAM), THE CAPITAL OF SIAM, WITH A BUDDHIST TEMPLE.

THE EMPIRE OF CHINA.

(From **T-SI-NA**, or **T-CHI-NA**, the ancient name of a south-west part of China.) Size, about twice that of British North America, or equal to a square of 2,320 miles.

1. Noted For.—CHINA is noted for its vast population, its Great Wall, its tea-plant, and its porcelain or "china."

2. Extent.—This empire embraces **CHINA PROPER**, the adjacent provinces of **TAIB-ET**, **CHINESE TARTARY** (including **TURK-ESTAN**, **MONGOLIA**, and **MANTCHOORIA**), the tributary kingdom of **CO-RE-A**, and the islands of **FORMOSA** and **HAI-NAN**'.

3. Physical Features.—The rivers and the mountain-ranges of this extensive empire naturally divide it into five great areas: viz., (1) **China Proper**, situated in the valley of the **Ho-ang-ho**' and **Yang-tse-ki-ang** Rivers, and enclosed by the **Yun-ling-Ni-shan** Mountains; (2) the mountainous region of **Manchooria**, south of the Amoor, and lying between the **Khin-gan** Mountains and the **Sea of Japan**; (3) **Mongolia**, lying between the **Aitai** Mountains and **China Proper**; (4) the **Great Desert**, lying between the **Shan** and **Ku-en-lun**' Mountains, south of **Mongolia**; and (5) **Thibet**, lying north of the **Himalayas**. "Yang-tse-ki-ang" means "son of the ocean"; and "Ho-ang-ho," "yellow river."

4. China Proper (18 provinces) is isolated from the rest of the empire by the **Great Wall** at the north and the mountains at the west. Two principal ranges of mountains run from east to west, separating the fertile valleys watered by the two great Rivers **Ho-ang-ho** and **Yang-tse-ki-ang**, and the **Hong-ki-ang** River. The country is densely populated. By means of its rivers and canals, it has abundant facilities for internal communication. **COCHIN-CHINA** lies to the south and west.

5. Products.—The celebrated tea-plant, and rice, are the chief natural products. Silk, porcelain, nankeen, fans, carved ivory, lacquered-ware, and gongs, are the chief industrial products. Annual revenue \$315,000,000.

6. Thibet lies to the east of India, and between the **Himalaya** and **Kuenlun** Mountains. It occupies a high plateau intersected by ra-

QUESTIONS.—24. Describe the Madras Presidency; 24. its products; 25-27. chief cities, &c. 28. Describe Ceylon; 29. products; 30. chief cities; 31-33. The Maldives, Chagos, Andaman, and Nicobar Islands; 34-37. Dependent and Independent States. 38. Describe Birmah; 39. Siam; 40. Annam; 41. Laos Country; 42. Malaysian Peninsula. Give name, and size of China. 1. What noted for? 2, 3. extent &c. &c.? 4. Desc. China Proper. 5. its products; 6. Thibet.



CHINA
 7. C
 The m
 River
 Tonk
 on the
 8. C
 Proper
 produ
 9. I
 Hai-na
 fertile
 Hainan
 10. C
 ho] Ri
 The for
 TIEN-T
 treaty o
 its por
 tures,
 port of

WHAM-
 Canton,
 of Nank
 of addit

11. H
 Cow-loc
 Its leng
 as part
 compose

* Pe m
 mean riv
 QUE
 tan. 1.
 2. Giv



CHINESE MANDARIN, HIS WIFE, CHILD, AND SERVANT.

7. Chinese Tartary lies between Thibet, China Proper, and Siberia. The northern boundary is the Altai Mountains and the great Amoor River. It includes the extensive provinces of MONGOLIA and CHINESE TURKES-TAN, which in the interior are chiefly desert; and MANTCHOUARIA, on the west coast, which is mountainous and well watered.

8. Corea is a large peninsula jutting out between Japan and China Proper. The interior is mountainous and well timbered. The chief products are rice, hemp, tobacco, and ginseng.

9. Islands.—FORMOSA (Portuguese for "beautiful") lies east, and HAI-NAN, south of China Proper. Formosa is mountainous, and very fertile. Its products are rice and sugar. Coal has also been found. Hainan is rugged, and not very fertile. Timber is the chief product.

10. Chief Cities.—PE-KING, the capital, is situated near the Peiho (pay-ho) River. It consists of two walled towns—the Chinese, and the Tartar. The former is the seat of commerce; the latter, of the imperial government. TIEN-TSIN (or -SING), on the Peiho, is noted for its British and Chinese treaty of 1858. NANKING (p. 500,000), on the Yang-tse-ki-ang, is noted for its porcelain-tower, and for its silk, cotton (nunkeen), and paper manufactures. CANTON (1,000,000), on the Canton River, was the first Chinese port opened to foreigners, and is the seat of the European factories.



WHAMPOA, WITH ITS PAGOODA, FROM DANE'S ISLAND.

WHAM-PO-A, a safe anchorage on the Canton River, twelve miles from Canton. SHANG-HAI (-hy') (135,000) and NING-PO' (200,000), lie south-east of Nankin, and both have extensive trade. By recent treaties, a large number of additional ports have been opened to British and foreign commerce.

FOREIGN POSSESSIONS IN CHINA.

11. Hong-Kong, &c.—The British island of Hong-Kong, opposite Cowloon, on the Chinese coast, is 75 miles south-east of Canton. Its length is 10 miles, and its breadth 7 $\frac{1}{2}$. It was ceded to Great Britain as part indemnity for the expenses of the war in 1841-2. It is chiefly composed of lofty barren rocks; but since it became a British colony,

* *Pe* means north; *nan*, south; *tsung*, east; and *see*, west; and *ho* and *ki-ang'* mean river; *shan*, mountain; *hoo*, lake.

vines and valleys, lakes and rivers. The Indus, Sutlege, and Brahmapootra Rivers here take their rise. The climate is cold, and pasturage is the chief pursuit. The domestic animals are the Thibet goat (from whose fine hair the celebrated Cashmere-shawls are made), the yak or buffalo, the musk-deer, the sheep, &c. Thibet is noted as the seat of the Grand-Lama or high-priest of the Buddhist worship. LIT-TLE THIBET, to the west, is tributary to Cashmere.



SHANGHAI, ON THE EAST COAST, NEAR THE MOUTH OF THE YANG-TSE-KI-ANG. Its commercial value is very great. VICTORIA is the capital. A part of Cowloon, on the mainland of Kow-ang-tong, which commands Hong-Kong, was ceded to the British as part indemnity for the war of 1860.

12. Ma-ca-o.—The Portuguese seaport of Macao occupies a peninsula seventy miles south of Canton. It is a healthy and picturesque town, and is well fortified. Pop. 52,000. The Emperor ceded it, in 1582, to the Portuguese, in return for their assistance against pirates. Gamaons, the Portuguese poet, here composed his poem of the "Lu-si-ad."

TURKES-TAN, OR INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

Size, a little more than twice that of Canada, or equal to a square of 845 miles.

1. Position, &c.—TURKES-TAN lies between Mongolia and the Caspian Sea, and is separated from European Russia by that sea and the Ural River. It is chiefly an immense sandy plain sloping westward to the Sea of Aral, into which its chief rivers, the A-moo' or Oxus, and the Sir-Da'-ri-n or Jaxartes [jax-ar'-tees], empty themselves. This sea is saltish, has no apparent outlet, and is gradually decreasing. The climate is variable, and extremes of heat and of cold are experienced; but the river-districts are fertile. Silk, cotton, &c. are the chief products.

2. Civil Divisions.—TURKES-TAN consists of a number of dependent states called KAN-KATES, viz. BO-KHA-RA, KHI-YA, KHO-KAND', KAPRISTAN' ("inkled land"), and KUS-TOZ, each governed by an emir. The KIRGHIS STEPPES, to the north, are inhabited by wandering Tartar tribes.

3. Chief Cities.—BOKHARA is a place of extensive trade. SA-MAR-CAND' (pop. 10,000), a town of great antiquity, whose tower was first manufactured, contains the tomb of Timour the Tartar. KHO-KAN (100,000) is the country of Baber, who founded the Mogul Empire in India.

THE EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

(From the Chinese word *Ji-pun-guo*, signifying "kingdom of the rising sun," or "Eastern Kingdom.")

Size, about the same as Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 510 miles.

1. Noted For.—JA-PAN' is noted for its insular character, its former seclusion from other nations, and its jappanned-ware.

2. Extent.—This empire consists of an extended group of islands lying north and south of the east coast of Asia.

3. Physical Features.—The entire group of islands are mountainous and volcanic, but in the valleys and plains the soil is fertile. The coasts are rocky and dangerous, which, with the frequent storms and whirlpools, tend to exclude Japan from the rest of the World.

4. The Principal Islands are NIP-PO', or NIP-POY, ["sun-source,"] (the Japanese name for the whole kingdom), SI-KOKU', or SI-KOKU', and KI-CU-SU', or KIMO [ze'-mo]; together with the southern part of SA-OA-LI-AN ISLAND, three southern KURILE [koo'-ri] ISLANDS, the island of Yesso, and the LOO-CHOO ISLANDS, as dependencies.

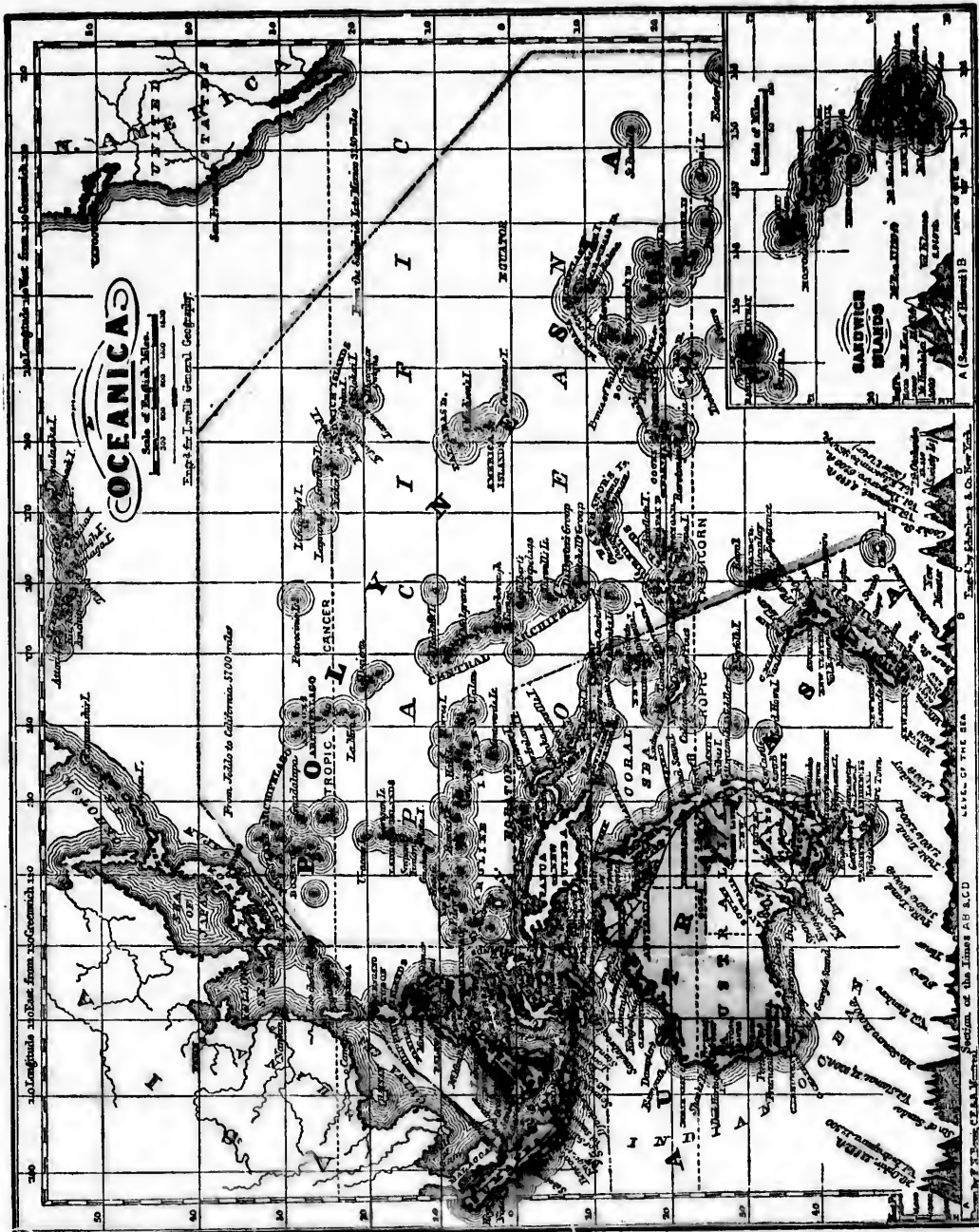
5. Principal Straits.—St. Anthony, La Pe-rouse [-rooze'], San-gar', Corea, Bonting, and Van Diemen.

6. Principal Capes.—A-ya-yu', Cril-lon', Ga-ma-ley', No-to, It-son-mo, No-mo, To-sa, Si-ma, and King.

7. Products, &c.—The chief mineral products are copper, iron, tin, silver, and gold. The other natural products are cotton, tea, tobacco, and silk. Porcelain, jappanned-ware, and silk-fabrics are important articles of native industry. In the interior the roads are good and trade is extensive.

8. Chief Cities.—YEDDO, or JEDDO, on a fine bay in the S. E. of Niphon, is the capital, and the residence of the Ty'-coon, or military emperor. MEI-KO (pop. 500,000) is the ecclesiastical and literary capital, and the residence of the Mikado, or ecclesiastical sovereign of the empire. O-SA-KA, the seaport of Menco, and the commercial metropolis; SI-MO-DA; NAN-GA-SI-KI (100,000), on the island of Kiusiu, and MATS-MAT' and HA-KO-DA-UI, on the island of Yesso, are important commercial ports. By Lord Elgin's treaty, several additional ports have been opened to British commerce.

QUESTIONS.—7. Point out and describe Chinese Tartary; 8. Corea; 9. islands; 10. chief cities; 11. Hong-Kong; 12. Macao. Give the size of Turkes-tan. 1. Point out and describe its position; 2. its civil divisions; 3. its chief cities. Give the derivation and size of Japan. 1. For what is it noted? 2. Give its extent. 3. What is said of its physical features? 4. principal islands? 5. principal straits? 6. principal capes? 7. products, &c.? 8. chief cities?



QUESTIONS.—What Continents lie to the north-east and north-west on this map? Name and point out the three great divisions of Oceania, and name the principal islands in each division. What is the name of the large island-continent on the map? Into how many colonies is it divided? Name them. Name and point out the largest island in each group. What important group of islands lies to the north-east? What important island lies south of Australia? What important group of islands lies south-east? What large island lies north of Australia? What islands lie directly under the Equator?

I. O. Island and Pacific Ocean.
 II. discovered by James Cook.
 III. the Equator. Vegetation valuable for the islands.
 IV. the greatest carries less direct to Oceania and the Pacific.
 V. the greatest carries less direct to Oceania and the Pacific.

1. M. the Malay Peninsula.

NAMES OF ISLANDS
SUMATRA
JAVA
CELEBES
MOLUCCAS
BANDA
HOENES
TIMOR
PHILIPPINES
LABUAN

2. Sumatra (highly fertile, gold-dust).
 3. Java.

QU. physical show its



THE PRINCIPAL ANIMALS ON THE ISLANDS OF OCEANIA. (For names of the Animals in this engraving, see section IV.)

V. OCEANIA, OR THE ISLAND-GROUPS OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

I. Oceania, or Oceanica, includes the three great groups of Islands lying south of the Continent of Asia, and between the Indian and Pacific Oceans: viz., (I.) MALAYSIA; (II.) AUSTRALASIA, including MELANASIA; & (III.) POLYNESIA, including MICRONESIA.

II. Noted For.—Oceania is noted for its comparatively recent discovery and settlement by Europeans, and for being entirely made up of islands scattered over the Pacific Ocean.

III. Physical Features.—Most of the islands of Malaysia lie under the Equator. They are volcanic and mountainous, but highly fertile. Vegetable and animal life is exuberant, and minerals abundant and valuable. The islands of Australasia, being large, partake more of the character of the adjacent continent in climate, soil, and productions. The islands of Polynesia are chiefly of coral formation, and many of them are volcanic. The soil of most of them is very fertile.

IV. The Animals.—There are forty species of the opossum genus, from the great kangaroo with a pouch for her young, to the kangaroo-rat which carries her young on her back. The platypus, or duck-billed utter, the wingless bird, the black swan, the bird-of-paradise, and the lyre-bird, are peculiar to Oceania. The other birds are the cassowary, the e-mu, the Argus-pheasant, and the parrot. Of the reptiles, the flying-dragon is the most remarkable.

V. The Principal Trees of Oceania are the leafless beef-wood, the gum-tree, the grass-tree, the myrtle or tea tree, and the yellow-wood.

I. MALAYSIA.

1. Malaysia, or the East-India Archipelago, lies south of the Malaysian Peninsula and China. The principal islands are:

NAME OF PRINCIPAL ISLAND.	Area in Sq. Miles.	By whom and when discovered.	Total Population.	CAPITAL.	Population.
SUMATRA.....	140,000	The Dutch, 1600	4,500,000	Padang	22,000
JAVA AND MATUBA.....	52,000	The Portug'ese, 1511	11,504,200	Batavia	120,300
CÉLÉBES.....	75,000	The Portug'ese, 1512	2,100,000	Macassar	20,000
MOLUCCAS.....	38,000		700,000	Ambon	3,000
BANCA.....	7,500		60,000	Minlow	1,000?
BORNEO.....	300,000	The Portug'ese, 1513	2,500,000	Brani	20,000
TIMOR, LOMBOK, &c.....	30,000		300,000	Cospang	5,000
PHILIPPINES.....	350,000	The Spaniards, 1571	8,000,000	Manilla	140,000
LABUAN, &c.....	32	The English, 1846		Victoria	1,000?

DUTCH ISLANDS.

2. Sumatra lies directly under the Equator, and south of the Malaysian Peninsula. Its western side is mountainous (Kassoumba being 15,000 ft. high), but its eastern side is nearly level. The chief products are pepper, gold-dust, sulphur, gutta-percha, and camphor. The Dutch capital of the island is PA-DAN-G. BENCOCLEN is another Dutch town.

3. Java lies south-east of Sumatra. It was settled by the Portuguese,

but is now the chief seat of Dutch power in the East. It is mountainous, and volcanoes are very numerous, but the soil is highly fertile. In the *Guevo-Upas*, or "Valley of Death," near Batar, animal and vegetable life languishes; not from the effects of the poisoned air, as is supposed, but from the juice of the Upas-tree, which freely exudes if the tree be tapped. Rice, coffee, sugar, &c. are the staple products.

4. Celebes lies east of Borneo. It has a very singular shape, and its scenery is picturesque. Its mountains are covered with rich and valuable trees, among which is the famous *badeau* or macassar-oil tree.

5. The Moluccas, or Spice, Islands lie east of Celebes, and are a valuable and fertile group, producing various spices in abundance.

6. The other Dutch Islands are BANCA, famous for its tin-mines; CRRAM; SUMRAWA; and part of BORNEO (which see, page 61), TIMON [temore], NEW GUINEA, &c. (page 93). (See HOLLAND, page 76.) The total population of the Dutch East-India Archipelago is about 17,000,000.

SPANISH ISLANDS.

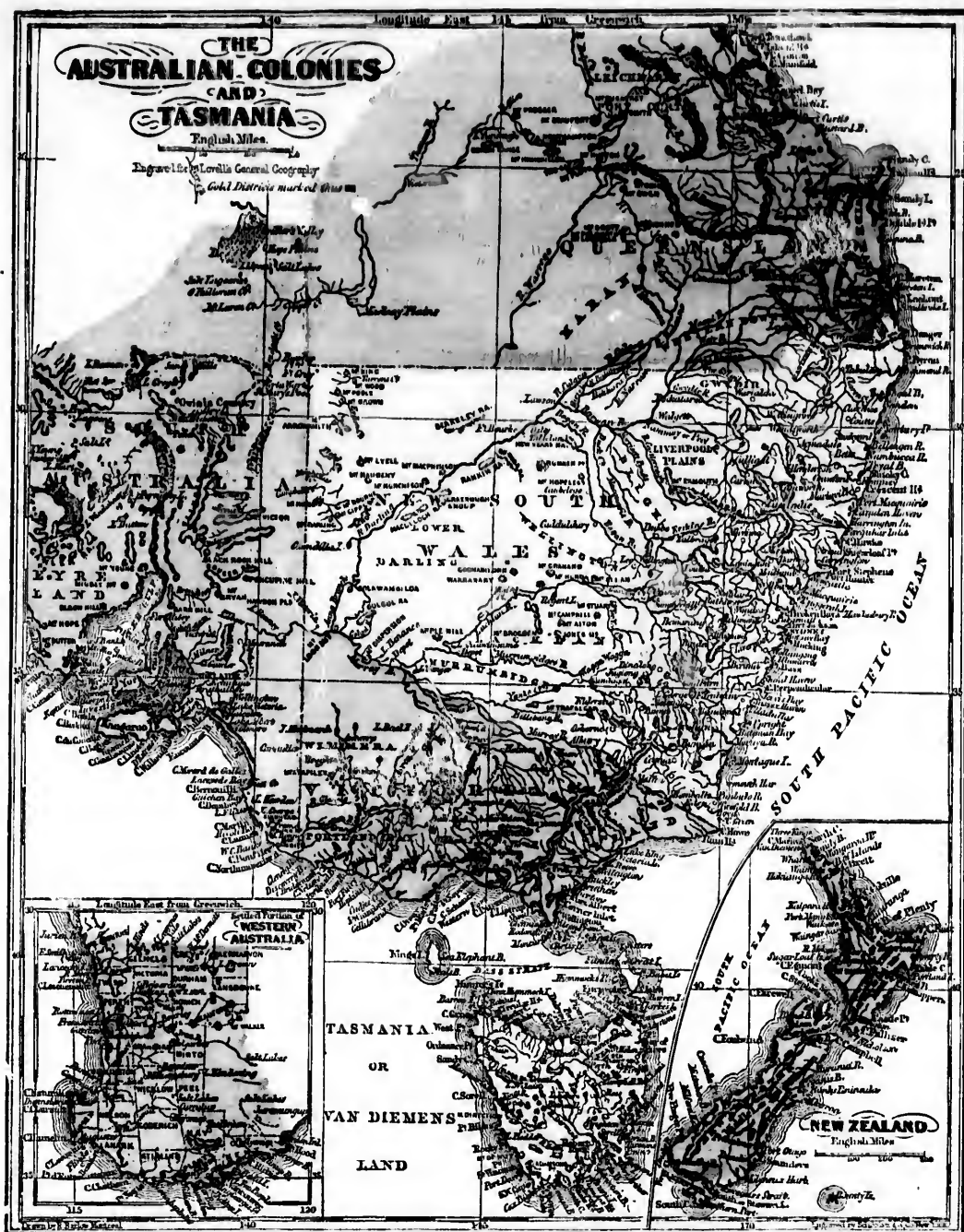
7. The Philippine, an extensive triangular group, lies south-east of China Proper.

They consist of three principal and about 1,200 smaller islands. They are mountainous and volcanic. Their vegetation is rich, and its size gigantic. Their mineral products are varied and abundant. MANILLA, on Luzon, the principal island, is the seat of Spanish government and the chief centre of trade.



THE DYAKS, OR ABORIGINES, OF BORNEO. SELANGAN in Mindanao is a native capital, and the residence of the Sultan.

QUESTIONS.—I. Of what groups of islands does Oceania consist? Point them out on the map. II. For what is Oceania noted? III. Describe its physical features. IV. Name the animals which are enumerated, and shown in the engraving. V. Name the principal trees. 1. Point out Malaysia, and show its extent. Give the particulars in the table. 2-5. Describe Sumatra, Java, Celebes, the Moluccas; 6. the other Dutch islands; 7. the Philippines.



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the various colonies in Australia. Point out and name the gulfs, bays, capes, islands, &c. Trace the course of the principal rivers and mountain-ranges. Point out the gold-districts. Point out the position of Tasmania. Point out and name the islands of New Zealand.

8. Java.

9. climate the of which The m below Bac- capital the D part of 10. wood a Brit

1.

NAM

ASTR TASMA NEW Other

TI

2. of Au MANIA

3. island mine

4.

5. Sea n 8. by

6. ous. pool lake north Gawi an im hills, Most interi salt-n With Gulf the n few For it lia ha and t navig 7. R. River with Durin lous, the V gator, the n Richn lery, Hunt at the Lynce roy, l Hurm

Q sions a featur

THE PORTUGUESE ISLANDS.

8. These are **Timor** (in part), **Flores**, **Solor**, &c., lying east of Java. They are chiefly volcanic. Exports: sandal-wood, sago, &c.

THE ISLANDS OF BORNEO, LABUAN, &c.

9. **Borneo** lies directly under the Equator, and has a fine tropical climate. In the interior there are two ranges of mountains, but towards the coast it is level. Vegetation is rich. Minerals are abundant; among which are gold, diamonds, platinum, tin, antimony, copper, and iron. The natives are called **Dyaks** (see page 89). Two thirds of the island belong to the Dutch: **PONTIANAK** and **BANJARMASIN** are their chief towns. **BURU** (Sanskrit for "land"), or **HORNEO**, and **SARAWAK**, are the British capitals. The Sultan of the island ceded the province of **SARAWAK** to the British in 1853, and appointed Sir James Brooke to be Rajah. That part of the island called **BORNEO PAPOEN** was taken by the British in 1846.

10. **La-bu-an'** lies north-west of Borneo. It is a flat island, but is well wooded, and abounds with coral. It became, with **SARAWAK** (in Borneo), a British colony, under Sir James Brooke, in 1846. Capital, **VICTORIA**.

II. AUSTRALASIA, INCLUDING MELANASIA.

1. **Australasia**, or Southern Asia, includes the following islands:

NAME OF ISLAND.	Area in Sq. Miles.	By whom and when settled.	Population 1858-9.	CAPITAL OR CHIEF TOWN.
AUSTRALIA.....	3,600,000	The English, 1788.	1,346,000	Sydney
TASMANIA.....	27,000	" 1803.	60,000	Hobart Town
NEW ZEALAND.....	122,000	" 1815.	114,000	Auckland
NEW GUINEA.....	250,000	The Dutch (part).	500,000	.....
Other islands.....	80,000	The Natives, &c.	250,000	.....

THE BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN AUSTRALASIA.

2. This Group includes the Provinces in the great island-continent of **AUSTRALIA** (or **NEW HOLLAND**, as called by Dutch navigators), **TASMANIA** (or **VAN DIEMEN'S LAND**), **NORFOLK ISLAND**, and **NEW ZEALAND**.

THE ISLAND-CONTINENT OF AUSTRALIA.

Size, about that of British North America, or equal to a square of 1,732 miles.

3. **Noted For.**—**AUSTRALIA** is noted for being the largest island in the World; for its compactness, its vast plains, its great mineral wealth, and its flocks of sheep and herds of cattle.

4. **Extent.**—Australia is 2,500 miles long, by 1,900 broad.

5. **Boundaries.**—Australia is bounded on the N. by the **Timor Sea** and **Torres Strait**, E. by the **Coral Sea** and **Pacific Ocean**, S. by **Bass Strait** and **Indian Ocean**, and W. by the **Indian Ocean**.

6. **Physical Features.**—The south and east coasts are mountainous. The most important are the mountains of Queensland, and the Liverpool range and Australian Alps in New S. Wales. **Torrens**, a salt-water lake extends northward from **Spencer Gulf**. **Gregory Lake** lies farther north, and **Lake Blanch** farther east. **Lake Gardiner** lies between the **Gawler** and **Stuart** ranges of mountains, in S. Australia. The interior is an immense plain, interspersed with grassy meadow and desert land, hills, valleys, and plains. Most of the water in the interior is absorbed in salt-marshes and swamps. With the exception of the Gulf of Carpentaria, at the north, the coast has few large indentations. For its great size, Australia has few good harbours, and the coast-reefs render navigation difficult.

7. **Rivers.**—The **Murray River**, at the south-east, with its tributaries (the **Darling**, &c.), is 2,000 miles long. The other rivers are the **Victoria**, **South Alligator**, **Roper**, and **Albert**, at the north; the **Brisbane**, **Richmond**, **Clarence**, **Macleay**, **Hastings**, **Manning**, **Hunter**, **Hawkesbury**, &c., at the east; the **Mitchell**, **Lyned**, **Mackenzie**, **Pitgeroy**, **Dawson**, **Warrego**, and **Burnett**, at the north-east;



CITY OF SYDNEY, THE CAPITAL OF NEW SOUTH WALES.

the **Yarra-yarra** (or "over-flowing" stream), and the **Barroo** (or **Victoria**) at the south; and the **Gascoyne**, **Murchison**, and **Swan**, at the west.

8. Physical Features of the North Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS & BAYS.	CHANNELS & STRAITS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAR.	ISLANDS.
TIMOR.	Carpentaria. Arnhem. Van Diemen's. Cambrijen. King's Sound.	Endeavour. Clarence. Queen's.	York. Arnhem. Point Dale. Lomonderry. Le-ruijen.	York or Flinders's Land. Cobourg.	Cook's. Wolfieley. Groote. Melville. Baturai.

9. Physical Features of the East Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS & BAYS.	CHANNELS & STRAITS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAR.	ISLANDS.
CORAL.	Pr. Charlotte. Broad Sound. Hervey. Moreton. Botany.		Melville. Flinders. sandy. Byron. Sugar-Loaf. Howe.		Sandy and various islands.

10. Physical Features of the South Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS & BAYS.	CHANNELS & STRAITS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAR.	ISLANDS.
GERATAU. ST. PAUL'S BIGHT.	Port Phillip. St. Vincent. Spencer.	Bass. Banks.	Wilson Prom. Eyre Land. King's. Catastrophe.	Victoria. W. Australia.	Furness. Tasmania. King's. Kamsaroo.

11. Physical Features of the West Coast.

SEAS.	GULFS & BAYS.	CHANNELS & STRAITS.	CAPES.	PENINSULAR.	ISLANDS.
	Flinders. Geograph's. Shark. Barmouth.		Leeuwin. Fremantle. Natural's. N. West.	Leeuwin.	Perth. Swan. Aviclar. Lago.

12. **Climate.**—One third, including the whole northern part, of Australia is in the torrid zone. The remaining two thirds, including all the Australian Colonies, are in the temperate zone. The climate, therefore, in the settled parts, although often anomalous and variable, is salubrious. From the interior come hot winds, and a fine dust which insinuates itself every where. Long droughts, and as long rains, periodically prevail.

13. **Products, &c.**—When the rain falls, vegetation is rapid, and pasture abundant. The trees are very peculiar; such as the lofty leathery-leaved gum-tree, the casuway-trees (beef-wood, she-oak, and swamp-oak), which have long wing-pointed branchlets having only small sheaths instead of leaves. The animals, &c. are also peculiar (see engraving on page 89). In addition to the gold-fields, Australia is rich in iron, copper, tin, lead, zinc, coal, and other minerals. Next to gold, wool and tallow are the chief exports; as Australia is a vast grazing country, and abounds in flocks and herds. Annual value of gold exports about \$45,000,000, others \$25,000,000.

14. **The British Colonies in Australasia** are as follows:

NAME OF COLONY.	Area in Square Miles.	Govt. established 1858-9.	Population 1858-9.	CAPITAL.	Population London.	Distance from London.
NEW S. WALES.....	250,000	1788	454,000	Sydney, near Botany Bay.	100,000	10,650
QUEENSLAND.....	200,000	1859	25,000	Brisbane, on Moreton Bay.	5,500	
VICTORIA.....	60,000	1851	520,000	Melbourne, on Yarra-yarra.	150,000	10,500
S. AUSTRALIA.....	300,000	1836	120,000	Adelaide, near St. Vincent's.	25,000	
WESTERN AUSTRALIA.....	80,000	1823	15,000	Perth, on Swan River.	3,000	
TASMANIA.....	27,000	1803	60,000	Hobart Town, at the south.	25,000	
NEW ZEALAND.....	122,000	1840	110,000	Auckland, in North Ulster.	15,000	

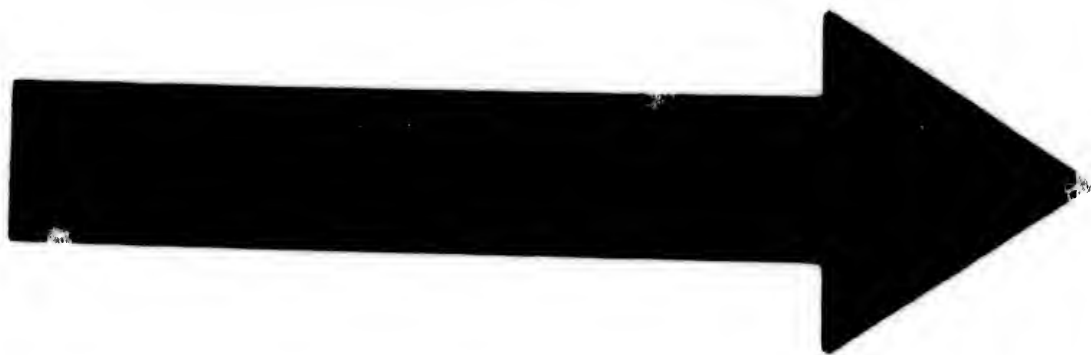
15. **Exports, &c.**—The annual value of the exports from all these Colonies is about \$140,000,000; revenue \$20,000,000; public debt \$30,000,000.

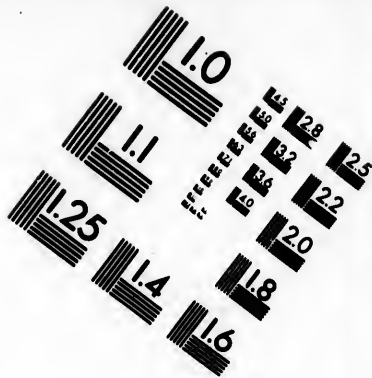
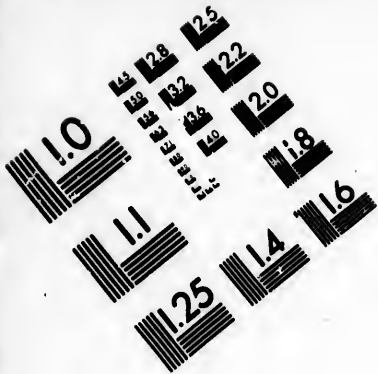
16. **New South Wales.**—This is the oldest colony in Australia, and formerly included Queensland and Victoria:

It now lies between them. The coast, for some distance inland, is rugged and mountainous, giving a south-eastern slope to the country. The principal ranges are the Liverpool and Blue Mountains at the east, with numerous small ones in the interior. The River Darling (and its tributaries), which takes its rise in the mountains, flows into the Gulf of St. Vincent at Adelaide.

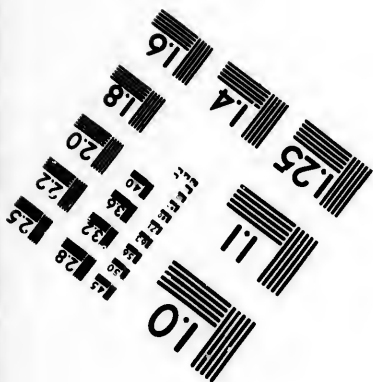
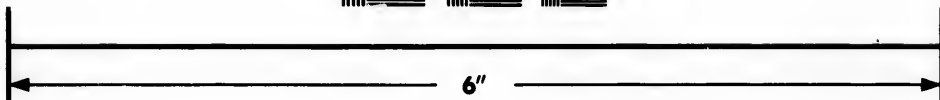
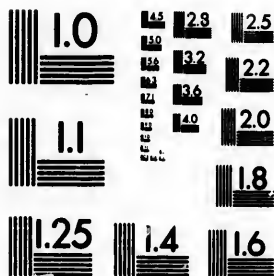
17. **Chief Cities.**—**SYDNEY**, the capital, is well situated, and presents a striking appearance from the water. It is a handsome city, and contains many fine buildings; among which are the churches, the government house, and the

QUESTIONS.—8. What is said of the Portuguese islands? 9. of Borneo? 10. of Labuan? 1. of Australasia in the table? 2. Name the British Possessions there. Give the size of Australia. 3. &c. what is it noted? 4. Describe its extent; 5. boundaries; 6. physical features; 7. rivers; 8-11. physical features of the north, east, south, and west coasts; 12, 13. climate, &c.; 14. Br. Colonies in Australasia; 15. exports, &c.; 16. New South Wales; 17. cities.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

university. The other towns are PARRAMATTA, LIVERPOOL, BATHURST, WINDSOR, NEWCASTLE, GOULBURN, CAMPBELLTOWN, and MATTLAND.

18. **Queensland**, the youngest of the colonies, lies north of New South Wales. It is also mountainous, but contains many fertile tracts. The soil and climate are peculiarly adapted for the growth of cotton. The principal mountain-ranges are the Peak, Expedition, Queensland, and Macpherson. Brisbane, the principal river, falls into Moreton Bay.

19. **Chief Cities**.—BRISBANE, on Moreton Bay, in an agricultural region, is the capital. Other towns: SANDGATE, CLEVELAND, and IPSWICH.

20. **Victoria** (formerly called PORT PHILIP, and AUSTRALIA FELIX) occupies the south-eastern portion of Australia. It was only settled in 1835 by Mr. Batman, but is now one of the most important of these colonies. The gold-mines are very rich and productive. The Australian Alps extend in a south-eastern direction, parallel to the coast-line, and give a northern slope to the country. Victoria is the most fertile part of Australia; and were it not for the hot winds from the interior, the climate would be very agreeable. Much attention is paid to education.

21. **Chief Cities**.—MELBOURNE, a flourishing city, on the Yarra-yarra



CITY OF MELBOURNE, THE CAPITAL OF VICTORIA, AUSTRALIA.

near Port Philip Bay, is the capital. It contains a handsome university, banks, churches, and other fine buildings. The other towns are GEELONG (pop. 30,000), CASTLEMARINE, BEECHWORTH, KYNETON, PORTLAND, BALARAT, WILLIAMSTOWN, BRIGHTON, ALBERTON, and MITCHELL. BALARAT, MOUNT ALEXANDER, BENDIGO, and OVENS are the chief localities in the gold-diggings, at the north.

22. **South Australia** lies between Western Australia and New South Wales. Towards the coast, and along the banks of the Murray, the land is highly fertile. Northwards from Torrens Lake it becomes sterile. The principal mountain-ranges are the Stuart, Gawler, Flinders, and Gloucester. Copper, lead, tin, and iron are abundant. The Burra-burra copper-mines (90 miles from Adelaide) are very rich.

23. **Chief Cities**.—ADELAIDE, the capital, is situated on an extensive plain, six miles from Gulf St. Vincent, and on one side is sheltered by a range of hills. The Torrens flows through it. Other towns: MACCLESFIELD, KOO-BIN-GA, MILNERS, GAWLER, GOOLWA, and PORT LINCOLN.

24. **Western Australia** (originally SWAN RIVER, from its black swans) is situated on the south-west coast. Though largest in extent, it has been the slowest in growth. It was made a penal settlement in 1850.

25. **Chief Cities**.—PERTH is the capital. Other towns: FREEMANTLE, the chief port; ALBANY, TOOD-YAY, YORK, AUSTRALIND, AUGUSTA, &c.

26. **Railways** connect Melbourne with the Mount-Alexander gold-field, Murray River, Geelong, &c.; and Adelaide with Gardentown, &c.

TASMANIA, OR VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

(Named Van Diemen after the Governor of Batavia, by its discoverer, Tasman.)

Size, nearly the same as New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 163 miles.

27. **Position**.—This island lies 120 miles south of Victoria.

28. **Physical Features**.—The north-east and west shores are bold and rocky. At the north and the south there are good harbours. The interior is mountainous and rugged, and the peaks numerous. The scenery along the coast opposite Brunel Island is very fine. The surface is diversified and well watered. The principal rivers are the Tamar and the Derwent. There are several beautiful lakes in the interior.

29. **Chief Towns**.—HOBART TOWN (hob'-er-ton), the capital, is picturesquely situated on Sullivan Cove, at the mouth of the Derwent, 20 miles

from Storm Bay. It contains a college and many handsome public buildings. Other towns: LAUNCESTON [lans'-ton] (pop. 10,000), GEORGETOWN, &c.



CITY OF HOBART TOWN, THE CAPITAL OF TASMANIA.

30. **Climate and Products**.—The climate is colder and more humid than that of Australia, but the natural products are nearly the same. The chief exports are wool, wheat, flour, auriferous quartz, and timber.

NORFOLK ISLAND.

31.—This Colony is 900 miles east of Australia, and was until lately attached to Tasmania. It is a beautiful island of about 9,000 acres. The Norfolk-pine is indigenous. Until lately, it was a penal colony. The inhabitants of Pitcairn Island are now settled on it (see page 51).

THE ISLANDS OF NEW ZEALAND.

(Named after Zealand Island, Denmark, by Tasman, the discoverer, in 1642.) Size, nearly the same as that of Upper Canada, or equal to a square of 350 miles.

32. **Position**.—This group lies 1,100 miles east of Tasmania, and consists of three principal islands; viz., NEW ULSTER, NEW MUNSTER (the centre and largest island), and NEW LEINSTER. The length through their centres is 1,200 miles.

33. **Physical Features**.—These islands are divided into seven districts or provinces. They are mountainous and volcanic, especially in New Ulster. Mounts Edgecumbe and Egmont are the principal peaks. The rivers are numerous, but none of them are large. Ferns of almost every variety and size, and flax, grow luxuriantly.



CITY OF AUCKLAND, THE CAPITAL OF NEW ZEALAND.

34. **Products, &c.**—Copper, sulphur, iron, gold, &c. are abundant. The wingless-bird is the only remarkable specimen of the animal kingdom.

35. **The Climate** is humid and agreeable, and the soil fertile.

36. **History**.—These islands were discovered by Tasman in 1642, and the coast was circumnavigated by Capt. Cook in 1770. They were first settled in 1815, erected into a colony in 1840, and a constitution granted to them in 1852.

37. **Chief Cities**.—AUCKLAND, the capital, is well situated for trade on the estuary of the Thames. Other towns: WELLINGTON (p. 5,500), with an excellent harbour; NELSON, NEW PLYMOUTH, CHRIST'S CHURCH, DUNEDIN, &c.

38. **The Ma-or-ies, or natives**, belong to the Malay family. Many of them tattoo their skin in a singular and fanciful manner. (See engraving.)

39. **Antipodes Island** is 630 miles S. E. of New Zealand (pp. 6 and 12).



A TATOODED NEW-ZEALAND CHIEF.

QUESTIONS.—18. Describe Queensland; 19. its chief cities; 20. Victoria; 21. its chief cities; 22. South Australia; 23. its chief cities. 24. Describe Western Australia; 25. its chief cities. 26. What places are connected by railway? Give the derivation and size of Tasmania. 27. Point out its position. 28. Describe its physical features; 29. chief towns; 30. climate and products; 31. Norfolk Island. Give the derivation and size of New Zealand. 32. Point out its position; 33. phys. feat. 34. What is said of its products, &c.? 35, 36. climate, &c.? 37. cities? 38. the Maories? 39. Antipodes Island?

MELANASIA, OR THE PAPUAN ISLANDS.

40. Pap-u-a, or New Guinea, is a very large island lying to the north of Australia. It is indented with deep bays, and, except at the north-east, is mountainous. Valuable woods are abundant;



HEAD-DRESSES OF THE NATIVES OF NEW GUINEA.

and here is the home of the beautiful bird-of-paradise. The natives tattoo and otherwise adorn themselves. They are subject to the island of Ternate, but the Dutch exercise authority at the west coast. **41. Other Islands.**—The **LOUISIAD** [loo-e-zé-ád] ISLES lie south of New Guinea; **ADMIRALTY ISLES, NEW BRITAIN,** and **NEW IRELAND,** to the east; **SALOMON or SOLOMON ISLANDS,** north-east; **QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS, NEW HEBRIDES,** and **NEW CALEDONIA** (which last is partly settled by the French), still farther to the south-east. Most of these islands are mountainous, and many of them are of coral formation. They are fertile. The inhabitants are chiefly of the aboriginal Austral-Negro race.

III. POLYNESIA, INCLUDING MICRONESIA.

(Named from two Greek words; viz., *pol-us*, "many," and *nes-oss*, an "island.")

42. Polynesia includes all the remaining islands in the Pacific Ocean. **MICRONESIA** includes the principal groups north of the Equator, viz., the **Bo-nin** [-neen'], **Ladrones'**, **Caroline,** and **Sandwich Islands, &c.**; and the **South-Sea Islands,** viz., the **Marquesas, Society, Cook's, Navigator's, Friendly, Fee-jees, or Fiji, &c.,** lying south of the Equator.

43. The Principal Groups of Islands in Polynesia are as follows:

NAME OF PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.	Area in Sq. Miles.	By whom and when settled.	Population.	CAPITAL.	Population.
SANDWICH	4,800	The Natives, 1791	75,000	Honolulu.....	6,500
MARQUESSAS	810	The French, 1794	20,000		
SOCIETY, &c.	2,000	The French, 1844	25,000	Papeete, Tahiti.	
FRIENDLY, &c.	6,000	The Natives, &c.	180,000		
NATIVE ISLANDS	2,000	The English, &c.	60,000		
LADRONES	1,300	The Spaniards	13,000	St. Ignacio....	
Other Islands	8,000	The Natives, &c.	70,000		

44. The Bonin are British Islands, lying 500 miles south-west of Japan. They have one good harbour. The soil and climate are excellent.

45. The Ladrones are Spanish Islands, lying 1,400 miles N. E. of the Spanish Philippine Islands. They are a picturesque and fertile group.

46. The Caroline group (after Carlos II of Spain), extending from Polev to the U-a-lan Isles, 2,000 miles east and west, lie south of the Ladrones, and are nominally Spanish islands. They are chiefly of coral formation.

47. The Sandwich Islands are the most important of the Polynesian groups, and lie about midway between America and Asia. They are volcanic, and form a curved line extending 400 miles from Hawaii [há-wy'-e], or Owhyhee, the principal island. In Hawaii the volcanic peaks are nearly 13,000 feet high. The climate is mild and agreeable. Exports: whalebone and oil, coffee and sugar,—annual value \$350,000. **HONOLULU**, on the island of Oahu [wob'-hoo'], is the capital. The inhabitants are advanced in civilization, and are governed by a native king.

48. The Marquesas are a group of French islands lying S. of the Equator, and midway between Australia and Central America. They are mountainous, but picturesque and fertile. They were named after Marquis de Mendoza, Viceroy of Peru, who sent out their discoverer (Mendana) in 1595.

49. The Society Islands lie south-west of the Marquesas. The beautiful and fertile **TAHITI** [tá-hee'-te], or **O-Tá-HÉ-TE-É** [-há'], is the principal island, and is called the "Gem of the Pacific." These, as well as the **GAMBRIE** and **WALLIS ISLANDS** to the S. E. are now dependencies of France.

50. Cook's Islands, (Raratonga, or Morotonga, &c.) lie S. W. of the Society Islands. They are chiefly mountainous and volcanic. Pop. 60,000.

51. The Navigator's, or Sa-mo'-a, group lie north-west of Cook's Islands, and form an extended chain from east to west. They are mountainous but fertile. The bread-fruit tree here grows luxuriantly.

52. The Friendly, or Tonga, Islands, a triple group, lie south of the Navigator's Islands. They are of coral formation, and are highly fertile. The cocoa-nut is an important article of export. The islands are independent.

53. The Feejee, or Fiji, are in the centre of Oceania, and are the most westerly of the Polynesian islands. Many of them are of coral formation, and are volcanic. The soil is fertile, and the scenery very beautiful. Pop. 135,000. These islands have been placed by their king under British protection.

VI. THE CONTINENT OF AFRICA.

(Africa is supposed to be derived from *Africus*, "colony," the name given to a spot in the north by the Phœnicians; or perhaps from a [used in a negative sense], and *tri-gus*, "cold.")

Size, about 5,000 miles long, and 4,500 wide, or equal to a square of 2,453 miles.



THE PRINCIPAL ANIMALS ON THE CONTINENT OF AFRICA. (For names of Animals in this engraving, see section 11, page 95.)

QUESTIONS.—40. Describe Papua, or New Guinea; and 41. the other independent islands of Australasia. Give the derivation of Polynesia. 42. What islands are included in this division? 43. Give the particulars in the table. 44. Describe the Bonin Islands; 45. the Ladrones; 46. the Caroline; 47. the Sandwich; 48. the Marquesas; 49. the Society; 50. Cook's; 51. the Navigator's; 52. the Friendly; and 53. the Feejee Islands. Give derivation and size of Africa.



QUESTIONS.—Point out and name the countries in Africa. Name and trace the principal rivers and mountain-ranges. Point out the bays, capes, &c.

1. its
2. an
3. Atle
war
uni
and
rece
a br
Sals
Nigs
of th

ME
RE

RED
AR

MO
R.

ATL
est

KOR
-CAM
130

ARY
15.
MOO

MAX

SKOV

• Th

8.
torri
the
Ear
hur
from
10
(a) l
and
bor
mai
sac
the
11
and
thin
the
cetr
11
fam
with

stra
said
14

1. **Noted For.**—AFRICA is noted for its celebrated River Nile; its unbroken coast-line, compact shape, and vast extent.
2. **Position.**—This continent lies south of Europe, and forms an immense peninsula joined to Asia by the Isthmus of Sues.
3. **Physical Features.**—The north-western part projects into the Atlantic; and the remainder, lying more to the east, tapers southwards towards the Atlantic and Indian Oceans. The coast is bold and unbroken. The celebrated River Nile takes its rise far to the southwards, and fertilises the north-eastern part. Fine rivers and lakes have recently been discovered in the central region to the south, down which a broad table-land extends. Along the central region of the north the Sahara or Great Desert stretches, diversified here and there by oases. Nigritia, south of the desert, is well watered, and contains the valleys of the Niger, Chad, and Lake Tchad, with their tributary rivers.

4. Physical Features of the North Coast.*

SEAS.	GULFS AND BAYS.	CHANNELS AND STRAITS.	ISLANDS.	CAPES OR HEADS.	PENINSULAS.
MEDITERRANEAN.	Ca-be-s. Sid-ra.	Gibraltar.	Jerbah.	Spartel's Bon.	Tu-nis.

5. Physical Features of the East Coast.*

RED ARABIAN.	Sues. A-dan. Fornosa. Sofala. Delagoa.	Bal-el-man-deh. Mozambique [-beck]. Mauritius.	So-co-triv. Seychelles. Zanzibar. Madagascar. Mauritius.	Gear-da-fu-l. Del-ag-do. Cor-rien-tea. Ambro. St. Marys.	Ber-be-ran.
--------------	--	--	--	--	-------------

6. Physical Features of the South Coast.*

Al-go-a. False.		A-gul-as. Good Hope.	Cape Colony.
-----------------	--	----------------------	--------------

7. Physical Features of the West Coast.*

Table. Walvisch. Elephant. Guinea. St-al-ra. Be-nin.	St. Helena. Ascension. Fernando Po. Cape Verd. Canary. Madeira.	Negro. Lo-pee. Formosa. Palma. Verd. Blanco. Bojador. Nunn.	Sahara. Senegambia and Upper Guinea.
--	---	---	--------------------------------------

8. Physical Features of the Interior.*

MOUNTAIN RANGES.	RIVERS FLOWING NORTH.	RIVERS FLOWING SOUTH.	RIVERS FLOWING EAST.	RIVERS FLOWING WEST.	LAKES.
ATLAS, highest 15,000 ft.	Mul-wee-ya. Shelliff.† 250 in.	350 m.		Shelliff,† 250 m.	Mel-gig. Tit-te-ri.
KONG, 4,000 ft. CAM-RE-OOH 15,000 ft.	Joliba. Senegal.† 1,000 m. Chadda.	300 m.	Niger.† 3,000 m. Sen-c.	Gambia, 1,000 m. Chadda.	Tohad. Fit-tro.
ABYSSINIAN, 15,000 ft. MOON, 20,000 ft.	Nile.† 2,500 m. Ki-el.†	Wol be. Juba, or Jubb.	Ha-wash, 600 m.		Demboa. Victoria. Ny-an-sa.
MAX-ER-OA.	Co-an-so, or Quo-an-go, 600 m.	Congo.† 1,700 m.	Lu-f-l. Zam-be-si, 1,600 m.	Congo, 1,700 m.	Ta-gan-y-ka. Ny-as-se. N-gu-mi.
SNOW, 9,000 ft.		Fish. Lim-po-no.†	250 m. Lim-po-no.†	Orange, 1,000 m.	Shirwa.

* These can be much better learned from a large school-room map. † In part only.

9. **The Climate.**—As more than three fourths of Africa lie in the torrid zone, the climate is hot and dry. There are but two seasons, viz. the dry and the rainy; the latter occurring when the Sun is nearest the Earth. The east is liable to the monsoons of the Indian Ocean. Violent hurricanes occur in the south-east. At the north, parching winds blow from the Sahara Desert.
10. **Products.**—In Northern Africa the chief grains are wheat, dourra (a kind of grain), and barley. Oranges and lemons are abundant, and the cotton-plant is cultivated. The date-palm is found along the borders of the Sahara. In Middle Africa, westward, the food-plants are maize, rice, yams, bananas, mandioe, and ground nut. There are also gum, seckia, ebony, and cotton-trees; the gigantic baobab, the butter-tree, and the coffee-plant. Herbs at the south are found in great variety.
11. **The Principal Animals** are the lion, the hyena, the mandril and other monkeys, the e-lan, the spring-bok, the ou, the elephant, the rhinoceros, the hippopotamus, the giraffe, the camel, the zebra, the quagga, the Cape-buffalo, the guinea-pig, the crocodile, the boa-constrictor, the ostrich, the vulture, the eagle, &c., as shown on the engraving on page 93.
12. **Inhabitants.**—The people in the north belong to the Semitic family. In the middle, they are chiefly Negroes. In the south, the people, with the exception of the Hottentots, are called Kaf-firs (or "infidels").

QUESTIONS.—1. For what is Africa noted? 2. Point out its position. 3. Describe its physical features. 4. Point out the seas, gulfs, bays, channels, straits, islands, capes, heads, &c. on the north; 5. east; 6. south; and 7. west coasts; 8. the mountain-ranges, rivers, and lakes in the interior. 9. What is said of its climate? 10. products? 11. principal animals? 12. inhabitants? 13. Give the particulars in the table relating to the countries in Africa. 14. Give the particulars in the table relating to the British Colonies. 15. What is said of Morocco? 16. its chief cities? 17. Algeria? 18. Tunis? 19. Tripoli?

13. Countries.—Africa contains the following countries:

COUNTRY.	Area in Square Miles.	Population.	CAPITAL, and where situated.	Population.	Distance from London.
MOROCCO.....	290,000	10,000,000	Morocco,	} On coast.	1400 M.
ALGERIA.....	216,638	3,900,000	Algiers,		80,000
TUNIS.....	79,500	2,500,000	Tunis,		1160 "
TRIPOLI.....	200,000	2,000,000	Tripoli,	20,000	1400 "
EGYPT.....	150,000	4,000,000	Cairo, on the Nile.....	250,000	2150 "
NUBIA & SOUDAN.....	300,000	800,000	Khartoum, on Nile.....	20,000	
ANTWERP.....	225,000	2,000,000	Gondar, on L. Ben-be.	75,000	
SOUTH-EAST COAST.....	1,000,000	10,000,000	Zanzibar, on coast.....	5,000	
SOUDAN & NIGRITIA.....	1,500,000	10,000,000	Timbuctoo, n' Niger.....	30,000	
SOUTHERN AFRICA.....	450,000	1,500,000	Cape Town, on coast.....	25,000	6400 "
UPPER GUINEA.....	200,000	4,000,000	Commassa, on the coast.....	20,000	
LOWER GUINEA.....	240,000	4,000,000	Loango, on coast.....	30,000	
LIBERIA.....	24,000	300,000	Monrovia, on coast.....	5,000	
SENEGAMBIA.....	230,000	2,000,000	Bathurst, on Gambia.....	4,500	
Other Parts.....	4,000,000	50,000,000	Various.....		
MADAGASCAR ISL.....	185,000	4,000,000	Tananarivo (centre).....	30,000	
Other Islands.....	10,000	1,000,000	Various.....		

14. The British Colonies in Africa are as follows:

COUNTRY.	Area in Square Miles.	Latest Population.	Discovery or Settlement.	CAPITAL.	Population.	Distance from London.
CAPE COLONY.....	118,000	267,100	The Dutch, 1652.....	Cape Town.....	25,000	1797
KAPPAZIA.....	20,000	120,000	The Dutch, 1833.....	King Wm. Town.....	5,000	1833
NATAL.....	18,000	132,000	The Dutch, 1820.....	Pietermaritzburg.....	5,500	1848
GOLD COAST.....	6,000	151,400	The Portuguese, 1610.....	Cape Coast Castle.....	12,000	1827
SIERRA LEONE.....	800	60,000	The Portuguese, 1482.....	Free Town.....	20,000	1808
GHANA.....	19	8,000	The Portuguese, 1482.....	Sabahur.....	4,500	1848
MAURITIUS.....	700	250,800	The Dutch, 1639.....	Port Louis.....	26,000	1814
SEYCHELLES.....	75	8,000	The French, 1745.....	Port Victoria.....	800	1814
ST. HELENA.....	45	5,500	The Portuguese, 1600.....	James Town.....	8,000	1812
ASCENION.....	85	400	The Portuguese, 1601.....	Georgetown.....	1,000	1812

THE FOUR BARBARY STATES.

15. **Morocco**, an empire and the original seat of the Moors, lies directly south of Spain, from which it is separated by the Strait of Gibraltar. The Atlas Mountains run parallel to the coast, with spurs branching out toward the sea; between which are fertile valleys watered by numerous streams. The exports are olive-oil, morocco-leather, hides, carpets, wool, indigo, wax, and leeches.

16. **Chief Cities.**—Morocco, the capital and a walled city, stands on the north side of a fertile plain which slopes from the Atlas range toward the sea. It is noted for its leather manufacture. **TAN-GEH-JEE** is on the Strait of Gibraltar. **Mog-A-DOR**, on the Atlantic, is the chief seaport. **TER-U-AN**, in the kingdom of Fes, is 18 miles from Ceuta [su-ta], a Spanish seaport in Africa. **FES**, or **FAS**, 100 miles inland, is noted for its leather.

17. **Al-jiers** [al-jeers'], or **Algeria**, is a French colony lying N. E. of Morocco on the Mediterranean. It is intersected by the Atlas Mountains, with branches enclosing valleys sloping toward the sea. Minerals are abundant, especially iron, lead, and copper. The other exports are coral, sponges, wax, skins, and ostrich-feathers. **ALGHAIS**, the capital, and **CON-STAN-RIVS** [-teen], are the chief cities.

18. **Tunis**, a nominal dependency of Turkey, governed by a Bey (bey), lies east of Algeria and directly south of the island of Sardinia. It is a long narrow strip, with a coast-line running north and east on the Mediterranean. It is a fertile country, and produces fruits, drugs, dyes, olives, dates, &c. **Tunis**, on the northern coast (near ancient Carthage), is the capital, and has an extensive trade with the interior. **KAIWAX** (pop. 50,000) was the first capital or seat of the Saracens in Africa.

19. **Tripoli**, a Turkish pachalic [pa-shaw'-lik], lies east of Tunis.



A STREET AND GATE IN TUNIS, CAPITAL OF TUN.



bays, capes, &c.

BANGA, a dependency to the east, and **FAS-SAR'**, a tributary to the south, are included in the pachalic. The country has a coast-line of a thousand miles, and its surface is diversified by desert, mountain, and fertile valley. The chief products are dates, olives, salt, sheep, and cattle. **TARROU**, the capital, is to the west on the coast; **MOUA-SOUR'**, in **FAS-SAN**, is the great stopping-place for caravans going south and east.

EGYPT, NUBIA, AND KORDOFAN.

Size, one fourth larger than Canada, or equal to a square of 666 miles.

20. Noted For.—EGYPT is noted for its antiquity, its famous **River Nile**, its pottery manufactures, and its celebrated pyramids.

21. Position.—This famous land occupies the north-eastern corner of Africa, through which flows the celebrated **River Nile**.

22. Physical Features.—The Nile, enclosed by a double range of mountainous hills, empties into the Mediterranean by two principal streams, which form a delta or triangle. It drains 500,000 sq. m. The



POTTERY-FLOAT ON THE NILE, EGYPT.

pyramids and other remains of ancient art which are found in Egypt, with the numerous groves of palm-trees, give a peculiarity to the scenery. The annual inundation of the Nile adds great fertility to the soil.

23. The Chief Products are grain, dates, melons, &c. The lotus and papyrus plants (from the latter of which the Ancients made a material for writing, and whence is derived our word "paper") are still found in the Nile. Crocodiles abound in the river.

24. Chief Cities.—**CAIRO** [ky-ro], 115 miles from the sea, is the capital. The other cities are **ALEXANDRIA**, **ECHSETTA**, and **DAMietta**, on the coast, and **SUEZ**, at the head of the Red Sea. Egypt, though tributary to Turkey, is governed by an hereditary pacha [pashaw].

25. Nubia, including **KORDOFAN'**, lies S. of Egypt, of which they are dependencies. Along the Nile and its southern tributary the soil is fertile, but the interior is rocky and desert. The products are dhourra, coffee, indigo, senna, and date and ebony trees. Tropical animals are numerous.

STREET LEADING TO A MOSQUE, CAIRO.

QUESTIONS.—Give the size of Egypt, &c. 20. For what is Egypt noted? 21. Point out its position on the map. 22. Describe its phys. feat. 23. What is said of its chief products? 24. chief cities? 25. of Nubia? 26. its chief cities? 27. of Abyssinia and its divisions? 28. of Eastern Africa? 29. of Central Africa? 30. of Southern Africa? 31. Point out on the map the boundaries of Cape Colony. 32. Describe its physical features. Describe the engravings.

26. Chief Cities.—**KHAR-TOUM'**, the capital, near the junction of the White and Blue Niles; **DEBA**, in **LOER NUBIA**; **SU-AKETA**, a port of structure for pilgrims to Mecca. **KOA-DO-FAN'** and **DAR-FUR'** belong to Nubia.

ABYSSINIA, OR HAHESH.

Size, one seventh larger than Lower Canada, or equal to a square of 466 miles.

27. Abyssinia lies south of Nubia and the Red Sea. The Blue Nile and its tributaries take their rise here among the mountains, and render the country highly fertile. The chief products are teff and other grains, coffee, cotton, and fruits. Horses, cattle, and wild animals are numerous. The country is divided into various petty kingdoms, as follows: (1) **TR-OAR**, chief city **ANTALO**; (2) **AMHARA**, chief city **GODAR**; (3) **SHOA**, chief city **AK-KO-BAR'**; (4) **SAMARA**. The Gallas tribes have formed settlements in the south, the chief of which are **ENABBA** and **KUSS-A**. The French have acquired a trading-place in Abyssinia on the Red Sea.

EASTERN AFRICA.

28. Eastern Africa extends from the Gulf of Aden, at the north, to Delagoa Bay, at the south, and includes the **SO-MAU-LI'** Territory and **ZAN-GUE-BAN'** [-gwe-], which are subject to the Sultan of Muscat, in Arabia, and **MO-ZAM-BIQUE** [-beek'] and **SOFALA**, which contain various Portuguese settlements. The climate of Zanguebar is very hot, the country being under the Equator. The principal lakes are **Taganyika**, **Nyanza**, and **Ngami**; and the rivers are the **Mofji** and the **Zambesi**. The whole of the interior slopes gradually inwards, both east and west, forming a vast inland basin. The principal products are the tropical plants; also copper, gold, and other minerals. The chief cities are **BERBERA**, on the Gulf of Aden, noted for its great fair; **HURRUZ**, in the interior, a place of trade for the Gallas Country; **SHANGANNY**, on the island of **Zanzibar**; **QUILOA**, **MOZAMBIQUE**, **QUIL-LI-MA-NE**, and **SOFALA**, on the coast,—places of considerable trade.

CENTRAL AFRICA.

29. Central Africa embraces the whole of the interior from Northern to Southern Africa. It includes **SOU-DAN'**, **ETHIOPIA**, and the **DESERT OF SAHARA**. These vast tracts are little known; but the tribes which inhabit them carry on a considerable trade, with various points on the coast, in ivory, ostrich-feathers, ebony, palm-oil, gold-dust, &c. The chief towns in **Sou-dan** are **SEGO** and **TIMBUCTOO**, on the Niger; **KOUKA**, on Lake Tchad, in **Bornou**; and **WARA**, west of **Darfur**. From **Mozambique** and **Southern Zanguebar**, the interior has recently been explored across the continent to **Lower Guinea**,—and the discoveries are noted on the map. The coast-surface is varied. The lofty Mountains of the Moon extend down the coast-line some distance inland,—instead of from east to west, as hitherto erroneously believed. An extensive lake, the **Victoria Nyansa**, supposed to be the source of the Nile, has been discovered lying under the Equator. Lake **Shirwa**, near the **Shiré** (or **Chiré**) River, and in a cotton-growing country, has also been discovered lying to the south-east.

SOUTHERN AFRICA. 10,000,000

30. Southern Africa includes **ZOO-LOO'**, or **ZU-LU'**, the **BOSHUTANAS** and **HOTTENTOT COUNTRIES**, and the British Colonies of **NATAL**, **KAFREARIA**, and the **CAPE**. **Zulu** lies south of **Sofala**; the **Boshuanas** Country, to the west, in the centre; and the **Hottentot** Country, on the west coast. They are under native chiefs, and differ little in their products and physical features from the other parts of Southern Africa.

BRITISH COLONIES IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

31. The Cape Colony.—This Colony is bounded on the south-east and west by the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, and on the north by the Orange River and its tributaries.

32. Physical Features.—The coast is not bold, but consists of



CAPE TOWN AND TABLE MOUNT, FROM TABLE BAY.

a series of headlands, the principal of which is the Cape itself. The interior is vacated by a series of plains and mountain-ranges, rising one above the other. On the other side of these ranges, the country again recedes towards the Orange River. Olifant, or Elephant, is the only other river of importance; both fall into the Atlantic. The climate is variable; hot S. E. winds & sometimes prevail. There is but little rain.

33. Chief Products.—Wheat is extensively cultivated. Of the native plants, the heaths and the silver-tree are the most numerous. A thorny vegetation (aloe, &c.) called "the bush," prevails in the eastern part. The Cape-buffalo is a native of this part of Africa (see engraving, p. 98).

34. The Chief Exports are wool, copper, horses, sheep, ivory, wine, ostrich-feathers, &c., annual value \$3,000,000; revenue \$2,500,000.

35. Inhabitants.—The mild Hottentots and the intelligent Kaffirs are two great native races. These are divided into ten or twelve different tribes. The remaining population is chiefly Dutch and British.

36. Chief Cities.—CAPE TOWN, the capital, and GRAHAM'S TOWN. A railway from Cape Town to the capital of Natal was opened in 1800.

37. Kaffraria.—This Colony is situated on the coast to the north-east of the Cape Colony. As we proceed north from the Cape, rain prevails in the winter months. Owing to the torrents, the rivers run in deep beds. Of these rivers the Kei is the largest. Maize, or Indian corn, millet (a kind of grain), and water-melons, are the chief products.

38. Natal.—This Colony lies to the north of Kaffraria. The surface is undulating and well watered. The climate is healthy, and the soil fertile. The chief products are cotton, indigo, sugar, coffee, tobacco, &c. PIETMARITZBURG, the capital, is connected with Cape Town by railway.

LOWER GUINEA.

39. Lower Guinea extends along the whole of the coast-line from the Hottentot Country to the Sahara Desert. It is chiefly desert, and ruled by native chiefs, and includes CIM-BE-BAS, BEN-OU-LEA [-gay-], ANGOLO, CONGO, LOANGO, GA-BOON, CALBONGAS, and BIAPPA. LOANGO is the chief city; but ST. PAUL DE LOANDA and ST. FELIPE DE BENGUELA are the Portuguese trading-settlements for the barter of ivory, gold-dust, &c.

UPPER GUINEA.

40. Upper Guinea is separated from Sou-dan' by the Kong Mountains. It includes LIBERIA, the BRITISH and DUTCH GOLD-COAST SETTLEMENTS, and the native states of ASS-AN-TSE', DA-RO-MBY', and BENIN [ben-ee-n']. COO-KAN'-sis is the chief town. ELMIRA is the Dutch capital.

THE BRITISH GOLD-COAST SETTLEMENTS.

41. The British Settlements on the Gold Coast, in Upper Guinea, are chiefly trading ports and stations, which have been purchased from the Portuguese and the Dutch. These are CAPE-COAST CASTLES (the capital), A N-KAMAROO, DIXCOVE, and A-CORRA. The exports are gold-dust, palm oil, ivory, maize, &c. Annual value of exports \$580,000; annual revenue \$85,000.



CAPE-COAST CASTLE, CAPITAL OF BRITISH GOLD-COAST SETTLEMENTS.

THE REPUBLIC OF LIBERIA.

42. Liberia lies west of Guinea, and is a successful republic of freed American slaves, and of Negroes re-captured from slave-traders on the African coast. The soil is good, and the climate healthy.

THE BRITISH COLONY OF SIERRA LEONE.

(From *sierra*, a "mountain-range," and *le-o-ne*, "lion.")

43. Sierra Leone is a peninsula west of Liberia. The interior is rocky, but the soil is fertile. Chief exports: timber, hides, cotton, palm-oil, ground-nuts, &c., annual value \$1,450,000; revenue \$180,000. The guinea-fowl and the guinea-pig are found here. Sierra Leone was made a free colony for liberated slaves in 1787, and several slaves were sent here from Nova Scotia in 1792. FREETOWN is the capital.

THE BRITISH GAMBIA-RIVER SETTLEMENTS.

44. The Gambia-River Settlements lie north-west from Sierra Leone, and include the island of ST. MARK, and several forts on the river. The climate is healthy. Exports: ground-nuts, hides, wax, &c., annual value \$1,150,000; revenue \$87,000. BATHURST is the capital.

QUESTIONS.—35. What is said of the chief products of Cape Colony? 34. its chief exports? 35. inhabitants? 36. chief cities? 37. Point out on the map and describe Kaffraria; 38. Natal. 39. Describe Lower Guinea, and point out its districts. 40. Describe Upper Guinea; 41. the British Gold-Coast settlements; 42. Liberia; 43. Sierra Leone; 44. the Gambia-River settlements; 45. Senegambia; 46. Madagascar; 47. Mauritius; 48. the Seychelles; 49. St. Helena; 50. Ascension Island; 51. the French islands; 52, 53. the Spanish islands; 54-57. the Portuguese islands.

SENEGAMBIA.

45. Senegambia, in addition to the British settlements on the Gambia River, includes the French settlements at Go-nar' and ST. LOUIS (p. 21,000), the Portuguese at BISSAO, &c., and the native trading-places on the coast. It is well watered, and the soil is fertile. The rainy season alternates with the hot dry winds from the desert. The climate is unhealthy. The Gambia River, 1,000 miles long, is navigable for 350.

THE ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

MADAGASCAR.

46. Madagascar.—This island lies off the eastern coast. A mountain-range extends through its entire length. The soil is very fertile, but the climate is hot and unhealthy. Vegetation is luxuriant, and minerals are abundant. TA-MA-BA-SI-VO', the capital, and TA-MA-TAVA [-tah've'], are the chief cities. The island is governed by native rulers.

BRITISH ISLANDS.

47. Mauritius.—This island lies 500 miles east of Madagascar. It is surrounded by coral-reefs, and the interior is rugged and mountainous. The chief peaks are the Bra-ban' and the Peter Botta. The plains are fertile and well watered, and the climate salubrious; but



PORT LOUIS, THE CAPITAL OF MAURITIUS.

hurricanes prevail. The mango, mimosa, and other tropical plants are found in abundance. Exports: copper, cotton, rum, sugar, &c., annual value \$14,000,000; revenue \$2,711,000. POOR LOUIS is the capital. RO-NIROUSS [-dregg'] ISLAND, a dependency, lies east of Mauritius.

48. The Seychelles [say-she-ls']—These islands, which are 30 in number, lie 850 miles directly north of Mauritius. They are divided into four groups. They were annexed to Mauritius in 1814. POOR VICTORIA, the capital, is situated on Mahé, the largest island in the group. The AN-T-RANT' (or ADMIRAL'S) group are near the Seychelles.

49. St. Helena.—This island is 1,400 miles west from Africa, and is 104 miles long by 7 wide. It is of volcanic origin, and is pyramidal in shape. Its coasts are precipitous. Diana's Peak and Lot's Wife are the chief mountain-tops. The island has acquired its chief celebrity from having been the place of the first Napoleon's exile from 1816 till his death, in 1821. Exports: cotton, oil, &c., annual value \$180,000; revenue \$100,000. JAMES TOWN is the capital.

50. Ascension Island lies 280 miles north-west of St. Helena, and is 8 miles long by 8 wide. It is of volcanic origin, and is noted for its fine turtles. It was discovered by the Portuguese on Ascension-Day.

FRENCH ISLANDS.

51. Bourbon, or Reunion, a volcanic island, lies off Mauritius. Its chief products are sugar and coffee. STE. MA-RIE, NOS-SI-BE, or NOS-BEE', and MA-YOT-TA, off Madagascar. United area 1,500 sq. miles; pop. 180,000.

SPANISH ISLANDS.

52. The Canary Islands, noted for their singing-birds, lie 150 miles off the Sahara coast. TEN-ER-IFFE [-eeff'] is the principal island, and is a volcanic peak. SANTA CRUZ is the capital, but PALMA is a larger town.

53. Other Islands are FERNANDO PO and AN-NO-BON', or AN-A-BON', off the coast of Lower Guinea. Population 3,500.

PORTUGUESE ISLANDS.

54. Madeira, off the Atlantic coast of Morocco, is a volcanic island. It is noted for its wine. The climate is pleasant and agreeable for invalids. FUNCHAL [foon-shal'] is the capital.

55. The Azores, or Western Islands, lie north-west of Madeira. They export wine, brandy, lemons, &c.

56. The Cape-Verd Islands, off Cape Verd on the Senegambia coast, are also volcanic. Amber, turtles, and fruits are the chief exports.

57. Other Islands are BISSAO, off Senegambia; and ST. THOMAS, and PRINCE'S ISLAND, off the coast of Lower Guinea.



BRIEF SKETCH OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.

1. The Garden of Eden was the first portion of the Earth's surface occupied by man. It is supposed that this garden was in Chaldea somewhere between the Rivers Euphrates and Tigris, in Asia. From this central spot (God having confounded the language of men when they vainly attempted to build the Tower of Babel up to Heaven) the whole Earth has been peopled.

2. Ancient Geographical Knowledge.—With the exception of the Jews, the Ancients had very little knowledge, except by tradition, of the origin of the Earth, or of its form. They believed it to be a flattened circle of land and water, surrounded on all sides by a river called Ocean, and having the sky suspended, like a canopy or curtain, over it. The Greeks believed that Mount Parnassus, the seat of Apollo and the Muses in Greece, was the centre of the Earth. This belief continued until the time of Plato, 350 B. C. The Phoenicians, a seafaring people who occupied the coasts of Canaan, were the first to explore the shores of the Mediterranean and adjacent seas, and to communicate their geographical knowledge to the Greeks. This knowledge was afterwards extended, by the Greeks and the Romans, to the British Isles at the west, to the borders of China at the east, to Scandinavia at the north, and to Ethiopia and Abyssinia at the south.

[NOTE.—As the physical features of all the countries which comprised the Ancient World have already been described, it is not necessary to repeat that description here.]

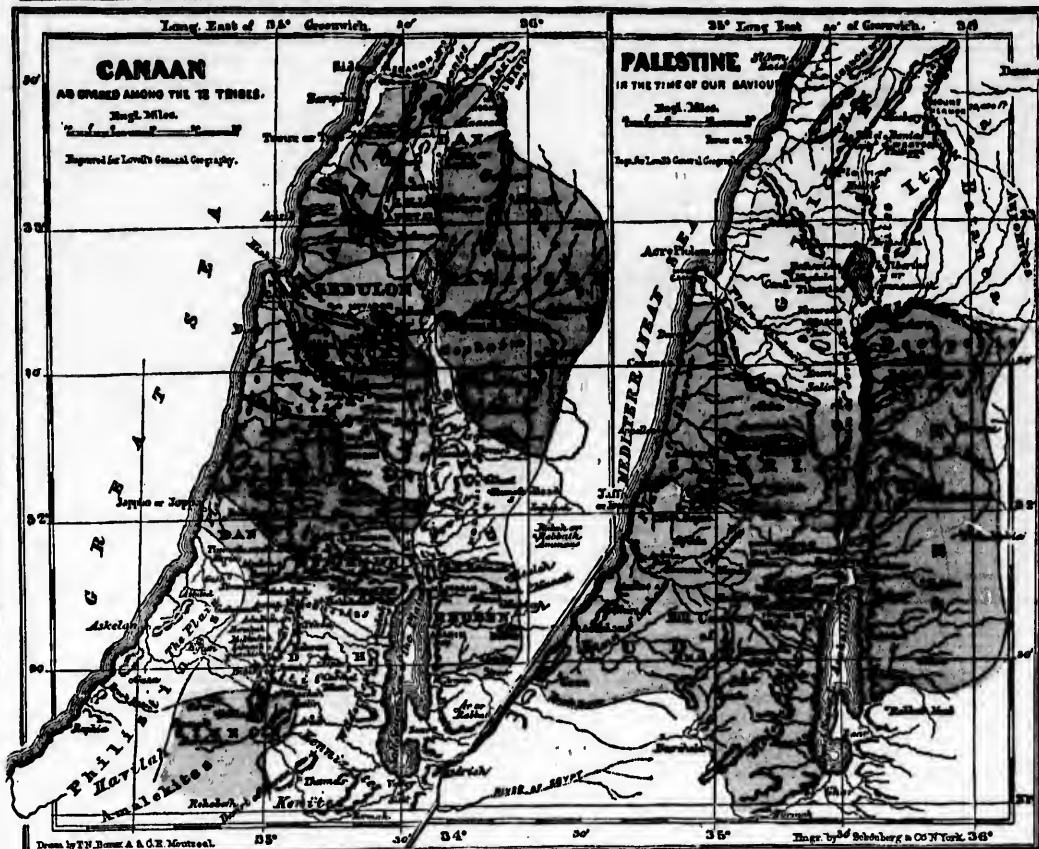
3. The Four Great Empires of antiquity were as follows:

4. The Assyrian Empire began 1770 B. C., and ended 538 B. C., having lasted 1232 years. It extended from the Caspian Sea to Libya in Africa, and included Armenia, Media (modern Persia in part), Assyria (Kourdistan), Chaldea (Tartary in part), Syria, and Egypt. Capital of the Empire, NINIVAH, on the Tigris.

5. The Persian Empire began 539 B. C., and ended 330 B. C., having lasted 209 years. It stretched from Libya and Asia Minor to India, and included Libya (Barce), Egypt, Syria, Asia Minor, Colchis (Georgia), Armenia, Assyria, Media, Persia, Parthia (Persia), Sogdiana, Bactria (Bokhara in part), Aria (Afghanistan), and Gedrosia (Beloochistan). Capital, BABYLON, on the Euphrates.

QUESTIONS.—Point out on the map at the top of this page the principal countries of the Ancient World; and, where you can, give the modern name. Point out and name each ocean, sea (ma-re), gulf (si-ma), island, and peninsula. Name and trace the principal rivers and mountain-ranges. 1. What is said of the Garden of Eden? and 2. of ancient geographical knowledge? 3. Give the number of the great empires of antiquity. 4. Point out on the map the Assyrian Empire; and 5. the Persian. Point out on the map of Ancient Greece the various countries, the gulfs, islands, peninsulas, rivers, &c.





6. The Macedonian Empire began 330 B. C., and lasted only 7 years. On the death of Alexander the Great (323 B. C.), it was divided among his four generals. In addition to Thracia, Macedonia (Turkey in part), and Greece, in Europe, and the country of the modern Punjab, in India, lying between the Rivers Indus and Hyphasis (or Sutlege), it included the whole of the Persian Empire, with the exception of Bithynia in Asia Minor, and Sogdiana in Central Asia. Capital, PHILIPPI, in Macedonia.

7. The Roman Empire began 754 B. C., and ended on the extinction of the Western Empire, A. D. 476, having lasted 1230 years. It included the whole of the northern part of Africa, Egypt, Palestine, Syria, Mesopotamia, Colchis, part of Asia Minor, Dacia (Hungary), Moesia, Thracia, Macedonia, Greece, Illyricum (Turkey in part), Italia (Italy), Rhaetia (Switzerland), Hispania (Spain), Gallia (France), and Britannia (England). Capital, ROMA.

CELEBRATED COUNTRIES OF ANTIQUITY.

8. Greece Antiqua, or Ancient Greece, including Macedonia, contained E-pi-rus and Thessalia (Turkey in Europe in part), at the north; Hellas, or Greece Propri-a, in the middle; and the Pel-o-pon-né-sus (modern Greece in part), at the south; besides the islands in the Ionian and Aegean Seas.

9. Hellas was divided into Attica, Mes-sa-ris, Boeotia, Phocis, Locris, Doris, Etolia, and Acarnania. Attica was the most important division, and contained the celebrated city of Athens.

10. The Peloponnesus was divided into A-cha'i-a, E-lis, Messenia,



Remains of the Temple of Concord. Arch of Titus. Via Sacra. Temple of Jupiter Tonans. PRESENT CONDITION OF THE ANCIENT FORUM AT ROME.

QUESTIONS.—6, 7. Point out on the map (on page 98) the Macedonian and Roman empires. 8. Point out and describe Ancient Greece. 9. Give the divisions of Hellas; and 10. of the Peloponnesus. Point out the divisions of Canaan among the 12 tribes of Israel. Point out the divisions of Palestine.

modern name. 1. What it out on the as, rivers, &c.

Laconia, Ar-golia, Arcadia, Corinthia, and Sicyonia. Laconia was the most powerful state. Its capital was LACRÆMON, or SPARTA.

11. *Italia Antiqua*, or Ancient Italy, included that part of Italy in the vicinity of Rome.

12. *Canaan* was first peopled by Canaan, the son of Ham, and lay to the south of Syria and at the east end of the Mediterranean Sea. After its conquest by Joshua, it was, by the command of GOD, divided among the twelve tribes of Israel, as follows: To Issachar, Zebulun, Asher, Naphtali, and the half-tribe of Dan, was assigned the country extending from the Mount-Carmel range, on the west side of the Jordan, to Phenicia and Syria; to Ephraim, Benjamin, and the half-tribes of Dan and Manasseh, the

country extending from the Jordan to the Mount-Carmel range; to Judah and Simeon, the country lying between Philistia and the Salt or Dead Sea; and to Reuben, Gad, and the half-tribe of Manasseh, the country lying between the Jordan and the Ammon. In the time of Rehoboam (Solomon's son), ten of the tribes revolted and formed the kingdom of Israel: the remaining two tribes formed the kingdom of Judah.

13. *Palæstina*, formerly *Phœnicia*, formerly that part of the land of Canaan lying west of the Jordan, was, in the time of our Saviour, divided into Phenicia and Galilee at the north, Samaria in the middle, and Judæa at the south. Decapolis lay beyond, or at the east side, of the Jordan. In the time of the Crusades, Palestine received the name of the Holy Land.

MISCELLANEOUS.

ALPHABETICAL LIST

OF THE

CHIEF COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS OF THE EARTH, AND THE COUNTRIES WHEREIN THEY ARE PRODUCED.

ALPINE—Arambia, Alps.—**BYRIS**, Tripoli, Barbary, Spain, Portugal, ALOS—Soots, Java, Barbadoes, South Africa. **AMYGDALUS**—Brazil, Siberia, Ceylon. **ARROW-ROOT**—South America, East India, South Africa. **BARLEY**—Central countries in Europe and Asia, between lat. 40° and 45°. British America; Australia. **BREAD-FRUIT**—Polynesia, East and West Indies. **CANEA**—East and West Indies. **CEREALIA**—Spain, Italy, Corsica, Turkey. **CHESTNUT**—Spain, Corsica, Italy. **CLOVES**—Malacca, Ceylon, Molucca Islands. **COAL**—Britain, Belgium, United States, Nova Scotia, Australia. **COCHINEAL**—Mexico, West-India Islands. **COCOA**—West Indies, South America. **COCA-NUTS**—Ceylon, Malacca Islands, Bismarck, Brazil, Bengal, Polynesia. **COFFEE**—Arabia, Java, West Indies, Brazil, Mauritius, Corfu.—North America, Britain, Chili, Sweden, Siberia, Persia, Japan. **CORAL**—France, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Barbary, COTTON—Southern parts of Asia; Africa, Tropical America, United States. **CURRANTS**—Ionian Islands and Greece. **DATES**—Egypt, Barbary, Arabia, Persia. **DIAMONDS**—Brazil, Borneo, India. **EMERALD**—Mauritius, Madagascar, Ceylon. **EMERALDS**—Peru. **FISH**—Turkey, Greece, France, Spain, Italy, North Africa. **FLAX**—Russia, Egypt, Ireland, Netherlands, Australia. **FURS**—British and Russian America, United States, Russia. **GAMBAGE**—Sierra, Camboja. **GOLD**—California, British Columbia, Australia, India, Russia, Africa, Hungary, Saxony, Ecuador. **HEMP**—Russia, Italy, Ethiopia, India, Brazil, Britain, Egypt, North America. **INDIAN CORN**—See MAIZE. **INDIGO**—East and West Indies, Guinea. **LEUCAURIA**—South America. **IRON**—Most countries, particularly Britain, Sweden, British America, United States. **LINEN**—Britain, Sweden. **LEAD**—Britain, United States, British America, Germany, Spain. **LEMONS**—Syria, Persia, Greece, Italy, Spain, Portugal, Azores, West Indies. **MAIZE**—East and West Indies. **HUNGARY**—West Indies, Central America. **MAIZE OR INDIA CORN**—America from Canada to La Plata. **MARBLE**—Chile, Central Africa, Australia. **MAPLE-SUGAR**—Canada, United States. **MARBLE**—Chile, Italy, Greece, Egypt, Siberia, Britain, France, Canada, United States. **MERCURY**—OR QUICKSILVER—Spain, Austria, California, Peru, China. **MILLET**—Germany, Poland, India, Africa. **MOLASSES**—West Indies, Mauritius, Louisiana. **MOROCCO-LEATHER**—Levant, Barbary, Spain, Flanders. **MULBERRY-TREE AND THE SILK-WORM**—South Europe, South Asia. **NUTMEG**—Molucca Islands, Sumatra, Tonang, Borneo. **OLIVE**—Same as OIL. **OLIVES**—Syria, Greece, Africa, Spain, Italy, Brazil, Ionian Islands. **OPALS**—Hungary, East Indies. **ORANGES**—The Azores, Spain, Portugal, China, Italy, Polynesia, Florida, West Indies. **PALM-OIL**—Western Africa, Fernando Po, Brazil, Hindostan. **PEPPER**—East and West India Islands, French Guiana. **PINE-APPLES**—Mexico, West Indies, Hindostan, Polynesia. **PLAINTAINS**—OR BANANAS—Tropical America (especially Mexico), Polynesia, East and West Indies. **PLATINUM**—Spain, Asiatic Russia, South America. **POKORANATE**—Persia, South Europe, Tropical Asia, West Indies. **PAWNS**—Southern France. **QUICKSILVER**—See MERCURY. **RAISINS**—Smyrna, Valonia, Malaga, Italy. **RICE**—India, China, West Indies, United States, Italy, Africa. **ROBINS**—Ava, South America, Siberia, Egypt. **RYE**—The bread-grain of Germany and Russia. **SAGO**—East Indies. **SAPPHIRES**—Ava, Bohemia, Saxony, France. **SILVER**—Mexico, Peru, Hungary, Saxony, Asiatic Russia. **SPONGE**—Found upon the rocks of the Mediterranean and Red Seas. **SUGAR-CANE**—Tropical America, East and West Indies, St. Lucia, Canary Islands, Polynesia, Africa, Brazil, Louisiana. **SOAP**—FROM BERT-ROOT—France, Belgium, Germany, Prussia, Russia. **TANNERS**—East and West Indies, Arabia, Egypt, Cuba, Brazil. **TAPIOCA**—South America, West Indies. **TEA**—China, Japan, Assam. **TIN**—Cornwall, Devon, Galicia, Pyrenees Mountains in Saxony; Bohemia, Malaysia, China, Island of Banca in East Indies. **TOBACCO**—Tropical America, United States, Turkey, Asia, Prussia, France, Australia. **TOPAZ**—South America, India, Egypt, Siberia, Mexico. **TURQUOISES**—Nishapore in Persia. **VINE (THE)**—South Europe, Canary Islands, Africa, N. America to lat. 40°. **WHEAT**—Almost every part of the temperate zones. **WINE**—*Burgundy*: From a province in France of that name. *Cape*: South Africa. *Champagne*: From a province in France of that name. *Claret*: Bordeaux in France. *Madeira*: From the Madeira Islands. *Malaga*: Ditto. *Marsala*: Sicily. *Port*: From a province of Upper Douro, in Portugal. *Sherry*: Xeres, near Oadix, in Spain. *Tenerife*: From the Island of Tenerife. **YAMS**—Africa, South America, Polynesia, Australia.

ORIGIN OF THE PRINCIPAL PLANTS.

Aspe is from Egypt. *Barley* was found in the Himalayan Mountains. *Beck-wheat* came originally from Siberia and Tartary. *The Cereus* is from Europe and Asia. *Claret* originated in Germany. *The Cheese*, *Pine*, *Olive*, and *Almond* are from Asia Minor. *The Chestnut* came from Italy. *Chicory* is a wild plant in Germany. *The Citrus* is from Media. *The Curianter* grows wild near the Mediterranean. *The Crossberry* is a native of America. *The Cucumber* came from the East Indies. The

Current and *Gooseberry* came from Southern Europe. *The Dyer's-Weed* is peculiar to Southern Germany. *Flax*, or *Linnseed*, is a weed in Southern Europe. *The Garden-Bean* came from the East Indies. *The Garden-Cress* is from Egypt and the East. *The Gourd* is probably an Eastern plant. *Grosses* and *Clovers* are natives of most countries. *Hemp* is a native of Persia and the East Indies. *The Hope* is a wild plant in Germany. *The Horse-Rose* is from the Caspian Sea. *The Horse-Chestnut* is a native of Thibet. *The Horse-Radish* came from the south of Europe. *The Jerusalem-Artichoke* is a Brazilian product. *Lupines* are from the Levant. *Madder* came from the East. *Mastic*, or *Indian Corn*, is a native of America. *The Melon* is from Tartary. *Millet* was first known in India and Abyssinia. *The Mulberry* is from Persia. *Mustard* is from Germany. *The Nettle* is a native of Europe. *Oats* originated in North Africa. *The Onion* originated in Egypt. *Parley* was first known in Persia. *Peanut* was first known in India and Abyssinia. *The Pea* is supposed to be of Egyptian origin. *The Pear* and *Apple* are from Europe. *The Poppy* originated in the East. *The Potato* is a well-known native of Peru and Mexico. *The Quince* came from the Island of Creta. *The Radish* is a native of China and Japan. *Rape-Seed* and *Cabbages* grow wild in Sicily and Naples. *Rice* is a native of South Africa. *Rye* came originally from Siberia. *Sisal* was first cultivated in Arabia. *The Sunflower* was brought from Peru. *Tobacco* is a native of Tobago and Virginia, as well as Asia. *The Turnip* is from Germany and the Mediterranean. *Yaches* are from Germany. *The Walnut* and the *Seesh* came from Persia. *Wheat* was brought from Egypt. *The Zealand-Flax* shows its origin by its name.

CHIEF EXPORTS OF VARIOUS COUNTRIES.

NORTH AMERICA AND WEST INDIES.

BRITISH COLUMBIA AND **VANCOUVER ISLANDS**—Gold, furs, coal. **CANADA**—Ships, timber, deals, staves, grain, corn, pot and pearl ashes, furs, balsam. **MEXICO**—Silver, cochineal. **NEW BRUNSWICK**—Ships, timber, deals, wheat, fish. **NOVA SCOTIA**—Timber, coal, plaster of Paris, fish, potatoes. **PRINCE-EDWARD ISLAND**—Agricultural products, fish. **UNITED STATES**—Gold, quicksilver. *Middle States*—Wheat, flour, coal; and from Maryland, tobacco. *Northern States*—Lumber, fish, beef, pork, pot and pearl ashes. *Southern States*—Cotton, tobacco, rice, sugar. *Western States*—Wheat, flour, lead, coal, iron, Indian corn. **WEST INDIES**—Sugar, coffee, rum, molasses, cotton, pimento, ginger, logwood, mahogany, cocoa, cochineal, cigars, tropical fruits.

SOUTH AMERICA.

BRAZIL—Cotton, sugar, coffee, tobacco, dyewoods, drugs, gold, diamonds, hides. **BORNEO**—Gold, silver, hides, beef, tallow. **CHILE**—Gold, silver, copper, wheat, hemp. **GUIANA**—Sugar, rum, cotton, coffee, tobacco, indigo, cayenne-pepper. **PERU**—Gold, silver, quicksilver. **VENEZUELA**—Cocoa, coffee, indigo, tobacco.

EUROPE.

DENMARK—Hogs, rape-seed, fish, feathers. **FRANCE**—Wines, brandy, fruits, silks, gloves, perfumery, trinkets, fancy articles. **GERMANY**—Wheat, hemp, fax, wool, bark, amber, Ehenish waxes, bony toys. **GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND**—Manufactures in great variety. **GREECE**—Raw silks, dried fruits. **HOLLAND AND BRITISH**—Cheese, gin, tulips, madder, hops, lace, linen, cloths. **ITALY**—Raw and manufactured silks, furls, olive-oil, straw-plait, cheese, macaroni, vermicelli, sulphur, pumice-stone, marble, paper, rags. **NORWAY AND SWEDEN**—Timber, iron, pitch, turpentine, oak-bark, fish. **PORTUGAL**—Wine, fruits, cork. **RUSSIA**—Timber, tallow, corn, hemp, fax, furs, linen, leather, pitch, wax. **SPAIN**—Wine, fruits, olive-oil, cork, wool. **TURKEY**—Leather, raw silk, figs.

ASIA.

ARABIA—Coffee, aloes, gums, myrrh, frankincense, perfumes, drugs. **ASIATIC ISLANDS**—Citrus-wood, cloves, nutmeg, pepper, ginger, sago, camphor. **BIRMAN EMPIRE**—Rust-timber, rice, indigo, gums, drugs, palm-sugar, silk, varnish. **CHINA**—Tea, silk, cotton-goods, porcelain, lacquered-ware, gums, paper, drugs. **HINDOSTAN**—Silk, sugar, coffee, pepper, indigo, rice, lac-dye, salt-petre, diamonds. **JAPAN**—Silks, cotton-wools, spices, varnish, porcelain, japanised-ware, rice, cedar. **KAMBUCHATA**—Furs, dried fish. **PERSIA**—Silks, carpets, shawls, sugar, rice, dried fruits, leather, drugs, tobacco. **SIBERIA**—Furs, minerals. **TURKEY IN ASIA**—Coffee, carpets, silks, fruits, drugs, opium.

AFRICA.

ALGERIES AND TRIPOLI—Ostrich-feathers, dates, wax, wool. **BRITISH COLONIES**—Palm-oil, East-timber, aloes, dyewoods, ostrich-feathers, ivory. **CANARY ISLANDS**—Wine, silks, berries. **EGYPT**—Cotton, indigo, drugs, fruits, rice. **MADEIRA ISLANDS**—Wines, fruits. **MOROCCO**—Leather, goat-skins, gums, fruits.

QUESTIONS.—11. Point out the position of Ancient Italy. 12. Describe Canaan, and show how it was divided. 13. Point out and describe Palestine. Give the principal items in the list of chief commercial products. Give the origin of the principal plants. Mention the chief exports of various countries.

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

THE undersigned having long felt that it would be highly desirable to have a Series of Educational Works prepared and written in Canada and adapted for the purpose of Canadian education, begs to call attention to the Books with which he has already commenced this Series. These works have met with a very general welcome throughout the Province; and the Publisher feels confident that the eulogiums bestowed upon them are fully merited, as considerable talent and care have been enlisted in their preparation.

LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY will, it is hoped, form a very valuable addition to this Series. While it has the advantage of being prepared in Canada, and fully represents its geographical features, at the same time it embraces a sketch of every other country; and thus, while it contains all the information embraced in other works of the same kind relating to older countries, the different British Colonies, in those works but indifferently portrayed, are here delineated with due regard to their extent and position and to the importance of the acquisition of a correct knowledge of those Colonies, not only to the children educated in them but to every student of Geography. The Maps illustrating this work have been prepared with the greatest care by draughtsmen in Canada, and will be found to have been brought down to the latest dates.

CANADA DIRECTORY OFFICE, Montreal, May, 1861.

JOHN LOVELL, Publisher.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

IN view of the promises held out in the Prospectus of this Work and of its pretensions as a standard Educational Text-Book, it appeared to the Publisher desirable that, before actual publication, the Author's labours might have the benefit of the independent opinion of those best qualified to judge how far the object had been attained.

Actuated by these considerations, the Publisher, with the Author's consent, sent out advance or proof sheets to competent persons in various parts of the Provinces, who responded by enclosing in many cases some very valuable suggestions, which were forwarded to the Author, and for which the Publisher tenders his thanks. Attention is requested to the appended Opinions upon the Work which the Publisher has had the satisfaction of receiving from many of those to whom the advance sheets were sent.*

From the Honorable and Right Reverend John Strachan, D.D., LL.D., Lord Bishop of Toronto.

TORONTO, 20th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have the honor to acknowledge a copy of your General Geography for the use of Schools, and have read it with profit and increasing satisfaction.

As an elementary work on a subject so extensive, I consider the plan excellent, the matter judiciously selected, and for a text-book surprisingly full and complete. And what in the present times is no small recommendation, it is beautifully got up, and reflects great credit on the press of Canada.

I would further add, that the book is well adapted to the wants and circumstances of the youth of British North America, and will be far more acceptable from the absence of those political allusions, which so frequently deform elementary school books imported from the United States.

I anticipate for "Lovell's General Geography," with its valuable maps and illustrations, a wide circulation; and were it followed by a series of school books in all respects equally well prepared, importation from abroad would be checked if not superseded.

I have the honor to be, Sir,
Your obedient humble servant,

JOHN TORONTO.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Right Reverend George Josaphat Mountain, D.D., D.C.L., Lord Bishop of Quebec.

QUEBEC, 1st March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have been so incessantly pressed by occupation since my return from the visitation of the Eastern Townships, that it has been impossible for me to do more than glance my eye, a few times, through the two specimen portions of your publication on Geography, which you did me the favor to send for my inspection. I have, however, seen enough to form a very advantageous opinion of the plan and execution of the work; and I am impressed with the belief that it is calculated to be eminently useful in the Schools of the Province, comprising, as it does, a great amount of varied information which appears to be made accessible and attractive to the youthful mind, and exhibiting a happy and well methodized arrangement of the materials of which it is composed.

I am, dear Sir,
Fidelity yours,

G. J. QUEBEC.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Right Reverend Ignace Bourget, D.D., Bishop of Montreal.

MONTREAL, le 25 Mars, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—Je profite du premier moment libre, qui se présente, pour accuser la réception de votre traité sur la Géographie Générale dont vous avez bien voulu m'adresser un exemplaire.

C'est un travail précieux qui fera honneur à votre presse, et rendra un vrai service à l'éducation primaire de nos enfants, qui y trouveront un excellent moyen de s'instruire en s'amusant.

Ce sera donc de grand cœur que je verrai ce livre d'éducation primaire entrer dans toutes nos écoles Anglaises; et pour ma part je me fais un devoir de vous remercier des peines, que vous avez prises, pour enrichir cet ouvrage de tant de recherches vraiment intéressantes.

Je suis bien véritablement, Monsieur
Votre très humble serviteur,

Mr. John Lovell.

+ IG., EV. DE MONTREAL.

From the Right Reverend Charles François Baillargen, D.D., Bishop of Tloca, and Administrator of the Diocese of Quebec.

ACHÉVÉ LE 5 Mars, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—J'accuse avec reconnaissance, la réception du traité sur la "Géographie Générale," accompagné d'un Atlas, à l'usage des écoles, que vous venez de publier.

J'ai parcouru cet ouvrage avec un véritable intérêt. Il remplit bien son titre. Il me semble même qu'il nous donne plus que son titre ne promet. Il renferme en effet, outre les notions générales sur la Géographie, des tables, des statistiques, et d'excellentes gravures, utiles à tout le monde, mais surtout bien propres à intéresser et à instruire les enfants.

A mon avis donc, comme à celui de personnes capables d'en juger, par qui je l'ai fait examiner, en donnant cet ouvrage au public, vous avez rendu un vrai service à nos institutions d'éducation.

Votre dévoué serviteur,

Mr. John Lovell, Montréal.

+ C. F., EV. DE TLOCA.

From the Right Reverend Joseph Eugene Bruno Guignes, Bishop of Ottawa.

OTTAWA, le 26 Avril, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—Je vous remercie de la copie que vous m'avez envoyée de la Géographie Générale que vous allez publier. Autant qu'il m'a été permis d'en juger par l'aperçu rapide que j'en ai fait, elle m'a paru pleine de connaissances variées, intéressantes, et très utiles à la jeunesse pour laquelle elle a été faite. On ne peut que vous louer de l'avoir conçu en dehors de toute prévision religieuse. Les coloris que vous vous proposez de donner aux cartes, y répandra plus de clarté, et en rendra l'étude plus facile et plus attrayante. Les amis de l'instruction vous seront reconnaissants de cette nouvelle preuve de dévouement aux intérêts de l'éducation, et aux progrès du Canada.

J'ai l'honneur d'être, Monsieur,
Votre très-humble serviteur,

Mr. John Lovell, Montréal.

+ JOS. EUGENE, EV. D'OTTAWA.

From the Honorable Mr. Justice Mondelet.

MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have given to the perusal of the "General Geography for the use of Schools, with numerous Maps, Illustrations, and Brief Tabular Views," which you have done me the honour to request my opinion upon, as much attention as my multiplied judicial engagements have permitted. I am happy to have it in my power to say, as far as my limited experience goes, that the system Mr. Hodgins has adopted is one which, of all others, is altogether efficient, and no doubt conducive to a clear, easy, and practical teaching of Geography, and in all probability will in most cases ensure success. The definitions indicate a perfect knowledge of the matter; the arrangement throughout shows how proficient Mr. Hodgins is in the science of Geography; the questions without answers to them are a means of working upon the judgment and memory, instead of only calling attention to the latter; and the accentuation is a prominent feature in this admirable work. The numerous maps and illustrations will much interest the youth, and greatly facilitate the working out of the system.

I am of opinion that the country owes a debt of gratitude to Mr. Hodgins. As to yourself, Mr. Lovell, the mention of your name is equivalent to whatever might be said in praise of your intelligent public spirit, and industry, in all things connected with the advancement of learning.

Should this humble expression of my estimation of the work you are about to publish be of any use to you, you are at liberty to avail yourself of it.

I remain, my dear Sir,

Respectfully yours,

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

CHARLES MONDELET.

*The absence of any opinions from the Right Rev. Dr. FULFORD, Lord Bishop of Montreal, the PRINCIPAL OF LAVAL UNIVERSITY, Rev. Dr. COOK, C. S. CERRINA, Esq., Q. C. C. DORVILLE, Esq., M.P.P., and other gentlemen, will be noted, but their official position as Members of the Boards of Education must of necessity preclude any expression on their part officially.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From the Honorable Sir John B. Robinson, Bart., Chief Justice of Upper Canada.

TORONTO, 26th March, 1861.

SIR,—I have looked through your "General Geography" for the use of Schools, and am much pleased and surprised by the quantity and variety of information which I find compressed within 100 pages, and presented in a very attractive form. I think Mr. Hodgins will be admitted to have executed his part with much judgment and ability, and that the work will give general satisfaction.

Two things struck me as worth considering. 1st. Whether it would not have been well to have given the latitude and longitude of the principal towns, that the pupils might have been able readily to find them on the Maps. The habit of ascertaining their position in that manner tends, I think, to impress on the mind, more distinctly, a picture of the several locations. There may be a table somewhere in the work, which I have overlooked.

2nd. In another edition, it would be well, I think, if a page or two more could be given to Canada, in which should be particularly explained the scheme of its territorial distribution, so that boys should become early familiar with the division into Counties and Townships, what each word means, and what purpose the divisions respectively are intended to answer.

I have often met with boys, well educated in other respects, who had no idea what a township was, whether it was a tract of ten square miles or a hundred, and who had no notion of the extent of counties. If the Maps are to be coloured, so that the boundaries of the several counties can be distinguished, the end I speak of will be partly answered; but I should like to see information somewhat more in detail respecting our territorial divisions, our municipalities, and educational system, and the population of counties, and cities, and towns.

I am, very truly yours,
JOHN B. ROBINSON.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Honorable Mr. Justice Aylwin.

MONTREAL, 27th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have examined the specimen of the General Geography, Maps, and Illustrations, which you have sent me, and which you intend shortly to publish under the editorial superintendence of Mr. Hodgins.

It gives me much pleasure to state that the book is one which is worthy of Canada, and that, both as a scientific production as well as a work of art, it is deserving of all praise.

You have my best wishes that this cheap, useful, and attractive publication may be universally adopted throughout the Province, in the instruction of youth, and that your public spirit and enterprise will be adequately rewarded.

I am, Sir,
Very truly yours,
T. C. AYLWIN.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

From the Honorable Mr. Justice Badgley.

MONTREAL, 1st May, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—Few branches of education are of more practical importance than Geography, and in proportion to its advantages, commendation is deservedly due to any one who improves the means for extending its usefulness. We have hitherto been mainly dependent for a School Atlas upon an English book, which, though perfectly accurate in itself, is upon so small a scale as to try the eye too much in its examinations, or upon an American compilation containing much that is not only unnecessary but offensive to those who are not intended to be American citizens. Your School Atlas, for a copy of which I have to thank you, comprises the accuracy of the English books with the additional advantage of enlarged size, and distinctness of execution, whilst it has none of the national peculiarities of the United States book. I trust that you will find its sale to be as remunerative, as I am persuaded it will be found to be extremely useful not only to our youth but to ourselves, children of a larger growth.

Your obedient servant,
W. BADGLEY.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

From the Honorable Mr. Justice McCord.

MONTREAL, 1st March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—After a careful perusal of your "General Geography," I have much pleasure in recording my opinion that the object of its talented Author, as set forth in the Prefatory Notice, has been very happily accomplished, and that henceforth our Schools will be supplied with a Geography in which the various countries of the world have had a fair and impartial share of notice. As regards ourselves, it is the first work of the kind in which the magnificent Colonies of Britain have had justice done them, and we should therefore testify our appreciation of such justice by a liberal patronage.

The views and typography are well executed, and the whole work (the maps, perhaps, excepted) is highly creditable to your well-known establishment.

Wishing you every success,
I am, yours truly,
J. S. MCCORD.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

* The information (so far as the principal cities of the world is concerned) will be found in the explanatory table to the Closets of the World.

† The Counties and Townships have been carefully given in all the Maps published by the Educational Department at Toronto, for the Schools of the Province.—PUBLISHER.

From the Honorable Mr. Justice Morin.

QUEBEC, 25 April, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—Je recommande avec plaisir la nouvelle *Géographie* en langue anglaise, que vous vous proposez de publier, la considérant comme très utile, et comme étendue et compacte à la fois.

J'ai l'honneur d'être, Monsieur,
Votre très-obéissant serviteur,
A. N. MORIN.

M. John Lovell, Montréal.

From Sir W. E. Logan, F.R.S., G.S., Director of the Geological Survey of Canada.

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OFFICE,
MONTREAL, 1st May, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have partially examined the advanced sheets you were pleased to send me of your Geography, and it gives me much satisfaction to state that in my opinion the work is well calculated to be of most essential service in that branch of instruction to which it relates. It is a vast improvement upon such works as have heretofore been in circulation in the country, and it is pleasing to observe that you have given to Canada and the British North American possessions generally, of which so little is said in other geographies, that just degree of notice to which by their importance they are entitled.

It is very evident that a great amount of labour and expense have been bestowed on the work. The definitions and descriptions are concise and clear, and the wood-cut illustrations are not only well executed, but most of the vignettes appear to me to be in good artistic taste. The shading of the maps may perhaps be considered rather heavy, but having seen some of the maps coloured, (which they are not in the advanced sheets), I can perceive that by this the shading will be greatly relieved, and the maps rendered much more distinct.

Wishing you every success in your important undertaking,

I am, dear Sir,
Very truly yours,

Mr. John Lovell.

W. E. LOGAN.

From the Rev. John Bethune, D.D., Rector and Dean of Montreal.

MONTREAL, 23rd April, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have looked over your General Geography, a copy of which I received from you some time since. I think the work a very important one as a standard educational book. It reflects very great credit on the Author, and Publisher, and certainly deserves support, in such a very expensive enterprise, from every person who feels an interest in the progress of Canadian educational literature.

I am, dear Sir,
Faithfully yours,

Mr. John Lovell.

JOHN BETHUNE.

From the Rev. D. Granet, Superior of the Seminary of St. Sulpice.

MONTREAL, 1st May, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—J'ai l'honneur de croire que la *Géographie Générale* que vous allez publier sera un ouvrage agréable et utile tout à la fois. Les cartes colorées représenteront toutes choses bien plus distinctement que celles qui ont déjà paru.

Pour tout, je souhàite voir au plus tôt votre consciencieux travail livré au public, qui lui fera, je n'en doute point, en Canada surtout, un bienveillant accueil.

Je suis, avec beaucoup de considération, Monsieur,
Votre très-humble serviteur,

M. John Lovell.

D. GRANET.

From the Rev. Charles Lenoir, Director of the Montreal College.

MONTREAL, 24 April, 1861.

MONSIEUR,—J'ai reçu votre traité de *Géographie Générale* que vous m'avez fait l'honneur de m'adresser.

Après en avoir pris connaissance, aussi bien que de tous les éloges flatteurs avec lesquels il a déjà été accueilli, je ne puis, pour ma part, que vous exprimer ma parfaite satisfaction et vous féliciter pour la publication d'un ouvrage qui fait autant d'honneur à votre presse qu'il doit procurer d'avantages au pays. S'il m'était permis d'exprimer un désir, ce serait, comme on vous l'a déjà témoigné, de le voir publier en français pour l'utilité d'un plus grand nombre.

Veuillez me croire, Monsieur,
Votre très-humble et obéissant serviteur,

M. John Lovell.

CHAS. LENOIR.

From the Rev. Frère Turibe, Director of the Christian Brothers' Schools in Canada.

MONTREAL, 16th April, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—Every schoolmaster has an idea of what a perfect elementary text-book on Geography should be. Your work approaches more nearly to my ideal standard than any other book which I have ever seen. It is a work of prodigious labour, and of conscientious effort at accuracy of statement; and therefore well merita the patronage of the classes of students for whom it is intended. I shall consequently introduce your book into my Schools, and shall, without hesitation or reserve, recommend it to my Brothers in Canada.

I am, &c.,
F. TURIBE.

Mr. John Lovell.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From the Venerable Archdeacon Bellows, D.D., Rector of Cobourg.
COBURG, 26th April, 1861.

SIR,—I have to thank you for the transmission of a copy of the "General Geography" which you are on the eve of publishing; and although I have been unable to give it a minute or critical examination, I feel justified in the belief that it will prove a great acquisition to our School literature. The most prominent facts seem to have been carefully gleaned, with an arrangement that appears to be very simple and lucid. The illustrations and maps are also highly creditable for their variety and execution; and the work in general appears to evince a large amount of industry and ability.

I remain, Sir,
Your obedient humble servant,

A. N. BETHUNE.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.
From the Rev. J. Hellmuth, D.D., General Superintendent in British North America of the Colonial Church and School Society; and from the Rev. William Bond, M.A., Superintendent for the Diocese of Montreal.
MONTREAL, 5th March, 1861.

DEAR MR. LOVELL,—For many years the Society which we represent has been looking, without success, for a Geography which could be recommended for the use of all its Schools. Those we have examined have proved unsatisfactory; not only because of inaccuracies, but also because, amongst other faults, of the cramped and miserable description of our noble Provinces and Colonies which they contained, and of the meagre information which they gave, or rather because they withheld upon that subject so much that is necessary for the instruction of youth, and exhibited a false view of our position and importance on this continent.

It is, therefore, with great pleasure that we welcome your "General Geography," as supplying a want very much felt by us. We have examined it, and we are conscious that we shall be consulting the best interests of the Schools of the Society by endeavouring to introduce the book into every part of our charge. We, therefore, heartily commend it to all our Teachers, and trust that it will meet with that large sale which must be necessary to secure you from pecuniary loss.

Truly yours,

J. HELLMUTH,
WILLIAM BOND.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

From the Venerable Samuel Gilson, M.A., Archdeacon of Montreal.
MONTREAL, 16th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have examined, with as much care as my time would allow, the specimen copy of your "Geography," which you were pleased to send for inspection.

Having done so, it is with great pleasure that I can speak of the high character of the work, considered as a whole. The information it contains on those subjects which are common to it with other elementary works on Geography is full and correct, while that which refers to British North America is, so far as I know, peculiar to itself, and renders the book better fitted than any other I have seen for the instruction of the youth of those Provinces.

The printing, engraving, and general appearance of the work, would be creditable to the press of any country, and reflects great credit on the enterprise and skill of its Publisher.

I sincerely hope that it may meet with general adoption in schools and private families, not only in order that encouragement may thereby be given to the production of books of this class in our own country, which is much to be desired, but also because its general tone is such as to promote a loyal attachment to the Queen, under whose rule we have the happiness to live, and to the Empire of which we have the honour to form a part.

I remain, my dear Sir,
Faithfully yours,

SAMUEL GILSON.

Mr. John Lovell.

From the Rev. Alexander Mathieson, D.D., late Moderator of the Presbyterian Church of Canada in connection with the Presbyterian Church of Scotland.
MONTREAL, 5th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have examined with some care the sheets of your "General Geography for the use of Schools."

I approve of the plan of the work. The taste and care displayed in the illustrations demand commendation. The chapter on Astronomical and Physical Geography, though short, is complete, and as introductory to the body of the work must be highly useful. But what I consider chiefly valuable is its adaptation to the Schools of Canada. Hitherto, in the text-books in use, little more than the briefest notices have been taken of the physical features, of the history, and commercial importance, of the British American Colonies, while undue prominence has been given to the States of America. I am glad to perceive that while general information respecting every section of the globe has been equally distributed throughout the "General Geography," the resources and commercial importance of the Provinces of Canada have not been overlooked,—a feature which, with the style in which it has been got up and the lowness of the price, cannot fail to recommend it as a text-book for the use of Schools, and especially of Canada.

The only thing I have to remark that appears to me faulty is, the line-shading of the Maps is too deep, rendering them somewhat indistinct, and which I fear the coloring will not ameliorate. Scotland particularly would have been better to have been more in outline.

Wishing you all success in your patriotic undertaking,

I am, my dear Sir,

Yours very truly,

Mr. John Lovell.

ALEX. MATHIESON.

From the Rev. Wellington Jeffers, Wesleyan Minister, and the Student Editor of the Christian Guardian.
TORONTO, 26th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have examined with some care the new Geography, by J. George Hodgins, LL.B., which you are about to publish. A new Geography has become indispensable in our Schools, for there is no really good one exhibiting the present state of the world, available for general use. Mr. Hodgins has proved himself to be qualified for the task he has undertaken by his admirable Canadian Geography; and I must say that the present work contains numerous proofs of the immense industry of its Author, and of his good taste and judgment in using his materials. A very large portion of every American Geography is taken up with the United States, and the English Geographies give very little space to America, while in all of them Canada is almost entirely overlooked. Mr. Hodgins has shown excellent judgment in giving to each country that amount of space to which its relative claim to attention entitles it. The first thing for which I look in any elementary work for Schools is, that the definitions should be clear and well adapted to the purposes of instruction, and in this respect your Geography excels any that I have seen. It contains an immense amount of information, and yet the style and arrangement are so natural and easy as to prevent any appearance of tediousness and dryness, and greatly to aid the memory. The Tabular Views, without being too extensive, will be found very useful. One of the most valuable improvements is the manner in which the pronunciation of geographical names is given. There is no waste of words, no useless matter, and a most cosmopolitan spirit of impartiality in treating of different countries. Too much cannot be said in praise of the mechanical and artistic part of the work. The type is of a judicious size, and very clear; the numerous illustrative engravings cannot be excelled; and the maps, by exhibiting the results of the latest explorations and surveys, have a distinctness in the lines and names that renders them invaluable. I really think that we have reason to be proud of our Canadian Author, and of our Canadian Publisher.

I am, Sir,

Very faithfully yours,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

WELLINGTON JEFFERS.

From the Rev. Henry Wilkes, D.D., Congregational Minister.
MONTREAL, 6th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—The General Geography, prepared by J. George Hodgins, LL.B., Deputy Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada, which you are about to publish as a text-book for the better class of schools,—the advance sheets of which have been in my hands several weeks,—must, in my humble judgment, supersede every other in the Schools of British North America. Complete and thorough in its introductory analysis of Mathematical, Physical, and Political Geography, it begins its description of the earth at the point whence our youth should always start, namely, these Colonies of the British Empire. It then passes naturally to other parts of this great continent, and crowding over to Europe brings the pupil into contact with the British Isles on its western confines. I see no lack of attention to the older portions of the earth, of which our former Geographies were wont principally to treat, but it is manifest that youth trained with this text book will not be, as were the students of a former generation, well read it might be in relation to the Old World, and to the Atlantic shores of this continent, but sadly ignorant of the magnificent possessions of Her Majesty which form no mean portion of North America.

The pictorial part of the work deserves special mention. It must greatly add to its value as a text-book in families as well as in schools. The Maps, though necessarily restricted in size, are very distinct. Intended, as you announce, for Schools, it appears to me to be also a highly valuable contribution to a pleasant and less formal family instruction in Geography.

I know not that my opinion of a school book, highly favourable as it is in this instance, can be of much value, for the practical teacher must always be the best judge of its qualities; but I confidently anticipate for this and your other school books that large demand that will indicate the high appreciation of the profession. Wishing you success in the preparation and issue of the "Series of School Books,"

I am, yours respectfully,

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

HENRY WILKES.

From the Rev. Dr. Wood, General Superintendent of Wesleyan Missions and late President of the Wesleyan Conference in Canada.
TORONTO, 4th March, 1861.

SIR,—Having carefully examined "Lovell's General Geography, by J. George Hodgins, LL.B.," I have no hesitation in pronouncing it superior to any work of the same character and size extant. We have all mourned over the bad taste and the number of sentiments which are to be met with in a work of this nature until now very generally used in the North American Provinces, as upon the whole being the best and cheapest accessible to our youthful students. Mr. Hodgins has not only avoided this breach of national charity, but he has acted with fidelity and impartiality to other portions of the human family who share in the possession of this magnificent world. The amount of knowledge put into these 100 quarto pages is truly amazing, while the number and accuracy of the maps, the expressiveness and beauty of the wood-cut illustrations (some of them really being splendid specimens of the art), and the correctness and clearness of the typographical part of the work render it a valuable addition to our colonial literature, and give to it a very attractive appearance. I hope the large outlay of the enterprising Publisher (the Rivington of Canada), and the labour and diligence of the gifted Author, will be amply rewarded by the book finding its way into every National School between Newfoundland and British Columbia.

Yours truly,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

ENOCH WOOD.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From the Rev. A. F. Kemp, Minister of the Presbyterian Church of Canada.
MONTREAL, 27th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have carefully looked over your "General Geography," and am much pleased, and feel exceedingly gratified that a work of such manifest excellence is about to be issued from a Canadian press. As a Text-book for Schools, your Geography is, without question, greatly in advance of all others that have yet been presented for public use in this country, and cannot fail to prove a great boon to both teachers and scholars. The prominence which it gives to Canadian geography, and generally to that of the British American Provinces, are features entirely new in our text-books, the want of which has long been felt and complained of by teachers and parents.

To the departments of Physical Geography and Natural History, I am happy to find your able Author has given that place which their importance justly demands. The statistics of population and of other matters of interest, which are arranged under the several countries, in tabulated form, in so clear and admirable a way, are in my judgment of the greatest value.

The numerous maps and wood-cut illustrations of the important cities and places of public interest in the world, are, for their accuracy, beauty, and vigour of execution, all that could be desired in such a work.

Your General Geography will, I trust, become one of our National School-Books, and meet with such success throughout the British Provinces as to induce you to publish other works of educational literature in a like complete and beautiful form.

I am, yours very sincerely,
Mr. John Lovell. ALEXANDER F. KEMP.

From the Rev. Canon Leach, D.C.L., LL.D., Incumbent of St. George's Church, and Vice Principal, Dean of the Faculty, Molson Professor of English Language and Literature, and Professor of Moral Philosophy and Logic in the University of McGill College.
MONTREAL, 16th April, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—Your work on "Geography" supplies a want which teachers, and all I believe, who in Canada take an interest in the education of the young, have long felt and complained of. It was not a creditable thing in the educational system of the Province, that in the geographical books commonly used, Canada should be all but ignored,—a fact that must have had an unfavourable effect upon the young, in those respects especially in which it is extremely desirable that school books should have an opposite tendency.

The attractive form in which the matter of your "Geography" is presented must also be a strong recommendation of the work.

I am, my dear Sir, yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. WILLIAM T. LEACH.

From the Rev. Jonathan Shortt, D.D., Rector of Port Hope, in the Diocese of Toronto.
PORT HOPE, 27th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—Having received from you the advance sheets of your "General Geography" I take an early opportunity of thanking you for them, and beg leave to express the very great pleasure it gives me to witness the judicious enterprise with which you enter for the school requirements of our rapidly rising Province.

I have long wished to see just such a Geography as you are publishing,—so suited to our peculiar circumstances as a Province of the British Empire. The old country books do not do us justice, and the United States Geographies are altogether calculated for their own meridian. Mr. Hodgins has displayed much ability in his work. It is brief, but comprehensive: "without overflowing, full." Giving the pronunciation of the names is an excellent idea. The Maps are wonderfully clear for wood-cuts, and though necessarily small, are very convenient, from being placed in the same book as the letter-press. The illustrations are very superior to any I have seen before in books of the kind. They are very well selected in their subjects, and must greatly tend to make the learners take a lively interest in the task before them. I am glad to find that the Maps will be colored, for otherwise even the clear manner in which they are engraved would still leave something to be desired. Considering the great expense you must have been at, in a work so profusely illustrated, the price at which you put it is very low, and will, I trust, ensure you a remunerating extent of sale.

In your object of meeting the requirements of the country in this Geography, I think you have completely succeeded, and you must be considered in the light of a public benefactor.

Heartily recommending your "Geography" to every school and every private teacher in the Province, and wishing you all the success in your undertaking which you so highly deserve,

I remain, dear Sir, very truly yours,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. JONATHAN SHORTT.

From the Rev. Robert Irvine, D.D., Minister of Knox Church.
HAMILTON, 26th April, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I duly received the advance sheets of your "General Geography." I consider that the Province is placed under a deep debt of gratitude to you for this spirited and successful enterprise. I am persuaded the work must ultimately become as popular as it is deserving. We wanted such a school-book, and I believe your Geography fully and completely fills the blank. The whole plan, order, and execution of the work, as well as the low price at which it is proposed to offer it, render it a most excellent and in all respects suitable school-book. Wishing the work as extensive a circulation as it merits,

I am, yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. R. IRVINE.

From the Rev. William Snodgrass, Minister of the Presbyterian Church of Canada in connection with the Presbyterian Church of Scotland.
MONTREAL, 15th March, 1861.

STR,—I do not profess to have examined minutely all the advance sheets (100 pages) of your "General Geography" for the use of Schools, which you kindly sent me, nor am I competent to test sufficiently the accuracy of their contents, but it affords me pleasure to say that I think the plan of the work a remarkably good one, greatly calculated to facilitate the work both of the teacher and student of geography. Such portions as I have paid particular attention to, appear to me to be very accurate, considering the diversity and fulness of the information furnished, and the vast amount of labour which must have been incurred by the selection and arrangement of it. The course you have adopted of extensively submitting the work to competent judges throughout British North America, and soliciting corrections, before going finally to press, is an assurance of your aim and anxiety to provide as perfect a Geography as can be furnished. Your Geography is, I believe, the only one that does anything like justice to British North America, and I hope this will shortly be proved to your satisfaction by its extensive circulation in the schools and families of your fellow-colonists.

Yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. W. SNODGRASS.

From the Rev. J. Ellegood, Incumbent of St. Stephen's Church.
MONTREAL, 25th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have much pleasure in acknowledging the receipt of your "General Geography." A cursory inspection of its contents has afforded me great satisfaction. The want of such a Geography has long been felt, one that will give to our Colonies such prominence as their increasing importance demands. This desideratum you have supplied in a manner which must commend itself to a discerning and appreciative public. An enterprise of this nature, undertaken to meet what may be considered a great national want, deserves to have extended to it such encouragement as its importance merits, and in this case both Author and Publisher are entitled to a large meed of praise, the one for his enterprising and patriotic spirit, the other for the care bestowed upon its compilation and arrangement. The work under review seems to merit the highest commendation.

I am, my dear Sir,
Yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. J. ELLEGOOD.

From the Rev. Charles Bancroft, M.A., Incumbent of Trinity Church, and Honorary Canon of Christ Church Cathedral, Montreal.
MONTREAL, 25th April, 1861.

I have examined with great interest the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography," and believe the work to be better adapted for use in our Schools than any publication of the kind with which I am acquainted. It will become a necessity in our Seminaries of Education, and, with the Canada Directory, will bring honour to the Publisher and the country, of which, by his enterprising and self-sacrificing spirit, he has rendered himself a distinguished ornament.

Believe me, yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. CHARLES BANCROFT.

From the Rev. E. J. Rogers, Chaplain to the Forces, and Secretary to the Church Society.
MONTREAL, 23rd April, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have carefully looked through the advanced sheets of the "General Geography" which you are about to publish, and have been much pleased with its general arrangement and illustrations.

The fairness and impartiality with which the different countries are described will commend it to general use, and I believe that its introduction into the Schools of this continent will greatly promote the acquirement of sound and correct information in this branch of education.

Wishing you every success in your undertaking,
Believe me, yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. EDWARD J. ROGERS.

From the Rev. William Scott, Wesleyan Minister.
TORONTO, 1st May, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I received the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography" at an early period of the current year, and then gave them a careful examination. The plan, and manner of execution, are both admirable. The amount of information given, and mode of its arrangement, evince great research and good taste. I have long been of the opinion, that we in Canada, ought not to depend either on England, or the United States, for our School books. The School Geographies of the United States especially, do not meet our wants, and are in many respects objectionable. Your enterprise supplies a desideratum, and will, I am persuaded, receive the approbation of parents and teachers throughout this great and growing country. You are entitled to the warmest thanks of all who are interested in the improvement of our educational literature, for this additional proof of your zeal to promote the cultivation of native talent and Canadian industry.

Yours very truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Publisher, Montreal. WM. SCOTT.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY

From the Rev. James B. Bonar, Minister of the American Presbyterian Church.
MONTREAL, 5th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have examined with some care the advance sheets of your "General Geography for the use of Schools." It seems to me just what is needed, suited to the requirements of the country in its matter, form, and price. It is decidedly superior to the Geographies found in general use in the Schools of Canada. I sincerely trust that your enterprising efforts may be generally appreciated, so that you may be encouraged to continue the publication of other educational works suited to the wants of the country.

Very sincerely yours,
JAMES B. BONAR.

Mr. John Lovell

From the Rev. William Stewart Darling, Minister of Holy Trinity Church.
TORONTO, 1st March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have looked over the advance sheets of your "General Geography," which you were kind enough to send me, and I think the publication of the work ought to be regarded as a matter of sincere congratulation to the country at large. The arrangement of the book appears to me to be excellent; the information conveyed is well selected and condensed. I find, on careful examination of several of the Maps, that they are unusually full and correct, and although at first sight they appear somewhat indistinct, that seeming defect will disappear on the application of color.

Altogether the great and unquestionable superiority of your book over any other of a similar kind in general use in the country, cannot fail, I think, to secure its success, and I sincerely trust that it will speedily supersede the American Geographies, which lead the children unconsciously to suppose that the United States make up about seven-tenths of the whole habitable world. I shall be very glad to promote, in any way that lies in my power, the circulation of your valuable book.

Very sincerely yours,
W. STEWART DABLING.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Rev. John M. Brooke, D.D., Chaplain to the Legislative Council of New Brunswick.
MONSIEUR, FREDERICTON, 7th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have very great pleasure in expressing the highest appreciation of those specimens of your "Geography," which you have kindly submitted to my inspection.

Where all is excellent it is difficult to particularise, but I may state that I consider the introductory part deserving of especial commendation. The sheet, exhibiting, at a glance, the corresponding time in the principal cities of the world; the various astronomical diagrams; the definition of terms, at once brief and clear; all are calculated at once to aid and to interest the young student in a higher degree than any text-book on the same subject with which I am acquainted.

To the inhabitants of the British North American Provinces your publication must at once commend itself, as contrasting favourably with certain other books, hitherto much used in our Schools, in which these Provinces occupy a very subordinate place indeed.

On all these grounds, and many others I might mention, I hope your Geography will soon find its way into all our Seminaries of Education, and that thus there may be such a demand for it as will remunerate you for the labour and expense which you must have incurred in its preparation.

I am, yours truly,
JOHN M. BROOKE.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Rev. John Carry, B.D., Incumbent of the Mission of Woodbridge, in the Diocese of Toronto.
WOODBRIDGE, 1st March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I regret not having been able to give you my impressions respecting your Geography ere now, but for many weeks I have been so much from home that I could scarcely find time to write a page.

I have not only looked through the whole work, but I have carefully read large portions of it; and to say I am very much pleased with it would very faintly convey my sense of its excellence. I am really delighted that at last a School Geography, almost perfect, is provided for the youth of the British North American Provinces.

I would note the points that have struck me particularly, as: 1. The convenient form of the book; 2. the clear and beautiful typography (the maps when colored will doubtless be no exception); 3. the very convenient headings of paragraphs in heavy type; 4. the omission of detailed boundaries, which can be better learned from figures, and the consequent saving of space; 5. not only the amount of valuable matter thrown into tabular form, but the unusual clearness of its arrangement. The Tables are really a most serious improvement upon ordinary books; 6. the work is also advantageously distinguished by the prominence which is given to Physical, as distinguished from Political, Geography; 7. but what gratifies me most is, I confess, the interesting fulness of detail in all things relating to British North American possessions. The Author has wisely judged that it is more useful, and certainly more agreeable to children, to be made thoroughly conversant with the Geography of their native land than with that of Foreign countries. The educators of other nations have all along seen and acted upon this fact. Canadians have hitherto but dimly recognized it. I see, Sir, in your Geography a mighty, an inestimable contribution to the loyalty of these great Provinces. And lastly, the spirited, accurate, and numerous engravings must make it a real favorite with our children.

Wishing your generous enterprise all the success which it so richly merits,

I am, my dear Sir,
Yours very truly,
JOHN CARRY.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Rev. H. J. Borthwick, A.M., Principal of the County of Carleton Senior Grammar School.
OTTAWA, 1st March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I am in receipt of your communication of the 31st January last, and also of the advance sheets of your forthcoming work on Geography. I have delayed writing this so that I might have the more time to examine the book thoroughly. When the work was announced some time ago, I looked anxiously forward to its appearance, believing that from the well-known character of its Author and Publisher, something would be produced worthy of our rising Canadian literature. I have not been disappointed. Your book is all that can be desired, and after a thorough examination I am convinced that, from its merits, it will at once be adopted in all our schools. I have been teaching for fifteen years in Canada, and have found such a text-book to be the great desideratum. Then, no doubt, all foreign works will be at once driven from the field, especially "Morse," which though excellent in plan and a very teachable book, is, nevertheless, very ill adapted for our Canadian youth. Your Geography is a marvel of cheapness—admirable in plan,—and a fine specimen of what can be done by an enterprising and liberal publisher. We shall at once introduce it into our school, as its want has been long felt. Wishing you much success in your patriotic endeavours to supply the youth of our country with cheap and proper text-books,

I am, yours respectfully,
H. J. BORTHWICK.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Rev. S. S. Nelles, M.A., President of Victoria College,
UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA COLLEGE,
COLONOUR, 11th March, 1861.

SIR,—I have examined (as far as time would permit) the advance sheets of the new "Geography" which you are about to publish, and have much pleasure in recording my very high estimation of both the design and execution of the work.

Some publication of this kind has long been needed in this country, and every Canadian will rejoice that so admirable a supply has been provided to meet the existing want.

It is my intention to adopt at once this Geography as a text-book in the Grammar School department of this Institution, and I have no doubt that it will soon win its way into general use in all our Schools.

Aside from the great merits of the work itself, the fact of its being a Canadian production should induce a generous encouragement on the part of the public.

I have the honour to be, Sir,
Your obedient servant,
S. S. NELLES.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From the Rev. I. B. Howard, Wesleyan Minister,
3 WAVERLY TERRACE,
MONTREAL, 27th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have carefully looked over the advance sheets of your forthcoming "General Geography," and have great pleasure in giving it my unqualified commendation as a work which has long been a desideratum in our Canadian schools; and as vastly superior to any other publication of the kind with which I am acquainted. The classification appears to be faultless, the definitions concise and lucid, and the information given in regard to the derivation and pronunciation of proper names is very valuable. It is indeed *multum in parvo*, and will doubtless become the standard Geography of our schools.

I am, Sir,
Yours truly,
I. B. HOWARD.

Mr. John Lovell.

From the Rev. J. Gilbert Armstrong, M.A., Chairman of the Board of Public Instruction in the County of Prescott, and of the Grammar School Trustees; Local Superintendent of Schools, &c.

I have carefully examined "Lovell's General Geography." The work does very great credit to both Publisher and Author. It displays no ordinary degree of ability, industry, taste, and perseverance. A book of this kind is very much required in this country; and affords information regarding the Colonies which no doubt will be appreciated by old country residents. I shall be most happy to recommend it to the schools in my superintendency, as well as to heads of families, and hope it will be patronized as extensively as it deserves.

J. GILBERT ARMSTRONG.
HAWKESBURY, C. W., 25th February, 1861.

From the Rev. John Cordner, Minister of the Unitarian Church,
MONTREAL, 8th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have looked attentively through the "General Geography," which seems to me well adapted to its purpose. Designed for use in British America, it gives a proper proportion of its space to this country. Its method is admirable, the details being at once copious in information and concise in statement. The Maps and Illustrations greatly enhance the value of the work, as attractive helps to the young learner. When it comes to be known by the public, I should think it must command a very extensive, if not universal, circulation in the Schools of British North America.

Yours truly,
J. CORDNER.

Mr. John Lovell.

Byterian Church of Scotland,
14th March, 1861.

the advance sheets of Schools, which fully the accuracy of I think the plan of facilitate the work portions as I have ousate, considering and the vast amount and arrangement nishing the work to soliciting correspond aim and anxiety Your Geography is, to British North satisfaction by its fellow-colonists.

WODGRESS.

en's Church,
14th March, 1861.

ing the receipt of ents has afforded me long been felt, in increasing im- a manner which public. An entor- considered a great ouragement as its ublisher are entitled patriotic spirit, the arrangement. The tion.

WELLSGOOD.

ity Church, and Montreal.

ets of "Lovell's" adapted for use in I am acquainted. n, and, with the t country, of rendered himself

BANCROFT.

Secretary to the

anced April, 1861. d advance sheets of t, and have been as. t countries are its introduction requirement of

J. ROGERS.

er.

May, 1861.

s General Geogr- e them a care- both admirable. gement, evince ion, that we in d States, for States especi- conversant with the Geography of their native land than with that of Foreign countries. The educators of other nations have all along seen and acted upon this fact. Canadians have hitherto but dimly recognized it. I see, Sir, in your Geography a mighty, an inestimable contribution to the loyalty of these great Provinces. And lastly, the spirited, accurate, and numerous engravings must make it a real favorite with our children.

I. SCOTT.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

*From the Very Reverend William Leitch, Principal of Queen's College.
KINGSTON, 26th April, 1861.*

SIR.—The plan of your School Geography is excellent and I hope it will meet with the success it deserves.

I am, Sir, yours obediently,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. W. LEITCH.

*From the Rev. A. J. Parker, Congregational Minister.
DANVILLE, C. E., 26th February, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—It gives me pleasure to know that you have undertaken the publication of a series of Canadian school books. Our country has extent, importance, and population quite sufficient to warrant the measure. We are not parcel either of "the old country," or of "the United States." Our physical geography is distinct; our population, diversified in its origin, has in Canada its home. Our civil, educational, and religious institutions should be, must be, Canadian, and ought so to be represented. This country has facilities for producing school books superior to any on the American Continent. Possessing the best productions of scholars and educators in Great Britain, and the United States; having liberty to adopt, incorporate, or amend, without infringement of copyright, Canada ought to furnish text-books in science superior to any thing extant. And it is time that she should know and tell what place she occupies in the world. I am happy to witness so fair a beginning in this enterprise. So far as I can judge "Lovell's General Geography" is well adapted to our Canadian schools.

I could desire a more extended list of map questions, in order to guide teachers, and fix attention of pupils more fully. With that improvement I should predict its general adoption in this section.

Yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. A. J. PARKER.

*From the Rev. Abraham de Sola, LL.D., Jewish Minister, and Professor of Hebrew and Oriental Literature in the University of McGill College.
MONTREAL, 11th March, 1861.*

MY DEAR SIR.—I have carefully examined your new "General Geography," through the advance sheets you were good enough to send me, and do not hesitate to pronounce it, so far as my humble, and I trust impartial judgment is concerned, the very best work of the kind I have ever seen. I happen to know that the copies of Geography published in the United States, and so extensively used here, are especially objectionable to friends of Canadian education, as they instil into the mind of the young student views of the government and institutions of the land he lives in, as well as of the parent country, incompatible as they are undesirable. The short, dry, and most incorrect notices of the British North American possessions in the Geographies referred to, have also proved, and justifiably so, a serious cause of objection. This deficiency is fully and satisfactorily supplied by Mr. Hodgins in your new work, and without depriving the neighbouring republican states of their due prominence. For this alone your spirited efforts should be—as I am sure they will be—gratefully acknowledged and warmly supported by parents and teachers in Canada, nay, by the Government also, for it certainly cannot look uninterestedly on the successful completion of a work all must view as of national benefit.

I must sincerely congratulate you on the mechanical as well as the literary execution of the book. No existing work can be held to excel it, and not only the Metropolis but even the Eastern Townships of Canada may be proud of the evidences of artistic talent which Messrs. Barlow & Walker, of Montreal, and Mr. Hunter, of Stanstead, have afforded in their Maps and Illustrations.

I have specially examined the chapter on Asia, and find the notice of that most interesting continent of a much more satisfactory character than is generally given in School Geographies. It is pleasing to see that the Bible student has not been overlooked, and the Map of Palestine, in a two-fold aspect, on page 99, cannot but be regarded as a valuable addition acceptable to all.

Regarding the work in the very favorable light I do, I sincerely trust you may, as a result of your labors and outlay, have the satisfaction of finding your enterprise appreciated as it deserves. With the assurances of my own thankfulness,

I am, my dear Sir,
Yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell. ABRAHAM DE SOLA.

*From the Rev. Samuel D. Rice, Wesleyan Minister.
LAMILTON, 10th April, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—I have looked over your "Geography" with such an amount of attention as I could give. I admire its arrangement very much. With such brevity as was necessary to the plan pursued, its fitness on all the subjects connected with Geographical study is remarkable. It is most gratifying that Canada is not only preparing her own school books, but that, as in the case of the "Geography," they are of so high an order of merit. A few omissions supplied, I feel confident, would make it a most popular text-book in Eastern British America, and even as it is, I do not think there is any work of this kind in use in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, or Prince Edward's Island, at all comparable to the one you are now publishing.

I am, dear Sir,
Yours very truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. S. D. RICE.

*From the Rev. Henry Patton, Rector of Cornwall, and Rural Dean of Johnston.
CORNWALL, 26th April, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—As far as I have had leisure, I have examined the advance sheets of your "General Geography," and I consider it in many respects a decided improvement upon the Geographies commonly used in our Schools. By the prominence given to our own, and the other Colonial possessions of Great Britain and the due proportion of space assigned to other countries it is much more suitable for the use of our Canadian youths than Morse's and other similar Geographies which give such undue proportions of space to the United States.

I cannot however say much in commendation of your Maps, as they are at present too indistinct and confused to be readily consulted. This defect may however be remedied to some extent when the maps are coloured.

I remain, my dear Sir,
Yours truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. HENRY PATTON.

*From the Rev. C. P. Reid, M.A., Minister of the Church of England.
SHEENBOEK, 24th April, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—I have to thank you for the advance sheets of the new "General Geography" which you are about to publish, and which has long been needed.

Until your book shall be in the hands of our youth, the only notice so far as I am aware, that our growing country, one of the finest in the world, and likely soon to be one of the most important, has obtained in works on General Geography, is only what can be crowded into some half dozen pages of some small book.

This has long been felt to be a most serious evil in more ways than one, and we cannot feel too much indebted to you for the remedy that your enterprise has supplied.

The plan of arrangement followed seems to me, upon the whole, as judicious as any that could be adopted; and my little daughter thinks that the pictures with which it is illustrated, especially those of the animals, are very beautiful.

Yours very truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. C. P. REID.

*From the Rev. A. Carman, M.A., Principal of the Belleville Seminary.
BELLEVILLE SEMINARY, 10th March, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—In my opinion your "General Geography" is a most valuable contribution to our School literature. With three of its characteristics I am especially pleased, viz:—1st. The succinct, yet comprehensive, statement of the astronomical relations and physical features of the earth, with which it opens; 2nd. The presentation of each lesson in topics, and their scientific arrangement; 3rd. The minute and extensive information given concerning our own country, our sister Provinces, and indeed the whole of the great Empire, to which it is our boast to belong. The aids to pronunciation, the statistical tables, and the remarks on the physical features of the different countries, must also be continually acceptable to both teachers and students, as well as profitable to the general reader.

This Geography—without controversy the best yet given to the British American public—will do much toward exciting the popular estimate of this branch of study, and fostering the patriotism and loyalty of our people. I sincerely hope that you and the judicious Author, Mr. Hodgins, will quickly find your well earned reward and encouragement in the liberal patronage of the Canadian public.

Yours very truly,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. A. CARMAN.

*From the Rev. Hugh Urquhart, D.D., Minister of the Presbyterian Church of Canada in connection with the Presbyterian Church of Scotland.
CORNWALL, 25th April, 1861.*

DEAR SIR.—I owe you an apology for my tardiness in acknowledging the receipt of the advance sheets of your forthcoming "General Geography," and in responding to the communication which accompanied them, I beg to assure you, however, that my tardiness did not arise from any reluctance or unwillingness to unite my testimony with that of others, in favour of your praiseworthy undertaking. I have long regarded your generous and persevering efforts to bring forward a class of elementary books for our youth,—stamped with a national character, and laying the country under a debt of gratitude to you. Your Geography, so far as I have been enabled to examine its structure and varied details, is framed with a view to the same wholesome and needful end. And while it does credit to your enterprise, and to the skill and talent of the accomplished Author, I doubt not but that it will be hailed by every intelligent teacher of youth, as well as by a grateful community, as a boon much-needed and well-timed,—calculated at once to save the national character from improper associations, and to lead them to cherish national and patriotic feelings.

I confine myself to this general expression of my sentiments, leaving to those who have been able to bestow more attention on the structure and details of the work than I have been, to give expression to their opinion.

Trusting that you will in this, as in all your other enterprises for the benefit of our common country, meet with the success and patronage which you merit, I have the pleasure to subscribe myself

Yours faithfully,
Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. H. URQUHART.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From the Rev. J. Travers Lewis, LL.D., Minister of the Church of England, BROOKVILLE, 5th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have to acknowledge (with thanks for your courtesy) the receipt of the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography."
From an extract of a lecture of mine delivered in my capacity of Local Superintendent, which I enclose, you will perceive that I have considered such a Geography as you contemplate a desideratum in our schools. I have carefully perused it, and have no hesitation in pronouncing it as a most useful improvement on the Geographies now used, and I wish you all success in your spirited undertaking.

I am, Sir, yours truly,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. J. TRAVERS LEWIS.

From the Rev. William Agar Adamson, D.C.L., Chaplain and Librarian the Legislative Council.

LIBRARY OF PARLIAMENT, QUEBEC, 25th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I beg to acknowledge the receipt of the first portion of the "General Geography" in course of publication by you, which is great credit to your enterprise, and to the skill and acquirements of Mr. Hodgins. It is certainly the best and most impartial Geography of the North American continent, and will, I trust, receive from the public encouragement it so eminently deserves.

I am, my dear Sir, very faithfully yours,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. W. AGAR ADAMSON.

From the Rev. David Black, Minister of the Presbyterian Church, CHATEAUGUAY, C.E., 13th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have the pleasure of saying that I entirely approve of your "General Geography," and consider it a great acquisition to those who are engaged in the education of youth. The plan is most excellent, and contains *notum in parte*, and brings into one view an amount of useful information, abridging the labours of two teachers at an ordinary degree. With regard to the execution of the text and engravings, it is very superior; and when the former are colored, they will be still more distinct, and all the confusion arising from the number of the names of places will entirely disappear.

I wish your undertaking all success, and that it will answer your expectations.

I am, dear Sir, yours respectfully,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. D. D. BLACK.

From the Rev. Dr. Willis, Principal of St. College, TORONTO, 1st February, 1861.

SIR,—I have been much gratified in looking of the advance sheets of the "General Geography," which does great credit to Mr. Hodgins, and must have cost him great labour.

The work is well planned and executed, comprising in remarkably moderate bounds a vast amount of information. It is an improvement on every other School Geography I am acquainted with, and is likely to take a chief place in Canadian schools, especially as it supplies what the best existing class-books seem greatly wanting in—detailed and accurate information as to America, at least as to the British American Provinces. This largely enlarges in the present work, which yet recognizes the countries of both hemispheres sufficiently.

The numerous maps and vignettes enliven the pages, presenting cities and towns, not countries only, to our eye, vividly and pleasantly. These alone are worth all the price of the book,—one Dollar!

Yours respectfully,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. M. WILLIS.

From the Rev. J. Goadb, Baptist Minister, MONTREAL, 1st March, 1861.

SIR,—I have examined the "General Geography" you sent me. I am much pleased with the plan and style of the work. It cannot fail of being useful in the schools for which it is intended.

Some of the Maps are not quite so distinct as they might be; probably coloring will improve them.

Yours truly,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. J. GOADB.

From the Rev. William Ormiston D.D., Minister of the United Presbyterian Church, HAMILTON, 27th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have perused the advance sheets of your "General Geography" with much satisfaction. The work is well adapted to meet the requirements of the schools in our own Province, and will do good service should it find a place in the schools of other lands. It will supply what has hitherto been an acknowledged desideratum in our list of school books,—a Geography wherein the extent, resources, and importance of our own country are fairly and fully presented to our children.

Your laudable endeavours to furnish our schools with suitable Canadian text-books merit, as I doubt not they will secure, a hearty appreciation and an ample reward.

I am, Sir, yours very truly,
MR. JOHN LOVELL, Montreal. W. ORMISTON.

From Mrs. Susanna Moodie, BELLEVILLE, 20th April, 1861.

SIR,—I have read the sheets of the "General Geography" you forwarded to me, with much interest and attention, and think that work is calculated to give to the Canadian student a juster idea of the extent and importance of the great empire of which his country forms an integral part, than the works from which he has been accustomed to gain geographical knowledge. The Geographies issued from the American press, are so hostile to the British Government that a child must close them with the impression that Britain is far inferior to the States in its social, political and commercial advantages.

Such a work as the one before me was greatly needed in these Colonies, to remove these false opinions, and convince our young people of the importance of the glorious country who claims them for her subjects.

The "General Geography" will, no doubt, become a valuable national work, and take its place as a standard book in our schools. It is superior to Parley's Geography, containing many valuable statistics, in which that very popular school-book is deficient, while it comprises all the modern discoveries made during the present century. It is sincerely to be hoped that it may banish these American works from our seminaries, and be favourably recognized as the best Geography extant in these Colonies.

Wishing you success in your laudable and national undertaking,

I remain, dear Sir, yours truly,
SUSANNA MOODIE.

From Miss Lyman, CORÉ HOUSE, MONTREAL, 25th March, 1861.

SIR,—I have examined with some care the "General Geography" you were so kind as to send me, and am very much pleased with it, especially with the portion relating to Canada. I want of a correct description of the British Provinces has long been felt in our schools, and I am sure you will find a hearty appreciation of your efforts to supply that need.

With best wishes for your success in this enterprise,

I am, Sir, yours respectfully,
MR. JOHN LOVELL. H. W. LYMAN.

From Mrs. Simpson, Principal of Ladies' Academy, 4 INKERMANN TERRACE, MONTREAL, 20th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—Allow me to express the gratification I have received by a perusal of the advance sheets of your "General Geography."

The plan is excellent and answers all the requirements of an intelligent work of the subject; the facts (so far as I am able to judge of them) are correct and well chosen; and the pretty and truthful engravings, by which the book is illustrated, considerably enhance its value and usefulness.

I believe you have satisfied a want long felt in Canadian schools; therefore, as soon as it is ready, I shall gladly place the "General Geography" in the hands of my pupils, as a text-book.

Believe me, dear Sir, Yours faithfully,
MR. JOHN LOVELL. LUCY SIMPSON.

From Mrs. E. H. Lay, Principal of Young Ladies' Institute, Beaver Hall, MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have long desired to see a Geography which would give Canada, and the other British Provinces, a proper share of attention; and in issuing your new work you have supplied the schools with a valuable auxiliary for conducting the education of our youth.

I have examined the specimen copy of your "General Geography," and consider it highly creditable to Canadian enterprise, as well as a most instructive school book. I am particularly pleased with the "Introductory Chapter." There terms are defined and illustrations given, which for clearness, conciseness, and beauty, cannot be surpassed.

The "General Views" of each grand division are comprehensive, and taken as a whole, give a clear idea of its peculiarities of climate, surface, and resources.

The pronunciation of proper names, and their signification, together with the tabular views of the principal cities, settlements, &c., are also valuable aids to the student, and looking at the finish of the maps, the number and beauty of the engravings, the skill shown in the selection, and amount of information, I may, without presumption, predict for it an extensive circulation in the British Colonies.

Wishing you success, I am, dear Sir, Yours very respectfully,
MR. JOHN LOVELL. ELEANOR H. LAY.

From the Hon. John Young, MONTREAL, 12th April, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have carefully examined the advance sheets of your "General Geography," which I think is a great improvement over any other book of the kind now used in Canada. The general arrangement of the work, its valuable statistics, the clearness and colouring of the maps, and the many improvements in detail, must give it great importance as a standard educational book.

Hoping that your energy and enterprise will be amply rewarded by a large sale,

I am, dear Sir, yours very truly,
MR. JOHN LOVELL. JOHN YOUNG.

nd Rural Dean of

, 20th April, 1861.
I have examined the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography" in many respects a most useful work in our Schools. Colonial possessions and to other countries youths than Morse's proportions of space

Maps, as they are coloured. This defect is a disadvantage.

HENRY PATTON.

Church of England, 24th April, 1861. I have examined the new "General Geography" which has long been

the only notice so far as the world, and contained in works on some half dozen

more ways than one, to remedy that your in the whole, as a judicious person thinks that the of the animals, are

C. P. REID.

Belleville Seminary, 16th March, 1861.

"General Geography" is a most valuable of its characteristics comprehensive, statements of the earth, with a in tones, and their information given indeed the whole of The aids to pronounce physical features of able to both teachers

given to the British popular estimate of loyalty of our people. Mr. Hodgins, will count, in the liberal

A. CARMAN.

Presbyterian Church of Scotland, 25th April, 1861.

In acknowledging the "General Geography" and send them, I beg to say from any reluctance others, in favour of your generous and many books for our as laying the country so far as I have been framed with a view does credit to your Author, I doubt not of youth, as well and well-timed,—calculated to improve the sentiments, leaving to on the structure and to their opinion. enterprises for the and patronage which

URQUHART.

OPINIONS ON LOVE'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

*From Mrs. Gordon, Principal of Ladies' Seminary,
5 ARGYLE TERRACE,
MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.*

DEAR SIR,—Since the day you favoured me with the advance sheets a portion of the "General Geography for the use of Schools," which you are about to publish, I have been devoting to its examination a portion of my few and short minutes of leisure.

To produce a school treatise on this science, corresponding with anything like *completeness* to the wants of teacher and pupil, is a task which, so far as my knowledge extends, has never yet been fully accomplished. Few works of the sort have been long in use before their inadequacy in some important respect is felt and acknowledged, and there is a never-failing crop of new ones professing to supply the defects of their fore-runners. I remember, just before leaving Europe, having in my hands a list of more than a hundred and thirty geographical treatises, all for the use of schools, and all published within the two preceding years.

Until the best possible work shall have been produced, we who are engaged in tuition will always gladly avail ourselves of the best *actual* one that comes within our reach. The Author's name (to say nothing of the Publisher's) was sufficient to insure my respectful attention to the admirably got up volume now before me, and I rise from its perusal convinced that I shall be able to use it in my seminary with considerable advantage to all concerned.

I am, dear Sir, yours sincerely,
AUGUSTA GORDON.

Mr. John Lovell.

*From the Honorable A. A. Dorion, M. P. P.
MONTREAL, 4th March, 1861.*

DEAR SIR,—I have read with great satisfaction "Lovell's General Geography," which you are about to publish, and I consider it will be a valuable addition to our stock of books for the use of the most advanced of our common Schools. Its complete description of the British Colonies fills a vacuum not supplied heretofore by either Foreign or British Geographies, while the style in which it is got up, and its low price, cannot fail to recommend it for general purposes.

I only wish it were in your power to have it published in French also, as most of the Geographies in use in Lower Canada are deficient and do not contain much important information which is to be found in your work.

Respectfully yours,
A. A. DORION.

Mr. John Lovell.

*From J. B. Meilleur, M.D., LL.D., Ex-Superintendent of Education for
Lower Canada.*

MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have carefully examined the copy of your "General Geography," which you have had the goodness to send me, and I confess that I have derived no little pleasure from such an examination. It is a work well calculated to attain the end which you have in view, and will undoubtedly prove invaluable, as a *text book* in the hands of our Canadian youth. Its maps are excellent and the varied and extensive information it contains, not being, as far as I can see, tainted by any sectarian or party prejudice, will, I trust, contribute much to recommend it to a discriminating public, and procure for it a wide spread circulation.

I need not say that I will hail with joy the success of an enterprise which reflects so much credit on yourself, as well as on the Author of the work, and that I shall recommend it as a product of Canadian talent and industry, in preference to any other work on the same subject, of even equal merit, but published elsewhere.

I am, dear Sir, yours truly,
J. B. MEILLEUR.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

*From Wolfred Nelson, M.D., Provincial Inspector of Prisons.
MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.*

DEAR SIR,—I have carefully perused your valuable work on General Geography with much pleasure, and am convinced that it will attain the patriotic ends you aim at. Not only to the Canadian student will it prove a boon, but it will be found useful and entertaining everywhere.

The maps seem to be got up with much care and minuteness, but, being necessarily of small compass, have at first glance the appearance of indistinctness, which, however, soon disappears on a closer examination.

With best wishes for your complete success in your many and most valuable enterprises so intimately allied to the public good,

I am, my dear Sir,
Your obedient servant,
WOLFRED NELSON.

Mr. John Lovell.

*From T. Sterry Hunt, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S., Chemist and Mineralogist to
the Geological Survey of Canada.*

MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—From the partial examination which I have been able to give your Geography, I have much pleasure in saying that I conceive it to be compiled with much care and judgment; at the same time the admirable engravings and maps add greatly to its value, and make it in my opinion the best School Geography I have ever met with.

Faithfully yours,
T. STERRY HUNT.

Mr. John Lovell.

*From Archibald Hall, M.D., L.R.C.S.E., Professor of Midwifery, &c., in the
University of McGill College.*

18 VICTORIA SQUARE,
MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have carefully perused the advance sheets of your "General Geography," and have little hesitation in pronouncing an opinion on the merits of the work.

As regards the manner in which the different subjects have been treated, I consider it all that can be desired. The definitions of the different geographical, astronomical, and meteorological terms are correct and embody their true meaning of them in as few words as our language admits. This is an important division of the work is so well executed as to combine conciseness with clearness, and brevity with perspicacity.

The great objection to geographical works in general consists in the fact that they are usually too minute on the country of which the author happens to be a native, or in which he resides, to the exclusion of important particulars in regard to other countries and places. While it is proper that every scholar should be intimately acquainted with the particulars of his national home, and that it should therefore receive an especial attention, I think that your Geography forms an exception to other works of the kind, as you have dealt in equality of fairness with all countries, rendering the volume one which might with the greatest propriety be placed in the hands of a pupil here, in England, the United States, or Australia. In fact, I think you have made it as cosmopolitan as such a work can be.

The maps and other embellishments are such as to render the work peculiarly attractive to the young scholar. If a fault is to be found with the form, it consists in the fact that they are too profuse of names of places. I consider it that you can afford to publish it at the price which I have heard that you propose to demand for it.

I shall be too happy to hear that your enlightened efforts in favour of education have been crowned with the most complete success. No one with whom I am acquainted deserves a more substantial reward.

Believe me, my dear Sir,
Yours most truly,
A. HALL, M.D.

Mr. John Lovell.

*From Charles Smallwood, M.D., LL.D.
OBSERVATORY,
ST. MARTIN, ISLE JESUS, 25th February, 1861.*

DEAR SIR,—I have examined the advance sheets of your "General Geography," and with much pleasure in bearing testimony to the fidelity of its scientific and general character.

The maps, illustrations, and letter-press, are in keeping with the general character of the book, and reflect great credit on your establishment.

The Editorial department has been carried out with a talent and perseverance worthy of the highest encomiums, and has left nothing to be desired. As an Educational book of the first class, I feel confident that it will supersede any work on the same subject at present in use.

Yours very truly,
CHARLES SMALLWOOD, M.D.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

*From Alexander Morris, Esq. Advocate, and Author of "Canada and her
Resources, a Prize Essay "Nova Britannia," &c., and Governor of
University of McGill College.*

MONTREAL, 27th February, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—After a careful examination of the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography," which you have sent me, I have much pleasure in bearing a willing testimony to its merits. In its publication you have rendered a real service to the community. I have long felt that it was, in a patriotic point of view, a great misfortune that the youth of British North America were compelled to give their knowledge of the geography of their native country and of Britain from geographies published in the United States, in which these countries were dwarfed and in many cases depreciated, while the United States were correspondingly magnified. For this evil you have provided a most efficient remedy.

I have paid particular attention to the study of the natural characteristics and other features of British North America during some years past, and I have no hesitation in saying that I know of no other source from which the pupils in our schools can gain the information you have provided for them. The Map of British Columbia and the North-West Territories is very good and clear, and is to be found in no other Geography that I am aware of. The Maps of Canada and the Lower Provinces are also extremely valuable features of the work. The illustrations and maps are, as a whole, very creditable to Canadian enterprise, and would redound to the honour of any of the publishing companies of Britain or America. I believe that the Geography will prove a boon to the country, and will have a most happy effect in training the youth of the British Provinces to right views of the great extent of the country, and of the variety of its resources, and will largely contribute to the development of a national sentiment. I trust that the Geography will obtain the widest and most general circulation, and that you will thereby be rewarded for your public-spirited enterprise.

As a simpler and more elementary work, for junior pupils, would be very useful, I hope the encouragement awarded to the "General Geography," will lead you to issue another work for use in our primary schools, as you intimate your intention of doing.

I am, yours obediently,
ALEXANDER MORRIS

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

author of *Midwestery, &c.*, in the
Allego.

VICTORIA SQUARE,
 KEAL, 20th February, 1861.

your advance sheets of your
 in pronouncing an opinion
 subjects have been treated,
 tions of the different geoma-
 are correct, and embody
 our language admits. This
 executed as to combine con-
 cacy.

general consists in the fact
 of which the author has
 the exclusion of important
 places. While it is proper
 with the particulars
 therefore receive an espe-
 cially an exception to other
 of fairness with all coun-
 try with the greatest pro-
 England, the United States,
 as a cosmopolitan as such a

ch as to render the work
 fault is to be found with
 of profuse of names of
 blish it at the price which
 it.
 lightened efforts in favour
 complete success. No one
 substantial reward.

Mr. John Lovell,
 A. HALL, M.D.

D., LL.D.
 AVATORY,

25th February, 1861.
 sheets of your "General
 g testimony to the fidelity

keeping with the general
 your establishment.
 with a talent and perseve-
 left nothing to be desired.
 feel confident that it will
 out in use.

SMALLWOOD, M.D.

author of "Canada and her
 is," &c., and Governor of

27th February, 1861.

of the advance sheets of
 cent me, I have much pleas-
 In its publication you
 I have long felt that it was,
 that the youth of British
 knowledge of the geography
 graphs published in the
 world and in many cases
 moniously magnified. For
 ty.

the natural characteristics
 ing some years past, and I
 her sources from which the
 u have provided for them.
 st Territories is very good
 y that I am aware of. The
 also extremely valuable
 appars, as a whole, very
 und to the hour that you
 I believe that the Gene-
 ve a most happy effect in
 right views of the great
 resources, and will largely
 timent. I trust that the
 circulation, and that you
 enter into the minds of
 or pupils, would be very
 the "General Geography,"
 r primary schools, as you

iently,
 ANDER MORRIS

From Colonel Wilmot, Royal Artillery.

MONTRÉAL, 25th April, 1861.

SIR.—Having carefully examined the copy of "Lovell's General Geography" which you were kind enough to send to me, I can not but say that the work appears to be well adapted to the purpose of instruction as well as of reference, and I trust that the enterprise and zeal which you have shown in thus providing a work more particularly adapted to the Canadian standing point, though by no means confined to it, will meet with the success that it merits.

Faithfully yours,

F. EARDLEY WILMOT,
 Colonel R. A.

Mr. John Lovell.

From Benjamin Workman, M.D., Assistant Physician to the Provincial Lunatic Asylum.

TORONTO, 9th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR.—I have examined the advance sheets of your "General Geography" for the use of Schools, and find it to be an excellent school book, superior in matter and arrangement to any School Geography printed in America, that I have seen; and conveying in brief phraseology a very valuable amount of geographical knowledge.

A School Geography, giving more ample information to our youth concerning British America, has long been a desideratum in this and our sister Colonies, and I rejoice to find that the work under my notice so fully meets this want. Mr. Hodgins and you have, in this volume, made a very valuable addition to our series of School Books, and I have no doubt that your enterprise will be appreciated by every friend of education.

Your obedient servant,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. BENJAMIN WORKMAN, M.D.

From Etienne Parent, Esq., Assistant Provincial Secretary East.

QUEBEC, 23 février, 1861.

MONSIEUR.—J'ai parcouru avec la plus vive satisfaction les 64 pages de votre "Lovell's General Geography," à l'usage des écoles, que vous avez bien voulu m'adresser, en me demandant mon avis sur cet ouvrage.

Le moins que j'en puisse dire d'après les spécimens que j'en ai devant moi, c'est qu'à mon avis il devra surpasser l'attente, tant dans son ensemble que dans ses détails, de ceux qui désiraient voir remplir la lacune qui existait pour la langue anglaise au moins, dans les livres à l'usage des écoles. Cette lacune a été remplie, pour la langue française, par l'excellent traité de M. Holmes, dont nous avons une édition assez récente, adoptée pour nos écoles par le Conseil de l'Instruction Publique; mais le nouvel ouvrage enseignera, sous plusieurs formes, surtout sous la forme pittoresque, une si grande masse de notions utiles et agréables, qui ne se trouvent pas dans l'autre, qu'il est très à désirer que vous en publiez au plus tôt une édition française, ce que vous pouvez faire très économiquement, en vous servant des planches de l'édition anglaise.

A ce propos je remarquerai que je ne croyais pas qu'il fût possible de publier en Canada pour \$1, un ouvrage de cette espèce. En le faisant, vous vous acquérez un nouveau titre à la reconnaissance du pays, qui vous était déjà dû pour vos nombreux et constants efforts pour l'avancement de notre bibliographie.

Je suis, monsieur, votre tout dévoué,

E. PARENT.

M. John Lovell, Imprimeur, Montréal.

From Joseph G. Barthe, Esq., Advocate.

ESPLANADE, No. 13,
 QUEBEC, ce 26 février, 1861.

CHEZ MONSIEUR.—J'ai sous les yeux l'exemplaire du magnifique Atlas dont vous venez d'enrichir la bibliographie canadienne, que vous avez bien voulu m'adresser, et qui, comme tout ce qui sort de vos ateliers, porte le cachet de vos œuvres, je veux dire l'élégance et le fini. J'y ai admiré l'ordre et l'arrangement des matières comme de leurs lucides et classiques dispositions, qui accusent du savantes recherches et d'heureuses combinaisons.

Il est enrichi d'illustrations qui, en y répandant l'éclat, lui donnent un singulier attrait de curiosité piquante pour l'esprit de la jeunesse, toujours affamée d'apprendre sans labeur et en se récréant, comme par l'appât et la tentation de sens; et je ne doute point que la manière dont vous l'avez conçu et exécuté, avec ses vignettes démonstratives si bien adaptées à l'œuvre, n'ajoute beaucoup à sa valeur intrinsèque, et que vous n'ayez contribué, par là, à donner à notre système d'enseignement un complément qui lui manquait.

Travailler pour l'enfance, c'est faire une œuvre d'adoption, et lui faciliter l'acquisition des connaissances indispensables à notre condition de civilisation sociale actuelle, c'est remplir les devoirs du patriotisme dans sa plus haute acception, en ouvrant à ses générations à leur source; comme c'est honorer l'industrie d'un pays que d'illustrer votre art comme vous le faites.

L'éducation publique vous devra ce nouveau progrès, et vous venez d'ajouter à la somme de reconnaissance qu'elle vous devait déjà. La jeunesse surtout qui aime à voir dépouiller les études de leurs aridités, vous bénira de lui avoir rendu si attrayante celle de la Géographie, toujours si ardue quand la mémoire n'est pas aidée par l'imagination, ou plutôt l'intelligence conçue par les sens, comme elle le sera désormais, grâce à votre ingénieuse écriture.

Je regrette que l'autorité de mon appréciation soit si faible; mais je n'en suis pas moins heureux de pouvoir vous offrir un témoignage qui part du moins d'une admiration sincère, je dirais mieux de l'inspiration de la reconnaissance, comme ami de l'éducation et de tous les progrès.

Agreez, monsieur, etc.

M. John Lovell, Montréal. J. G. BARTHE.

From P. R. Lafrenaye, Esq., B.C.L., Advocate.

MONTRÉAL, 18 Avril, 1861.

MONSIEUR.—J'ai examiné attentivement le traité de "Géographie Générale à l'usage des écoles," que vous vous proposez de publier, et je suis convaincu que cet ouvrage mérite tout l'encouragement possible, par la manière instructive et agréable dont les différentes parties sont présentées à l'étude de la jeunesse.

En parcourant cet ouvrage, on comprend parfaitement que les indications géographiques qui sont illustrées auront l'effet de laisser une impression permanente dans la mémoire des enfants.

Je ne hasarde rien, en disant qu'il n'y a pas, en géographie, de volume qui pour un prix aussi modique, offre la réunion d'un aussi grand nombre de notions pratiques.

En un mot, rien n'a été négligé pour rendre cet ouvrage aussi complet qu'il était possible, en se renfermant dans les limites de ce qui est réellement utile aux enfants.

Je suis, monsieur,

Votre obéissant serviteur,

P. R. LAFREYAYE.

Mr. John Lovell.

From Andrew Robertson, Esq., Advocate.

MONTRÉAL, 5th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR.—I think your Geography better adapted for Schools than any one I have seen used in the Province, and trust you may succeed in getting it generally introduced.

Yours truly,

A. ROBERTSON.

Mr. John Lovell.

From Dunbar Ross, Esq., M. P. P.

QUEBEC, 26th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR.—I beg to thank you for the advance sheets of your "General Geography." Your little work with the modest title of "Geography for the use of Schools," is considered a most excellent compendium of that science, and of useful statistical information in connection therewith, well adapted as a work of reference and instruction for all classes, old and young.

Your Maps will be certainly much enhanced by the colouring, which is the great secret of practical illustration, and aid to the memory, without which they are generally little less than useless.

I am glad to see that you have avoided the national egotism of restricting the geographical student to the knowledge of his own section of your vast globe, which you have extensively and so beautifully illustrated.

I cannot wish you better success than your excellent work so richly merits, and I trust the people of Canada, at least, will show their appreciation of it by its general adoption.

Yours truly,

DUNBAR ROSS.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From Thomas D'Arcy McGee, Esq., M.P.P.

MONTRÉAL, 30th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR.—I have occupied some hours in going over your "General Geography for the use of Schools," compiled by Mr. Hodgins, and cannot deny myself the pleasure of expressing to you the great satisfaction with which I followed the arrangement of the Maps and matter, which you have adopted. It was high time we should have a School Geography which would give due prominence to our own and the sister Colonies, as yours does. Hitherto, both on English and American maps, these immense territories were mere specks, and no descriptive letter-press corrected the erroneous impression left on the eye by the Atlas. In your "General Geography," this, to us, fatal defect is perfectly obviated, while full justice is done to the other countries, both of this and other continents.

Wishing you, my dear Sir, all the success due to your public education, and saying that I remain,

I remain, your obedient servant,

THOMAS D'ARCY MCGEE.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

From John S. Sanborn, Esq., Advocate.

SHEEBROOKE, 7th May, 1861.

DEAR SIR.—I have been very much gratified in examining the advance sheets of "Lovell's General Geography."

It is just what I have been hoping to see in Canada for many years, and I hope its general adoption in the Schools of both sections of the Province will remunerate you for your outlay in getting it up, which cannot be small. You certainly deserve the thanks of all who desire the "improvement of our Canadian youth."

The arrangement of the work is good. Its aim is not to be a history but to fix localities and the prominent characteristics of nations, provinces and peoples, in mind; to give land-marks to guide the voyager on the ocean of knowledge. If I might suggest improvement, it would be in two things,—that a little greater prominence be given to Canada and somewhat more minute description of its places and natural peculiarities be made, and secondly, a more particular attention be given to the significance of the Indian names by which our rivers, lakes, mountains, &c., are called.

Indian names, with their pronunciation and significance, add greatly to the interest excited in the study of Geography, and no where is there a richer store of Indian names with poetic significance than in British America.

Your obedient servant,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal. J. S. SANBORN.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From Thomas C. Keefer, Esq., Civil Engineer.

TORONTO, 1st March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have duly received the advance sheets of your beautiful Geography, which does equal credit to your judgment in a literary sense (I trust it will be so also in a commercial one), and to your enterprise. I have never seen one arranged upon a better system, or more profusely and judiciously illustrated. I have no doubt it will immediately become the standard work in our schools, where it will supply a very great want,—by the Canadian information which it affords, and the impartial character it possesses.

Yours very truly,

THOMAS C. KEEFER.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From Alpheus Todd, Esq., Librarian to the Legislative Assembly.

LIBRARY OF PARLIAMENT,
QUEBEC, 22nd March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have examined with great care the advance sheets of your "General Geography," and have much pleasure in bearing my humble testimony to the great merits of the work. Upon comparing the statistics you have given with those in the most recent and reliable publications within my reach, I find abundant proof of the accuracy and completeness of the work.

Publications of this class too often repeat and perpetuate the errors existing in previous compilations, but your Geography is evidently the fruit of great labour and research, and it is replete with information of essential importance to the rising generation of these Provinces, among whom I trust it will hereafter become a standard text-book.

The sections relating to the British North American Provinces are particularly valuable, on account of their furnishing, in a condensed form, authentic particulars hitherto not to be found in any School Geography. The numerous wood-cuts interspersed throughout the work greatly enhance its attractiveness, and at the same time contribute not a little to its utility. Altogether the volume reflects the highest credit upon its learned Author, Mr. Hodgins, already favourably known by his previous labours in the same field; and also upon yourself for the zeal and enterprise displayed in its publication.

Believe me, dear Sir,

Yours very faithfully,

ALPHEUS TODD.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From T. A. Gibson, Esq., M.A., First Assistant Master of the High School.
MONTREAL, 27th April, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I owe you an apology for not sooner expressing an opinion of your "General Geography," the advance sheets of which you kindly sent me several weeks ago. During the interval, however, I have carefully examined these, comprising no less than 100 pages.

Geography has always appeared to me a branch of such importance in an educational point of view, that I have perused with peculiar interest (con amore) any works on the intended subject as text-books for youth. For professional purposes I have examined most of the works that have issued from the press for more than the last quarter of a century. During that period numerous improvements have been undoubtedly made; but, in recalling these to my memory, I feel myself justified in pronouncing yours as not only embracing these improvements but supplying various desiderata by means calculated to instruct and interest the youthful pupil in a most attractive manner.

This has been most fully and successfully accomplished by introducing the great variety of cuts representing in a correct and striking manner the different animals of the Continents and Oceania, the features and costumes of different races, and the leading cities of the world, along with some ones showing many objects most remarkable in nature and art. By interesting media, appealing constantly to the pupil's understanding and memory through the eyes, his thirst for information will be excited

throughout the Geography, the names of countries, cities, animals, &c., have been correctly syllabicated and accented, as each occurs for the first time. This will prove most helpful to the pupil, and will save a great deal of trouble to the instructor.

Tables of the population of countries and cities, of the height of mountains, and of the length of rivers, will aid greatly in readily comparing the relative proportions of these.

The leading maps, too, have been frequently enhanced by condensed information on the margins.

I regard the Introductory Chapter, divided into Astronomical, Physical, and Political Geography, as approximating as nearly to perfection as any dissertation can possibly represent the subject.

I highly approve of directing the pupil's earliest attention to the Provinces of British North America, and of regarding these as a standard of comparison with countries subsequently described.

In conclusion, I think I am justified in entertaining the confident expectation that your "General Geography," through an enlightened appreciation of its varied intrinsic merits, is destined very shortly to supersede most of the Geographies now in use in British North America. Towards this consummation permit me to suggest the desirableness of a reprint of the simple text for use in the class-room during the preliminary examination of the learners, as I apprehend that several teachers may, somewhat reasonably, object to the size as inconvenient in point of portability to and from school or for use therein.

Sincerely hoping that your enterprising efforts towards improving our educational works may be crowned with the desired success,

I am, dear Sir, yours faithfully,

T. A. GIBSON.

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

From G. W. Wicksteed, Esq., Law Clerk, Legislative Assembly,
QUEBEC, 12th March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I was absent from Quebec when the second part of your School Geography was addressed to me, and on the point of leaving Quebec when the first part reached me, otherwise I should certainly have acknowledged both parts earlier. I have now examined the work with considerable attention and very great pleasure, and think it highly creditable to Mr. Hodgins and to yourself, as well as to the Province. It seems to me to be a very excellent school book, and just what we wanted to make us independent as to the American Geographies, which do nothing but justice either to England or to Canada, while they do considerably more than justice to the United (?) States. The Maps, animals, and views are all that can be reasonably expected for the price at which you offer the book, and I know very well that the distinctness and general appearance of the Maps will be vastly improved by the coloring you promise to give them.

Yours very sincerely,

G. W. WICKSTEED.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From Frederick Griffin, Esq., Q.C.

Judging from the advanced sheets (100 pages), I look upon Mr. Lovell's "General Geography for the use of Schools," to be a great improvement upon the books on the same subject now generally used in this Province, and he has therefore my best wishes for the success of his undertaking.

43 St. Gabriel Street, Montreal, 23rd April, 1861.

F. GRIFFIN.

From William Hicks, Esq., Professor McGill Normal School.

MONTREAL, 21st April, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I am sure the Teachers of Canada will feel grateful to you for publishing the new Geography, a specimen copy of which I have just been looking over with much pleasure. Such a work has long been needed in this country, where the instructors of youth have been obliged to use books either badly arranged, or very scantily furnished with information connected with the British Provinces of North America.

I shall not fail to bring your work before the notice of those who may at a future period be engaged in teaching, and I shall also recommend it to all my friends interested in the work of education.

The Teachers of the Model Schools of the Colonial Church and School Society are desirous of introducing it into their respective departments, and I shall be most willing to represent this to the Committee.

I am, my dear Sir,

Yours very truly,

WILLIAM HICKS.

Mr. John Lovell.

From Charles Nichols, Esq., L.R.C.P., Principal of Collegiate School.
MONTREAL, 1st March, 1861.

SIR,—Canada has been very deficient, and is so still, in good text-books for her Schools. The series now issuing from your press is doing much towards a reformation in this respect. We have had from it books on Spelling, Etymology, History, Arithmetic, Book-keeping, and English Grammar, all admirable works on the subjects of which they have treated.

I have just been perusing your "General Geography," edited by J. George Hodgins, L.L.B., and I must say that it is an excellent work, and I make no doubt will soon supersede all other Geographies in the Schools of Canada. A more luxurious type would perhaps be a recommendation, but this could not be effected without an increase of price, which all must acknowledge is very reasonable for so good a work. I shall adopt it for my upper classes.

Yours truly,

CHARLES NICHOLS.

Mr. John Lovell.

From George Lawson, Esq., Ph.D., F.R.P.S., F.B.S., F.R.S.S.A., Professor of Chemistry and Natural History in the University of Queen's College.
KINGSTON, 12th March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—It gives me much pleasure to express my approval of your new work, the "General Geography for the use of Schools." Its general plan is good. The prominence given to physical phenomena, and natural and artificial products, as well as to history and statistics, is a distinctive feature that will commend the work to those who have enlarged views as to the real nature and objects of geographical science; while the apt illustrations, historical and topographical, that run through its pages, are well calculated to excite the interest of the young, and make permanent impressions on the memory. I doubt not it will come into extensive use in Schools, and prove also of great value in private families.

Yours truly,

GEORGE LAWSON.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From Archibald Macallum, Esq., Principal of the Hamilton Central School.
HAMILTON, 28th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have examined with care your School Geography, now in course of publication. The whole work is marked by learning, ability, and taste. The arrangement is natural, and therefore excellent. The information supplied is very great and very good, just what is wanted for the school-room, and suited for the studio. The labor and care bestowed on it have been immense, and reflect much credit on all concerned. In making this valuable addition to the school books already published, you have laid all connected with the education of youth under renewed obligation. This work should, as I trust it will shortly, be in the hands of every teacher and school officer in Canada.

Yours very respectfully,

ARCHIBALD MACALLUM.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From William Tassie, Esq., M.A., Principal of the Galt Grammar School.

I have much pleasure in bearing testimony to the excellence of "Lovell's General Geography," the advance sheets of which have been forwarded to me. It supplies a want which has long been felt in Canadian Schools, and is, I conceive, specially adapted to the youth of British North America. I have no hesitation in saying that the work must come into general use in our Schools.

WILLIAM TASSIE.

Galt, 10th May, 1861.

From Rotus Parmalee, Esq., Inspector of Schools in the Eastern Townships.

WATERLOO, C.E., 27th February, 1861.

SIR,—I have great pleasure in acknowledging the receipt of the advance sheets of your "General Geography," and in expressing the satisfaction I have experienced from the cursory perusal of them only that my leisure has as yet permitted.

In general terms, I would express the opinion that you have hit upon the just medium between the prolixity of history and the conciseness of mere tabular statistics. It contains the general principles of Geography, and enough of description to suit the requirements of Schools; and the prominence given to our own country is a feature that specially commends it for use in Canadian Schools.

Allow me to suggest one addition, which, if you should agree with me in opinion as to its usefulness, may perhaps yet be supplied: I mean statistics of population. This information, it appears to me, cannot so fitly be given in any other work of ready access, and the "General Geography" needs only this addition to make it complete.

I have the honor to be, Sir,

Your obedient humble servant,

ROTUS PARMALLEE.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

From Fenning Taylor, Esq., Clerk Assistant, Legislative Council.

QUEBEC, 15th April, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—In returning you my thanks for the Advance Sheets of your "General Geography," which you have been kind enough to send me, I take the opportunity of expressing my hope that the public will not be the only party to derive benefit from your valuable contribution to what, I trust, may prove *The British American Series of School Books*. To deserve success has been with you a principle of exertion, and though your reward may not in all cases have been equal to your desert, yet I am sanguine enough to believe that your new enterprise, combining, as it does, commercial with national considerations, will prove to be as satisfactory to yourself as it should be acceptable to the community.

Without referring particularly to the mechanical attractions of an undertaking, whose merits are sufficiently apparent, or affecting to criticize maps, the accuracy of which can only be tested by a practical geographer, I may mention that your Geography is well adapted to supply a want that has been much spoken of, and occupy a place in our school literature, which, hitherto, has been but indifferently filled.

Nor can I withhold the expression of my admiration at the manner in which the duties of Author have been discharged. Mr. Hodgins, it is true, needs no man's praise; his zeal and service in the cause of Education are felt and admitted by all. Still the "General Geography" is not an ordinary book, undertaken for ordinary purposes. On the contrary, it represents immense labour, loyally bestowed, and high aims patriotically advanced. The learned Author, it is true, speaks lightly of his own toil. The labour, so ungrudgingly given, is a "work of love." The object so faithfully carried out is a matter of duty. The value of the book, however, is not impaired by the modesty of the allusion. It appeals to us on its merits, and there is but one answer to the appeal. We must cherish and appreciate a work which has been so carefully adapted to our tastes, and suited to our wants. We must applaud and be grateful to a writer who possessed the genius and ability to discern what we required, as well as the industry and zeal to give us what he discerned.

Those of us who have had an English school-boy's experience will probably remember, that, in the elementary portion of our education, Geography and History were kept tolerably distinct, and approached us, so to speak, in a different clothing, and that the Atlas, however necessary to the correct apprehension of the sister sciences, was usually bound in a separate volume, and used indifferently in either class.

On this continent, the old English plan has been somewhat departed from. With characteristic regard to economy, our American neighbours have sought in their school system to mix tony things together. They seem to be of opinion, that the youth of the Republic should arrive with alway certainty at the terminus of their school course, and lose no time in assuming the duties of citizenship. Thus we find that the elementary Atlas is bound up with the historical and geographical primers. The maps, too frequently evincing a suggestive indifference on the subject of boundaries albeit colored to the tone of effrontery, are placed in print-1 frameworks of doubtful morals, and fabulous chronology; and these again are interwoven with commentaries, either personal or general, that do violence alike to our history and traditions as British subjects.

This, however, is no new complaint. Until the introduction of the present educational system, the Common Schools of Western Canada were almost entirely supplied with books compiled by American authors, published by American printers, and for the most part taught by American school teachers. Thus the mind of our youth was early subjected to foreign influences, its loyalty was exposed to a two-fold danger, for right and wrong in matters political were determined by a standard unknown to the Royal rule. The heroes of our common school books were for the most part of the American Revolutionary type, while the objects were represented as of the British race. Books and Teachers concurred in presenting

only one side of history, and that side in mesquerade, and said nothing of the noble race of men, the founders of Western Canada, who, amidst hardships, privations, and defeat, were faithful to their Country, their Sovereign, and their oasis.

Next to the selection of exemplary teachers, it is desirable that the school books should be not only well chosen, but national in their tone and teaching. Your General Geography is a valuable contribution in the right direction. It gives due prominence to the Colonial Possessions of the British crown, and is particularly full in its descriptions of the North American Provinces. You have sought to produce, and I think you have succeeded in producing, a school book precisely suited to British America.

It is much to be desired that one school system could permeate all these Provinces. Might not Canada, without the charge of presumption, properly assume the initiative in this matter? Might she not, from her Normal and Model Schools, send out well trained teachers, who, by pursuing a uniform system of instruction, would implant in the mind of our youth the germ of a true and loyal nationality? Thus knowledge and experience might be made to strengthen the bonds of brotherhood, our youth would be taught to cherish enlarged views of their country, and being early made familiar with its history and proportions, they would learn to comprehend and appreciate the statesman's dream of a united future, which we believe will be the heritage, as it is the hope, of the MONARCHISTS OF AMERICA.

At the commencement of this letter I expressed the wish that your General Geography should be regarded as the pioneer of a new series of School Books for British America. Before I close, I venture to suggest that it ought to be followed by a History of the Provinces, as complete as the Geography. In speaking of a History for youth, I do not mean that such a work should be a concoction merely of diluted Blue Books, with views, tabular, and statistical, of the rate at which civilization has advanced, and belong chiefly to Eastern Canada. Yet we should not forget that the life story of her sister provinces is neither less alluring nor less heroic. Upper Canada is marked with the footprints of faithfulness and devotion. The vestiges of moral and patriotic worth lie scattered about the land. Imperfect they must be, for, like the inscriptions on broken grave stones, time has destroyed some, obscured others, and defaced all. Still they are worthy of being gathered together, worthy of being patiently studied as the moral relics of a race, which it is to be feared, has no counterpart now. Let the hoar and mossy tablets be reverently removed. Let the writer of History examine whatever remains of record, and carefully decipher whatever appears to be obscure. Let him seek the representatives of the earlier days, and listen kindly to old tales of bye-gone times, for we may be sure the traditions he may thus gather will help to perfect the record of events, which connects the present with the past.

Then, perchance, we shall understand aright the principles and characters of the "United Empire Loyalists,"—of a race of men who were so reverently bowed down to the Republican idol which their countrymen had set up, abandoned their possessions and forsook their kindred, to become the founders of a colony, whose creation it is no exaggeration to say was the offspring of sentiment and devotion,—a Monarch's tribute to his subjects faith.

I am, my dear Sir, faithfully yours,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

FENNING TAYLOR.

From Thomas M. Taylor, Esq.

MONTREAL, 26th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have had much pleasure in looking over the advance sheets of your "General Geography," which you were good enough to send to me.

I cannot pretend to consider myself an authority on matters of educational literature, but, as you desire opinions, I have no hesitation in saying that I think the work an excellent one, both in plan and execution, and well fitted to supply a place which I have understood to be void among school books. Nor can it fail, combining, as it does, so much of the Gazetteer with the Geography, to be valued for reference.

The completeness, with conciseness, of the information it affords must commend it, and your avoidance of the too common mistake of giving too much space to particular sections of the earth, to the equal neglect of others just as important, should secure for it general confidence and acceptance.

For the sake of the youth of our country, I wish it large circulation, and for your sake, as its enterprising and almost adventurous publisher, I wish it commercial success.

Yours faithfully,

Mr. John Lovell, Publisher.

THOMAS M. TAYLOR.

From Richard Nettle, Esq., Superintendent of Fisheries for Lower Canada.

QUEBEC, 2nd March, 1861.

MY DEAR SIR,—I have to acknowledge the receipt of your "General Geography." I have carefully examined it, and I have much pleasure in stating that I have never seen a work better adapted for the use of educational institutions. You have now supplied a want that has long been felt by all professors and persons engaged in tuition, and I hope soon to see it in general use.

Very truly yours,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

RICHARD NETTLE.

Legislative Assembly,
MONTREAL, 12th March, 1861.

When the second part of your
work on the point of leaving
me I should certainly have
expressed my high appreciation
of it. It seems to me to be
wanted to make us independent
of anything but justice either
in our views or all that can be
offered the book, and I know
of the Maps will be given
by me.

G. W. WICKSTEED.

Q. E.

I look upon Mr. Lovell's
work as a great improvement
generally used in this Province,
in view of his undertaking.

F. GRIFFIN.

St. Gill Normal School,

MONTREAL, 24th April, 1861.

Canada will feel grateful to
have a copy of which I have just
received has been long needed
to have been obliged to use
furnished with information
America.

A notice of those who may at
all should also recommend it to
non.

Provincial Church and School
respective departments, and
Committee.

truly,
WILLIAM HICKS.

Principal of Collegiate School,

MONTREAL, 1st March, 1861.

As so still, in good text-books
your press is doing much to-
ward from it books on Spelling,
and English Grammar, all
have treated.

ography," edited by J. George
cellent work, and I make no
es in the Schools of Canada.
commendation, but this could
all most acknowledge it
opt it for my upper classes.

truly,
CHARLES NICHOLS.

F.B.S., F.R.S.S.A., Professor

of Queen's College,

STON, 12th March, 1861.

express my approval of your
se of Schools." Its general
ical phenomena, and natural
and statistics, is distinctive
who have enlarged views as to
duce; while the apt illustra-
through its pages, are well
and, and make permanent im-
come into extensive use in
e families.

truly,
GEORGE LAWSON.

the Hamilton Central School,

MON, 28th February, 1861.

our School Geography, now in
red by learning, ability, and
our excellent. The informa-
most what is wanted for the
labor and care bestowed on it,
all concerned. In making
badly published, you have laid
er renewed obligation. This
the hands of every teacher and

respectfully,
EDWARD MACALLUM.

OPINIONS ON LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

From R. S. M. Bouchette, Esq., Commissioner of Customs.

QUEBEC, 2nd March, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I have perused and examined, as attentively as the little leisure at my disposal would permit, your "General Geography for the use of Schools," and in compliance with the wish you have expressed to have my opinion amongst others, as to how far the publication in question is calculated to attain the object you have in view,—that of supplying the requirements of the country as regards this branch of educational works,—I have great pleasure in assuring you that, in my humble judgment, your "General Geography" appears to be so judicious in its arrangement and order, so lucid in its definitions and descriptions; combining copiousness of information with brevity and simplicity, yet clearness and even elegance of expression; that I cannot for a moment doubt that the work in question will prove of the greatest utility in our schools. The illustrations are equally worthy of all praise. If anything, however, could add to their completeness, it would be, in my opinion, the marking still more strongly the names of countries and their principal divisions; but this is a very subordinate point, for looking at the scale of the Maps, it seems to me impossible to obtain from wood engravings greater details and greater distinctness.

Wishing you every success, and requesting that you will be so good as to send me two copies of the work,

I am, dear Sir, your obedient servant,

R. S. M. BOUCHETTE.

From James Stevenson, Esq., Manager of the Quebec Branch of the Bank of Montreal.

QUEBEC, 2nd March, 1861.

SIR,—I have to thank you for the specimen copy of your "General Geography."

The work contains much valuable information, which I consider well arranged and well adapted for the use of Schools.

I am, Sir, yours obediently,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

J. STEVENSON.

From Thomas Worthington, Esq., Assistant Commissioner of Customs and of Excise.

QUEBEC, 26th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—That your "General Geography," with maps and illustrations, will have the tendency to advance the important objects which it proposes, is unquestionable. It is intelligent, practical, and highly interesting. I wish you every success in the undertaking.

Yours very respectfully,

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

THOS. WORTHINGTON.

From J. Simpson, Esq., M.P.P.

NIAGARA, 27th February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I was much gratified by the receipt of a specimen number of your "Geography," and trust the publication thereof will prove as profitable to yourself, as I feel sure its use in our Schools will be acceptable to the teachers and beneficial to the pupils.

I submitted the work to the inspection of the Rev. Dr. Phillippo, Head Master of the Grammar School here, and Mr. John Connor, Principal of our Common Schools, and enclose you the opinions of these experienced gentlemen.

I am, dear Sir,

Yours very truly,

JOHN SIMPSON.

Mr. John Lovell, Montreal.

NIAGARA, 21st February, 1861.

DEAR SIR,—I feel obliged to you for giving me an opportunity of seeing "Lovell's General Geography." I am delighted to find that such a work is in an advanced state, and to show my entire approbation of the work, I shall be ready on its publication, if authorized by the Board of Council of Education, to take at least 50 copies, thus supplying each boy in the Grammar School under my charge with a copy.

I remain, dear Sir,

Yours resp. ally,

H. N. PHILLIPPS,

Principal, Niagara Senior County Grammar School.

J. Simpson, Esq., M.P.P.

NIAGARA, 26th February, 1861.

SIR,—Having looked over the American part of "Lovell's General Geography," I consider it better adapted for our Colonial Schools than any Geography now in use.

An abridgment, pretty full in the Canadian department, for junior classes, is also desirable.

If the Maps had a simple clear outline, free from all shading except that got by coloring, they would be much more serviceable. Such shading on small maps doth but encumber what it seems to enrich."

JOHN CONNOR,

Principal, Niagara Common School.

J. Simpson, Esq., M.P.P.

LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY,

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, LL.B.,

EMBELLISHED WITH

51 Superior Coloured MAPS, 113 Beautiful ENGRAVINGS, and a Table of CLOCKS of the World.

THIS GEOGRAPHY is designed to furnish a satisfactory *resumé* of Geographical knowledge of all parts of the World, and to give equal prominence to the BRITISH COLONIES, concerning which such meagre information is generally found in works of this kind. It will be found a suitable Text-Book for children in CANADA, NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, NEW-FOUNDLAND, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, the EAST and WEST INDIES, AUSTRALIA, &c.

R. & A. MILLER are the General Agents for the sale of this Book throughout CANADA, and will supply the Trade on advantageous terms.

The Geography will also be on Sale at the Bookstores in the principal Cities in ENGLAND, IRELAND, and SCOTLAND—In NOVA SCOTIA—NEW BRUNSWICK—NEWFOUNDLAND—PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND—The EAST and WEST INDIES—AUSTRALIA, &c.

PRICE \$1.

Montreal, May, 1861.

JOHN LOVELL, *Publisher.*

L.P.P.

27th February, 1861.
of a specimen number
thereof will prove as pro-
ceeds will be acceptable to

Rev. Dr. Phillipps, Head
John Connor, Principal of
schools of these experienced

Truly,
JOHN SIMPSON.

21st February, 1861.

an opportunity of seeing
to find that such a work is
of approbation of the work.
the Board of Council of
supplying each boy in the

J. PHILLIPPS,
County Grammar School.

26th February, 1861.

"Lovell's General Geog-
nical Schools than any

department, for junior
in all shading except that
eable. Such shading on
curious."

JOHN CONNOR,
Niagara Common School.

HY,

of the World.

of the World, and to
generally found in works
RUNSWICK, NEW-

the Trade on advanta-

and **SCOTLAND—**
—The **EAST** and

VELL, Publisher.

